UNC SCHOOL OF GOVERNMENT

Felony Defender Training

February 7-9, 2024
UNC School of Government, Chapel Hill, NC
Co-sponsored by the UNC School of Government &
Office of Indigent Defense Services

Wednesday, February 7

9:00-9:15 a.m.	*Check-in and Welcome*
9:15-10:15 a.m.	**Felony Case Preparation - What's Different in Superior Court** (60 mins) Phil Dixon Jr., Assistant Teaching Professor UNC School of Government, Chapel Hill, NC
10:15-10:30 a.m.	*Break*
10:30-11:45 a.m.	**Discovery and Investigation in Felony Cases** (75 mins) Keith Williams, Attorney Law Offices of Keith William, Greenville, NC
11:45-12:45 p.m.	*Lunch*
12:45-2:00 p.m.	**WORKSHOP: Developing an Investigative and Discovery Strategy** (75 mins)
2:00-2:15 p.m.	*Break*
2:15-3:45 p.m.	**Sentencing in Superior Court** (90 mins) Jamie Markham, Associate Professor of Public Law and Government UNC School of Government, Chapel Hill, NC
3:45-4:00 p.m.	*Break*
4:00-4:45 p.m.	**Evidence Blocking** (45 mins) John Rubin, Professor of Public Law and Government UNC School of Government, Chapel Hill, NC
4:45 p.m.	*Adjourn*

Thursday, Feb. 8

9:00-10:15 a.m.	**Motions to Suppress: Statements, Property and Identification** (75 mins) Phil Dixon, Assistant Teaching Professor UNC School of Government, Chapel Hill, NC
10:15-10:30 a.m.	*Break*
10:30-11:30 a.m.	**Ethics for Felony Defenders** (60 mins) (1.0 ethics) Kelley DeAngelus, Deputy Counsel Cameron Lee, Deputy Counsel North Carolina State Bar, Raleigh, NC
11:30-12:30 p.m.	*Lunch*
12:30-1:45 p.m.	**WORKSHOP: Motions to Suppress and Evidence Blocking** (75 mins)
1:45-2:00 p.m.	*Break*
2:00-3:15 p.m.	**Voir Dire and Demonstration** (75 mins) Michael Kabakoff, Assistant Public Defender Mecklenburg County Public Defender's Office, Charlotte, NC
3:15-3:30 p.m.	*Break*
3:30-4:15 p.m.	**Combatting Biases in the Courtroom** (45 mins) Dawn Blagrove, Executive Director and Attorney Emancipate NC, Durham, NC
4:15 p.m.	*Adjourn*

Friday, Feb. 9

9:00-10:00 a.m.	**Lab Reports and Issues Surrounding Them** (60 mins) Sarah R. Olson, Forensic Resource Counsel Office of Indigent Defense Services, Durham, NC
10:00-11:00 a.m.	**Preservation Essentials** (60 mins) Amanda Zimmer, Assistant Appellate Defender Director of Training, Outreach and Special Litigation Office of the Appellate Defender, Durham, NC
11:00-11:15 a.m.	*Break*
11:15-12:15 p.m.	**The Basics of Pleading Guilty in Superior Court** (60 mins) Derek Brown, Attorney Brown Law Firm, PLLC, Greenville, NC
12:15-1:00 p.m.	*Lunch*
1:00-2:00 p.m.	**Jury Instructions** (60 mins) Belal Elrahal, Assistant Public Defender Mecklenburg County Office of the Public Defender, Charlotte, NC
2:00-2:15 p.m.	*Break*
2:15-3:15 p.m.	**A View from the Bench** (60 min.) Hon. Alyson Grine, Resident Superior Court Judge Judicial District 15B, Hillsborough, NC
3:15 p.m.	*Final Remarks and Adjourn*

CLE HOURS: 16.25
*Includes 1.0 hour of ethics/professional responsibility

UNC | SCHOOL OF GOVERNMENT

PUBLIC DEFENSE EDUCATION INFORMATION & UPDATES

If your e-mail address is *not* included on an IDS listserv and you would like to receive information and updates about Public Defense Education trainings, manuals, and other resources, please visit the School of Government's Public Defense Education site at:

www.sog.unc.edu/resources/microsites/public-defense-education

(Click *Sign Up for Program Information and Updates*)

Your e-mail address will not be provided to entities outside of the School of Government.

Find us on Facebook

(Public Defense Education)

&

follow us on twitter

(twitter.com/NCIDE)

PUBLIC DEFENSE EDUCATION COURSE OFFERINGS

Overview

In August 2000, the North Carolina General Assembly enacted the Indigent Defense Services Act, which created the Office of Indigent Defense Services (IDS) and charged it with overseeing and enhancing the provision of legal representation to indigent defendants and others entitled to counsel under North Carolina law. On behalf of the School of Government, the Public Defense Education (PDE) Initiative collaborates with the Office of Indigent Defense Services to meet the requirements of the Indigent Defense Services Act.

January Offerings

- **Child Support Enforcement** (Biennial Even Years): This course provides training for attorneys representing alleged contemnors in child support enforcement proceedings. Past session topics have included civil and criminal contempt, trial skills, and the intersection of IV-D child support collections and foster care. The program is comprised of plenary sessions.

  Lead Faculty: Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 6.0 hours of CLE, including ethics/professional responsibility

- **Civil Commitment** (Biennial Odd Years): This course provides training for public defenders, appellate defenders, and private attorneys who represent respondents in civil commitment proceedings. Past session topics have included evidence needed to show dangerousness, firearms, the National Instant Criminal Background Check System (NICS), commitment hearing advocacy, appellate case updates, and special issues for juveniles in DSS custody. The program is comprised of plenary sessions.

  Lead Faculty: Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 6.0 hours of General CLE

- **Guardianship Proceedings for Appointed Counsel** (Biennial Odd Years): This course provides training for public defenders, appellate defenders, and private attorneys who serve as appointed

guardian ad litem attorneys for respondents in incompetency and guardianship proceedings. Past session topics have included advocating for services and treatment in mental health and substance abuse cases, alternatives to guardianship, pushing back on common assumptions, a lawyer's guide to understanding addiction, and navigating the dual role of the guardian ad litem. The program is comprised of plenary sessions.

Lead Faculty: Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

Duration: Up to 6.0 hours of General CLE

February Offerings

- **Current Developments in Criminal Law** (Annual): This online course provides training to public defenders, private attorneys who do indigent criminal defense work, and any others who are interested in criminal law. Various School of Government faculty discuss recent developments in criminal law. The webinar includes a dynamic visual presentation, live audio, and interactive Q&A session.

  Lead Faculty: Phil Dixon, Jr., Director, Public Defense Education; Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: 1.5 hours of General CLE and qualifies for the NC State Bar criminal law specialization credit.

- **Felony Defender** (Annual): This course provides training for public defenders and private attorneys who perform a significant amount of appointed work and who are new to representing defendants charged with felonies in superior court. Past session topics have included discovery and investigation, suppression and other superior court motions, preserving the record, jury instructions, sentencing, and trial skills—including conducting voir dire—necessary to handle felony cases from start to finish. The program is comprised of plenary sessions and intensive small group workshops.

  Lead Faculty: Phil Dixon, Jr., Director, Public Defense Education; Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 16 hours of CLE, including substance abuse/mental health awareness, ethics/professional responsibility, and qualifies for the NC State Bar criminal law specialization credit.

March Offerings

- **Intensive Juvenile Defender** (Biennial Even Years): The course provides training for public defenders and private attorneys who represent juveniles in delinquency proceedings. Past topics include crafting individualized dispositions, identifying new arguments for cases involving juveniles,

disproportionate minority contact, telling your client's story, and cultural competencies. The program is comprised of plenary sessions and intensive small group workshops.

Lead Faculty: Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

Duration: Up to 6.0 hours of General CLE

- **Intensive Parent Defender** (Biennial Odd Years): This course focuses on parent representation at each stage of juvenile abuse, neglect, and dependency proceedings, including reviewing and challenging pleadings, contested adjudications, and parent advocacy through permanency. The program is comprised of plenary sessions and intensive small group workshops.

  Lead Faculty: Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 6.0 hours of General CLE

April Offerings

- **Special Topic Seminar** (Annual): The 2024 seminar is on Navigating the Capacity and Commitment Process.

  Lead Faculty: Phil Dixon, Jr., Director, Public Defense Education; Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 6.0 hours of General CLE depending on topic

May Offerings

- **Spring Public Defender and Investigator Conference** (Annual)**:** This conference includes various topics and tracks for misdemeanor attorneys, felony attorneys, juvenile attorneys, and investigators. Past attorney track sessions have focused on emerging issues in Fourth Amendment law, expert witnesses, and capacity. Past investigator track sessions have included strategies for working with counsel, testifying in jury and non-jury trials, and ethical considerations for investigators.

  Lead Faculty: Phil Dixon, Jr., Director, Public Defense Education; Teaching Assistant Professor

  Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 13.25 hours of CLE, including ethics/professional responsibility, technology, and substance abuse/mental health awareness.

June Offerings

- **Summer Criminal Law Webinar** (Annual): This online course covers recent criminal law decisions issued by the North Carolina appellate courts and the United States Supreme Court and highlights significant criminal law legislation enacted by the North Carolina General Assembly.

  Lead Faculty: Phil Dixon, Jr., Director, Public Defense Education; Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: 1.5 hours of General CLE and qualifies for the NC State Bar criminal law specialization credit.

- **Civil Law Webinar** (Annual): Topics vary. In 2024, this new online course will cover issues related to expert testimony in proceedings involving children. Attorneys will learn foundational concepts for offering, challenging, and distinguishing between expert and lay testimony.

  Lead Faculty: Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: 1.5 hours of General CLE

July Offerings

- **Defender Trial School** (Annual): Participants will use their own cases to develop a cohesive theory of defense at trial and apply that theory through all stages of a criminal trial, including voir dire, opening, and closing arguments, and direct and cross-examination. The program is comprised of plenary sessions and intensive small group workshops.

  Lead Faculty: John Rubin, Albert Coates Professor, and Bob Burke, Contract Educator

  Duration: Up to 28 hours of CLE and qualifies for the NC State Bar criminal law specialization credit.

August Offerings

- **Juvenile Defender** (Annual): Provides training for attorneys who represent youth in delinquency proceedings. Past topics have included legislative updates, post-disposition advocacy, issues surrounding recidivism, and more. The program is comprised of plenary sessions.

  Lead Faculty: Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 6.0 hours of CLE, including substance abuse/mental health awareness

- **Parent Attorney** (Annual): This course is for attorneys who represent respondents in abuse, neglect, dependency, and termination of parental rights proceedings. Past topics have included legislative and case updates, substance use and testing, and representing parents with disabilities, and self-care for attorneys working in this often traumatic field. The program is comprised of plenary sessions.

  Lead Faculty: Timothy Heinle, Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 6.25 hours of CLE, including substance abuse/mental health awareness, and qualifies for NC State Bar Child Welfare specialization and Family Law specialization credit.

September Offerings

- **Higher Level Felony** (Annual): This program is for attorneys interested in handling higher-level felony cases at the trial level. Past topics have included preparing for serious felony cases, eyewitness identifications, habitual felons, self-defense, client relations and rapport, sentencing law and advocacy, and mitigation investigation. The program consists of plenary sessions and intensive small group workshops.

  Lead Faculty: Phil Dixon, Jr., Director, Public Defense Education; Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: Up to 12.25 hours of CLE, including ethics/professional responsibility, and qualifies for the NC State Bar Criminal Law specialization credit.

October Offerings

- **Appellate Advocacy** (Annual or biennial depending on demand): Using their own cases, participants will learn to develop a cohesive theory of defense on appeal and use that theory in writing a persuasive statement of facts and legal argument. The program consists of plenary sessions and intensive small group workshops.

  Lead Faculty: John Rubin, Albert Coates Professor, and Bob Burke, Contract Educator

  Duration: Up to 18.0 hours of General CLE

November Offerings

- **Misdemeanor Defender** (Annual): This course is an introductory program for attorneys new to misdemeanor cases. Past sessions have included stops and searches, impaired driving, ethical

issues in district court, sentencing and jail credit, probation violations, and other matters in misdemeanor cases. The program also provides instruction on client interviewing, negotiation, and trial skills, including a small group workshop on trial skills. The program is comprised of plenary sessions and intensive small group workshops.

Lead Faculty: Phil Dixon, Jr., Director, Public Defense Education; Teaching Assistant Professor

Duration: Up to 20.0 hours of CLE, including ethics/professional responsibility, and qualifies for the NC State Bar criminal law specialization credit.

December Offerings

- **Winter Criminal Law Webinar** (Annual): This online course covers recent criminal law decisions issued by the North Carolina appellate courts and the United States Supreme Court and highlights significant criminal law legislation enacted by the North Carolina General Assembly.

  Lead Faculty: Phil Dixon, Jr., Director, Public Defense Education; Teaching Assistant Professor

  Duration: 1.5 hours of General CLE and qualifies for the NC State Bar criminal law specialization credit.

Educational Resources

- Indigent Defense Manual Series (Seven Volumes)
- Collateral Consequences Assessment Tool
- Guide to Relief from a Criminal Conviction
- Practice Guides (Defense Motions and Notices in Superior Court; The First Seven Days Series for GALs and Parent Defenders)
- Racial Equity Network Resources (Training Materials)
- On-Demand Defender CLE Library
- NC Criminal Debrief Podcast
- Covid-19 Tool Kit for Defenders
- SOG Criminal Law Blog
- SOG On the Civil Side Blog
- Case Summaries (via listservs) Evidence Chapter in Abuse, Neglect, and Dependency Manual

1

Big Picture Differences from District Court

- Organization
- Motions
- Jury Trial Skills
- Preservation

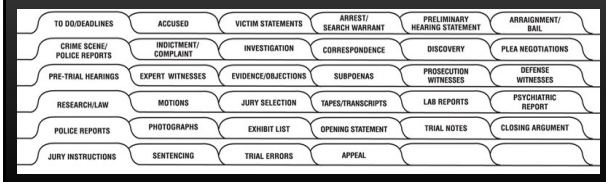
2

ORGANIZATION

- Lots more to worry about and to organize
- Find a system that works– Tabs, Folders, sub folders, stickies, etc.
- Be able to find what you need in trial, and keep track of what's happening at trial

3

ORGANIZATION = Trial Notebook



4

What you'll need . . .

- Indictments
- Witness statements, report
- Your motions, their motions, and the caselaw
- Direct and Cross Examinations, with any supporting evidence
- Exhibits also –keep track of what's in and not
- Jury Instructions

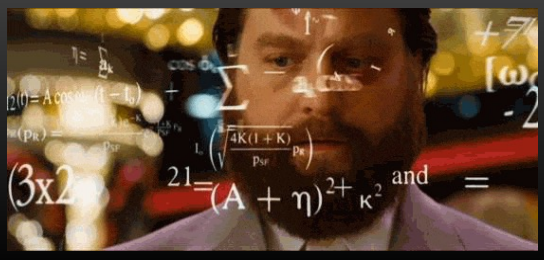
5

Develop Good Habits . . .

- Regular system for organizing file
- Regular system for tracking deadlines
- Motions, notices, jury instructions from the jump
- Brainstorm from the start and continue throughout

6

THINK ABOUT YOUR CASES . . .



7

Motions

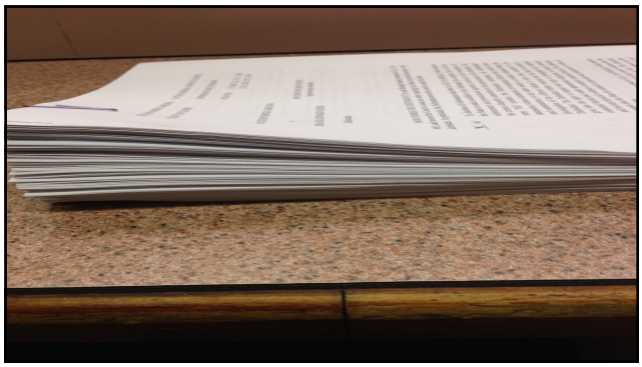
- Defendermanuals.sog.unc.edu
- Can address ANY issue other than the merits of the case
- Signed, served, filed, affidavits where necessary, cert. of service
- Cite authority, specific grounds for relief, exactly what you want, and sometimes a backup request for alternative relief.

8

Motions Tips

- Gotta know and meet the deadlines
- Think about them from the jump
- Constitutionalize every single issue that you possibly can
- Get a ruling or it's waived on appeal.

9



10

Motions Deadlines

- Pre-Arraignment Motions:

File Request for Arraignment? → Motions Due At Arraignment

No Request for Arraignment? → Motions Due within 21 days of Indictment

- Change venue, improper venue, special venire, joinder of offenses, bills of particular

11

Motions Deadlines

Suppression Motions:
- Always before trial.
- With notice of certain evidence, within 10 business days of receipt of notice.

Notice of Defenses:
- Due 20 days before trial.

Notice of Expert Testimony:
- Reasonable time before trial.

Notice of Appeal:
- 14 days; 30 days for civil cases like SBM and must be written.

12

Motions Deadlines

- Don't forget about motions to recuse, convictions over 10 years, residual hearsay, Chapter 90 and Chapter 20 notice and demand, Rule 412 motions, and motions in limine.
- Going to Trial? Always file discovery requests, recordation, sequestration, jury instructions, and motions in limine.
- EVERY. SINGLE. TRIAL.

13

Superior Court

- Rotating Judges
- Juries
- Rules, deadlines, and form requirements matter
- Court of Record

14

YOU NOW MUST WORRY ABOUT . . .

- Selecting a Jury
- Opening Statements
- Motion to Dismiss at Close of State's Evidence
- Charge Conference and Jury Instructions
- Notice of Appeal if you lose

15

16


Preservation
Scrn
Scroll Lock
Pause
preserve
Insert
Home

17


* WHIMPERING *

18

19

BEING A
LAWYER
IS EASY, IT'S LIKE
RIDING A BIKE
EXCEPT THE BIKE IS ON FIRE
YOU'RE ON FIRE
EVERYTHING IS ON FIRE
AND YOU'RE IN HELL

20

DON'T WORRY . . .

21

22

HOW DO YOU GET BETTER AT JURY TRIALS??

23

BY TRYING CASES!!!

- They know who tries cases, and how well you try them.
- You cannot learn jury selection or trial procedure without trying cases.

24

Final Thoughts

- Cultivate good organization of your files and trial notebooks.
- Cultivate a motions practice and think about motions in the case right away.
- Think about jury selection and jury instructions right away.
- Watch jury trials, and take cases to trial.

25

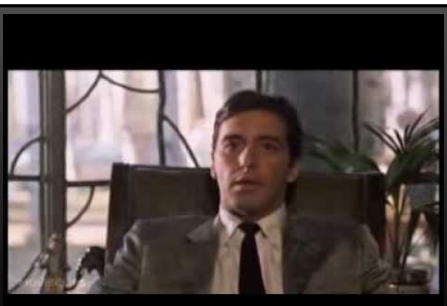
The Bill of Rights

The Sixth Amendment

"In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defense."

30

26



27

QUESTIONS?

- Phil Dixon, Jr.
- 252-531-4999 (cell)
- dixon@sog.unc.edu

28

What's in the Felony File:
Organizing a Trial Notebook and Exhibits

Keith Williams
Greenville, North Carolina
Telephone: 252-931-9362
Email: keith@williamslawonline.com

1) Intro
   a) The Vanishing Trial
      i) How it used to be
         (1) Various numbers
            (a) 1962: 15% of all federal criminal cases went to trial
            (b) 1976: 9% of all state criminal cases went to trial
            (c) 1980: 18% of all federal criminal cases went to trial
         (2) Sources
            (a) *A World without Trials,* Journal of Dispute Resolution, Volume 2006, Issue I,http://scholarship.law.missouri.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1640&context=jdr
            (b) *The Vanishing Trial,* Journal of Empirical Legal Studies, November 2004, Volume I, Issue 3
      ii) How it is now
         (1) 2013: 3% of federal criminal cases went to trial
            (a) https://www.nytimes.com/2016/08/08/nyregion/jury-trials-vanish-and-justice-is-served-behind-closed-doors.html?_r=0
      iii) Most recent numbers for North Carolina
         (1) From July 1, 2015, through June 30, 2016
         (2) "Overall, 2% of convictions statewide resulted from jury trials"
            (a) 28,593 total convictions
            (b) 28,021 resulted from plea
            (c) 572 resulted from jury trial
         (3) did not break it down by county
            (a) will vary based on population
            (b) but rough number: 572 jury trials over 100 counties is 5.72 jury trials per year in each county: average 6 in a year; one every 2 months
               (i) some more
               (ii) some **less**
         (4) January 2017 report from NC Sentencing and Policy Advisory Commission
            (a) http://www.nccourts.org/Courts/CRS/Councils/spac/Documents/statisticalrpt_fy15-16.pdf

b) Causes?
   i) Harsher sentences b/c of structured sentencing
      (1) I would agree re federal court
      (2) But probably not agree re state court
   ii) Vicious cycle
      (1) We are exposed to fewer jury trials
      (2) Which deprives us of the opportunity to learn about them and become familiar with them
      (3) Which makes us less likely to have the courage to engage in them
      (4) Which means there are fewer jury trials
   iii) Hard but honest assessment (opinions from me, not from the School of Government)
      (1) Overworked lawyers
      (2) Lazy lawyers
      (3) Scared lawyers

c) Question for me and for each one of us:
   i) Am I a poser?
      (1) A poser says they are a trial lawyer, but actually lacks the stomach for it
   ii) Sometimes hard for us to know ourselves; easy for the prosecutors to tell
      (1) They know who talks about going to trial – and almost always pleads
      (2) They also know who talks about going to trial – and actually goes to trial
      (3) One guess as to who gets the better plea offers
   iii) Wade Smith: you need to be sure you are anything other than a "tasty morsel" for the prosecutors
      (1) You want to be thick and grisly and unpleasant

d) Is it OK to be a lawyer and avoid jury trials?
   i) Yes, but not if you represent people charged with felonies in Superior Court
   ii) <u>We are not mediators; we are trial lawyers</u>
      (1) Even a civilized society needs a place to brawl
      (2) No jousting; no bullfighting; no street fighting
      (3) All replaced by trial lawyering

e) Three steps to taking more cases to trial
   i) Know the facts of your case
   ii) Know the law that applies
   iii) Prepare
      (1) Buying a house: location, location, location
      (2) Going to jury trial in a felony case: preparation, preparation, preparation

f) Purpose of today is the third step: preparation
   i) Demystify the process
   ii) Makes us more likely to engage in the process
   iii) One caveat: you will never feel 100% prepared
      (1) There is also something more you can do
      (2) But if you wait until you feel 100% prepared b/4 you try a case, you will never try a case

2) Order of preparation
   a) Disclaimer: what I know, I have learned from others; hard for me to identify / recall all of the sources, but it would especially be from attorneys Roger Pozner and Chris Dodd
   b) Decide on your theory of the case
      i) Before you start the road trip, know your destination
      ii) Example: rape case
         (1) My client was not at the party: alibi
         (2) My client was at the party but did not go in the room with her: mistaken identity
         (3) My client was at the party and did go in the room with her, but they did not have sex: untruthful prosecuting witness
         (4) My client was at the party and did go in the room and did have sex with her, but she was a willing participant: consent
   c) Then think about your closing argument: your best points for winning the case
      i) Shows you the points you need to make during trial
   d) Cross-examination: try to make most of your points on cross of expected State's witnesses
   e) Direct examination: call your own witnesses and possibly your client to testify if you have points you need to make that you cannot get from the State's witnesses
   f) Opening statement: how best will you forecast the important points to the jury
   g) Jury selection: what are the key points that you need to raise with the jury during voir dire

3) Trial Notebook
   a) Tried a jury trial one time from folders
      i) Never again
   b) Take your materials and put them into a three-ring notebook with tabs
      i) Jury selection (voir dire)
      ii) Opening statement
      iii) Cross-ex of State's witnesses
         (1) One tab for each witness
      iv) Motions at close of State's evidence
      v) Presentation of Defense witnesses
         (1) One tab for each witness
      vi) Motions at close of all evidence
      vii) Jury instructions / charge conference
         (1) Available for free on School of Govt website
         (2) Print the instructions you want
         (3) Four copies: one for you, one for the judge, one for the clerk, one for the State
      viii) Closing argument
      ix) Sentencing
   c) Inside front folder
      i) My outline
      ii) Index to trial notebook
      iii) Spreadsheet of exhibits
   d) Cover sheet: "TRIAL NOTEBOOK"
      i) Let the client see that you are ready

e) Forces you to go through the file and prune it
    i) Keep what you need
    ii) Get rid of the rest
        (1) "A major preparation attribute that separates great trial lawyers from lesser advocates is the ability to streamline their cases. Highly effective trial lawyers jettison redundant witnesses, unnecessary exhibits, repetitive questions, causes of action, or defenses that detract from the principal theory of the case. All of this is critical to success at trial."
        (2) *Eight Traits of Great Trial Lawyers*, Judge Mark Bennett, Voir Dire, Summer 2014, http://bit.ly/2n4JO3v

4) Preparation for cross-examination
    a) The most important skill of a criminal defense attorney
        i) A skill that can be learned
    b) Youtube: Terry McCarthy on Cross-Examination
        i) https://youtu.be/QcOkG9-TpEo
    c) Pozner and Dodd, Masters of Cross-Examination DVD
        i) pozneranddodd.com
        ii) chapter method of cross-examination
            (1) break your questions down into smaller sub-questions
            (2) each of the smaller questions is a chapter
            (3) have a spreadsheet for each smaller question, and move through them in the order you believe most effective
            (4) you are making statements, and the witness is saying yes or no
            (5) you are using them to make your points; they are there to serve your purpose
                (a) preparation: you know in advance the points you need to cover

5) Preparation for direct examination
    a) If your client is going to testify, do a practice direct examination with them
        i) Record it
        ii) Give it to them to watch
    b) Will make them a much better witness at trial

6) Exhibits
    a) Decide what you need to admit through the various witnesses
        i) You are allowed to admit your exhibits through the State's witnesses if you can get a sufficient foundation
    b) Decide how you want to display them
        i) On the screen
            (1) From your computer using something like Apple TV
            (2) Note: you will still need a printed copy to give to the clerk for the court file
        ii) In hard copy to be handed to the jury
        iii) On an easel, blown up and displayed on foam board

c) Have them marked and ready to go
    i) In your trial notebook, in the tab for the witness through whom you plan to introduce the exhibit
    ii) Defense Exhibit stickers – in the bottom right corner
        (1) 1, 2, 3, 4, etc
    iii) you need three copies of each
        (1) one for you
        (2) one for the court
        (3) one for the prosecutor
    iv) spreadsheet of exhibits will have the number the exhibit
d) How you keep them for your own use: in paper form or electronic form?
    i) Yes
    ii) In paper – as part of trial notebook
    iii) On computer
        (1) Documents in PDF format so you can search as needed to find specific words or phrases on the fly in trial
            (a) Tip: make all of your PDF documents word searchable by using the OCR process
                (i) Optical character recognition; turns the scanned page into searchable text
                (ii) Windows: Document – OCR text recognition
                (iii)Mac: Tools – Text recognition
        (2) Other exhibits – as backup on computer
e) How to introduce them: don't make this harder than it has to be
    i) The steps
        (1) Identify the exhibit by number
        (2) Have the witness describe it and lay the foundation for it
        (3) Move to admit it
    ii) Example for admitting a photo:
        (1) I hand you what has been marked as Defense Exhibit number 1 for identification purposes
        (2) Do you recognize it
        (3) Can you tell us what it is
        (4) Does it fairly and accurately depict the scene
        (5) You honor, I move to admit Defense Exhibit number 1
    iii) be familiar with the legal standards for laying a foundation for that type of exhibit
f) With witnesses you present on direct examination, using exhibits opens the possibility of allowing your witness to testify twice in the same direct
    i) First time through: without exhibits
    ii) Second time through: with exhibits
g) If possible, use key exhibits during opening
    i) Will need to get judge's permission in advance

7) Conclusion

Developing an Investigative and Discovery Strategy

Keith Williams
Greenville, North Carolina
252-931-9362 keith@williamslawonline.com

1

Credits

- 2016 Power Point from Glenn Gerding
- 2017 Power Point from Vince Rabil
- Ch. 4 of Vol. 1 of Defender Manual
- Phil Dixon, Jr., School of Government Faculty Member

2

Three Points

1. What They Give You
2. What You Give Them
3. What You Get on Your Own

3

1. What They Give You

4

1. What They Give You

- Constitutional (due process)
  - Exculpatory Material
    - *Brady v Maryland*, 373 US 83 (1963)
    - Information relevant to guilt or punishment that is favorable to the defendant

5

1. What They Give You

  - Impeachment Material
    - *Giglio v United States*, 405 US 150 (1972)
  - Prosecutor has the duty to find any exculpatory or impeachment material known to law enforcement
    - *Kyles v. Whitley*, 514 US 419 (1995)

6

1. What They Give You

- Old Rule
  - Prosecutor decides what is exculpatory or impeaching and gives it to you
  - Or if s/he wanted to, they could give you open file discovery

7

1. What They Give You

- New Rule: mandatory open file discovery
  - Fox should not guard henhouse
  - They give you everything they have, per 15A-903
  - More than just exculpatory or impeaching; everything

8

1. What They Give You

- Procedure
  - File Request for Discovery 15A-902
    - Generally within 10 working days after being notified of the indictment

9

1. What They Give You

- After 7 days, make motion for discovery 15A-902
  - If State has not provided it
  - And even if State has provided it
    - "This motion is made for the record, to assert fully the Defendant's rights to discovery"

10

1. What They Give You

- After you get the discovery
  - Read it and make note of anything mentioned but not provided
  - Example: "Officer A took pictures of the scene" – but no pictures provided
  - Example: "Officer B sent items to the State Crime Lab for analysis" – but no lab report provided

11

1. What They Give You

- Then file a motion for additional discovery
  - Citing Brady, Giglio, and the open file discovery statutes
  - Ask the court to order production of the missing items
  - Most prosecutors will work with you

12

1. What They Give You

- If the State is playing games, file a motion for sanctions (sample attached; first attachment)
  - 15A-910: asking for a continuance, a mistrial, a dismissal, or "other appropriate orders"
  - Cross the offending officer with the issue at trial

13

1. What They Give You

- In a drug case in which the State used a confidential informant (CI), include in your motion a request for the CI file
  - most agencies maintain files on their CI's, showing the CI's history with the agents, payments made to the CI, and other information concerning the CI

14

1. What They Give You

- Especially if the agency is certified by CALEA (the Commission on Accreditation for Law Enforcement Agencies)
- Argue as part of open file discovery because "the complete files of all law enforcement agencies . . . involved in the investigation of the crimes committed or the prosecution of the defendant." 15A-903(a1)

15

1. What They Give You

- From Greenville Police Department Manual:
  - directs that GPD maintain a file on all informants that includes a record of payments made to the informant and a copy of the informant's criminal record.

16

1. What They Give You

- provides that "[a]ll meetings with informants in which information is obtained or investigative progress is made shall be documented and included in the investigation file related to the case."
- has a section headed "Guidelines for Paying Informants." It directs the officer to meet with a supervisor "to determine [the] value" of information provided by an informant. It requires that payments to informants "be documented on Report of Special Expenditures."

17

2. What You Give Them

18

2. What You Give Them

- Constitutional
  - No because State has no constitutional rights
- Statutory
  - Yes per statute, 15A-905
  - State's Motion for Reciprocal Discovery

19

2. What You Give Them

- Within 20 working days after final administrative setting ("within 20 working days after the date the case is set for trial" 15A-905(c)(1))
  - Notice of Defenses: if you are going to rely on alibi, duress, entrapment, insanity, mental

20

2. What You Give Them

infirmity, diminished capacity, self-defense, accident, automatism, involuntary intoxication, or voluntary intoxication

- If alibi, State can ask for disclosure of alibi witnesses no later than 2 weeks before trial

21

2. What You Give Them

- More detailed notice required for duress, entrapment, insanity, automatism, or involuntary intoxication: "specific information as to the nature and extent of the defense"
- OK to give the notice and later change your mind; giving the notice is "inadmissible against the defendant." 15A-905(c)(1)

22

2. What You Give Them

- Around two to three weeks before trial ("reasonable time prior to trial") 15A-905(c)
  - Any exhibits or other materials you plan to admit
  - Results of any examinations or tests you plan to admit
  - Expert witness reports and curricula vitae for experts you will call

23

2. What You Give Them

- Caveats
  - Only what you plan to admit
  - Not your whole file
    - No reciprocal open file discovery

24

2. What You Give Them

- At beginning of jury selection
  - Your witness list per 15A-905(c)(3)
  - "a written list of the names of all other witnesses whom the defendant reasonably expects to call during the trial"

25

2. What You Give Them

- If you play games with them: they can move for sanctions
- 15A-910

26

3. What You Get on Your Own

27

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Anybody can pick up a rock
- It takes imagination, effort, and discipline to dig and find the gemstones hidden underground
  - That's where the good stuff is

28

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Imagination
  - Think beyond what is there
  - To what *could* be there
  - And how you can make it be there

29

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Sometimes your investigation changes everything
- Sometimes you win because you did more investigation than the State

30

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Imagination at work
  - My Cousin Vinny
    - https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_T24lH_nB7N8

31

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Sky is the limit. Ceiling is the roof.
- Spend your time on what is needed for the theory of your case
  - Example: bank robbery; your client is alleged to be driver of the getaway car

32

3. What You Get on Your Own

- If your theory is mistaken identity, spend your time getting evidence of his whereabouts on the offense date
- But if your theory is that he acted under duress b/c threatened by codefendant, spend your time going into codefendant's background

33

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Some common examples
  - Social media
  - Video and audio recordings
  - Medical records and other material from third parties

34

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Social media
  - Facebook, twitter, instagram, VSCO, Venmo
  - Get it if public
  - But do not "friend" them to get it

35

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Video and Audio Recordings
  - Dashcam from the patrol car
  - Bodycam from the officer

36

What You Get on Your Own

- Surveillance cameras
  - City-owned
  - Private businesses
- 911 Call Recordings

37

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Recordings from private business or individual (surveillance cameras)
  - Work on these right away
  - Many are gone within 2-4 weeks
  - Go out to the scene and look for cameras

38

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Issue subpoenas
  - if you are not sure who owns the business, check the records in Register of Deeds, Tax Office, or Secretary of State
  - Direct production of the recording in court on the court date

39

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Or better: direct production to your office prior to the court date so you can get it ASAP
  - Permitted by 2008 Formal Ethics Opinion 4

40

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Recordings from law enforcement (dash cams, body cams, etc.)
  - Cannot use subpoena
  - Must file a petition under NCGS § 132-1.4A(e1)
  - File in civil Superior Court (no filing fee)

41

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Not as bad as it sounds; really just a subpoena using a different form
  - AOC-CV-270
  - Sample attached (second attachment)
- File it with Notice of Hearing
  - Set on next available civil Superior Court term

42

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Mail to the Chief of Police (or Sheriff)
- As a courtesy, copy to the city attorney or county attorney who will handle it for them
- Generally, they give you the recording with little trouble; and often without the need to appear in civil court

43

3. What You Get on Your Own

- Medical records and other records held by third parties (doctors, counselors, schools, etc.)
  - Example: mental health treatment records concerning the prosecuting witness
  - Sometimes called "third party discovery" or "Ritchie records"

44

3. What You Get on Your Own

- *Pennsylvania v. Ritchie*, 480 U.S. 39, 58 (1987): criminal defendant entitled to receive portions of state social service agency files that contain material information
- You file the motion requesting the records
  - Sample attached (third attachment)

45

3. What You Get on Your Own

- You send a subpoena to the third party that holds the records
  - Directing production under seal to the court (the Clerk's Office)
  - Note: these records are generally privileged, so do not direct production to your office; you need a court order to set aside the privilege

46

3. What You Get on Your Own

- On court date, ask for a motions hearing
  - Ask the judge to order the records be given to you outright
  - If not, then ask for the judge to review *in camera* and give to you after reviewing; or to seal for appellate review if withheld

47

3. What You Get on Your Own

- If you are not sure where the prosecuting witness received treatment, then just file the motion without the subpoena
  - Stating what you know about the prosecuting witness potentially having treatment records out there
  - At least asking for the prosecutor to provide any such records in their possession (putting it on the record)

48

Conclusion

49

Sentencing in Superior Court

Jamie Markham

Professor of Public Law and Government

UNC SCHOOL OF GOVERNMENT

Objectives

- Basic felony grid fluency
- Know what the sentence means

Felony Sentencing

Felony Offenses Committed on or after **October 1, 2013**

MINIMUM SENTENCES AND DISPOSITIONAL OPTIONS

OFFENSE CLASS	PRIOR RECORD LEVEL I 0–1 Pt	II 2–5 Pts	III 6–9 Pts	IV 10–13 Pts	V 14–17 Pts	VI 18+ Pts	DISPOSITION
A Max. Death or Life w/o Parole	Death or Life without Parole Defendant under 18 at Time of Offense: Life with or without Parole						
B1 Max. Life w/o Parole	A	A	A	A	A	A	Aggravated
	240–300	276–345	317–397	365–456	Life w/o Parole	Life w/o Parole	
	192–240	**221–276**	**254–317**	**292–365**	**336–420**	**386–483**	**PRESUMPTIVE**
	144–192	166–221	190–254	219–292	252–336	290–386	Mitigated
B2 Max. 484 (532)	A	A	A	A	A	A	
	157–196	180–225	207–258	238–297	273–342	314–393	
	125–157	**144–180**	**165–207**	**190–238**	**219–273**	**251–314**	
	94–125	108–144	124–165	143–190	164–219	189–251	
C Max. 231 (279)	A	A	A	A	A	A	
	73–92	83–104	96–120	110–138	127–159	146–182	
	58–73	**67–83**	**77–96**	**88–110**	**101–127**	**117–146**	
	44–58	50–67	58–77	66–88	76–101	87–117	
D Max. 204 (252)	A	A	A	A	A	A	
	64–80	73–92	84–105	97–121	111–139	128–160	
	51–64	**59–73**	**67–84**	**78–97**	**89–111**	**103–128**	
	38–51	44–59	51–67	58–78	67–89	77–103	
E Max. 88 (136)	I/A	I/A	A	A	A	A	
	25–31	29–36	33–41	38–48	44–55	50–63	
	20–25	**23–29**	**26–33**	**30–38**	**35–44**	**40–50**	
	15–20	17–23	20–26	23–30	26–35	30–40	
F Max. 59	I/A	I/A	I/A	A	A	A	
	16–20	19–23	21–27	25–31	28–36	33–41	
	13–16	**15–19**	**17–21**	**20–25**	**23–28**	**26–33**	
	10–13	11–15	13–17	15–20	17–23	20–26	
G Max. 47	I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	A	A	
	13–16	14–18	17–21	19–24	22–27	25–31	
	10–13	**12–14**	**13–17**	**15–19**	**17–22**	**20–25**	
	8–10	9–12	10–13	11–15	13–17	15–20	
H Max. 39	C/I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	A	
	6–8	8–10	10–12	11–14	15–19	20–25	
	5–6	**6–8**	**8–10**	**9–11**	**12–15**	**16–20**	
	4–5	4–6	6–8	7–9	9–12	12–16	
I Max. 24	C	C/I	I	I/A	I/A	I/A	
	6–8	6–8	6–8	8–10	9–11	10–12	
	4–6	**4–6**	**5–6**	**6–8**	**7–9**	**8–10**	
	3–4	3–4	4–5	4–6	5–7	6–8	

Note: Numbers shown are in months. The number shown below each offense class reflects the maximum possible sentence for that class of offense (the highest maximum sentence from the aggravated range in prior record level VI). The maximum sentence for a defendant convicted of a reportable Class B1 through E sex crime is indicated in parentheses.

A—Active Punishment **I**—Intermediate Punishment **C**—Community Punishment

MAXIMUM SENTENCES

FOR OFFENSE CLASSES B1 THROUGH E *(Sex Crimes)*

15–30 (78)	56–80 (128)	97–129 (177)	138–178 (226)	179–227 (275)	220–276 (324)	261–326 (374)	302–375 (423)
16–32 (80)	57–81 (129)	98–130 (178)	139–179 (227)	180–228 (276)	221–278 (326)	262–327 (375)	303–376 (424)
17–33 (81)	58–82 (130)	99–131 (179)	140–180 (228)	181–230 (278)	222–279 (327)	263–328 (376)	304–377 (425)
18–34 (82)	59–83 (131)	100–132 (180)	141–182 (230)	182–231 (279)	223–280 (328)	264–329 (377)	305–378 (426)
19–35 (83)	60–84 (132)	101–134 (182)	142–183 (231)	183–232 (280)	224–281 (329)	265–330 (378)	306–380 (428)
20–36 (84)	61–86 (134)	102–135 (183)	143–184 (232)	184–233 (281)	225–282 (330)	266–332 (380)	307–381 (429)
21–38 (86)	62–87 (135)	103–136 (184)	144–185 (233)	185–234 (282)	226–284 (332)	267–333 (381)	308–382 (430)
22–39 (87)	63–88 (136)	104–137 (185)	145–186 (234)	186–236 (284)	227–285 (333)	268–334 (382)	309–383 (431)
23–40 (88)	64–89 (137)	105–138 (186)	146–188 (236)	187–237 (285)	228–286 (334)	269–335 (383)	310–384 (432)
24–41 (89)	65–90 (138)	106–140 (188)	147–189 (237)	188–238 (286)	229–287 (335)	270–336 (384)	311–386 (434)
25–42 (90)	66–92 (140)	107–141 (189)	148–190 (238)	189–239 (287)	230–288 (336)	271–338 (386)	312–387 (435)
26–44 (92)	67–93 (141)	108–142 (190)	149–191 (239)	190–240 (288)	231–290 (338)	272–339 (387)	313–388 (436)
27–45 (93)	68–94 (142)	109–143 (191)	150–192 (240)	191–242 (290)	232–291 (339)	273–340 (388)	314–389 (437)
28–46 (94)	69–95 (143)	110–144 (192)	151–194 (242)	192–243 (291)	233–292 (340)	274–341 (389)	315–390 (438)
29–47 (95)	70–96 (144)	111–146 (194)	152–195 (243)	193–244 (292)	234–293 (341)	275–342 (390)	316–392 (440)
30–48 (96)	71–98 (146)	112–147 (195)	153–196 (244)	194–245 (293)	235–294 (342)	276–344 (392)	317–393 (441)
31–50 (98)	72–99 (147)	113–148 (196)	154–197 (245)	195–246 (294)	236–296 (344)	277–345 (393)	318–394 (442)
32–51 (99)	73–100 (148)	114–149 (197)	155–198 (246)	196–248 (296)	237–297 (345)	278–346 (394)	319–395 (443)
33–52 (100)	74–101 (149)	115–150 (198)	156–200 (248)	197–249 (297)	238–298 (346)	279–347 (395)	320–396 (444)
34–53 (101)	75–102 (150)	116–152 (200)	157–201 (249)	198–250 (298)	239–299 (347)	280–348 (396)	321–398 (446)
35–54 (102)	76–104 (152)	117–153 (201)	158–202 (250)	199–251 (299)	240–300 (348)	281–350 (398)	322–399 (447)
36–56 (104)	77–105 (153)	118–154 (202)	159–203 (251)	200–252 (300)	241–302 (350)	282–351 (399)	323–400 (448)
37–57 (105)	78–106 (154)	119–155 (203)	160–204 (252)	201–254 (302)	242–303 (351)	283–352 (400)	324–401 (449)
38–58 (106)	79–107 (155)	120–156 (204)	161–206 (254)	202–255 (303)	243–304 (352)	284–353 (401)	325–402 (450)
39–59 (107)	80–108 (156)	121–158 (206)	162–207 (255)	203–256 (304)	244–305 (353)	285–354 (402)	326–404 (452)
40–60 (108)	81–110 (158)	122–159 (207)	163–208 (256)	204–257 (305)	245–306 (354)	286–356 (404)	327–405 (453)
41–62 (110)	82–111 (159)	123–160 (208)	164–209 (257)	205–258 (306)	246–308 (356)	287–357 (405)	328–406 (454)
42–63 (111)	83–112 (160)	124–161 (209)	165–210 (258)	206–260 (308)	247–309 (357)	288–358 (406)	329–407 (455)
43–64 (112)	84–113 (161)	125–162 (210)	166–212 (260)	207–261 (309)	248–310 (358)	289–359 (407)	330–408 (456)
44–65 (113)	85–114 (162)	126–164 (212)	167–213 (261)	208–262 (310)	249–311 (359)	290–360 (408)	331–410 (458)
45–66 (114)	86–116 (164)	127–165 (213)	168–214 (262)	209–263 (311)	250–312 (360)	291–362 (410)	332–411 (459)
46–68 (116)	87–117 (165)	128–166 (214)	169–215 (263)	210–264 (312)	251–314 (362)	292–363 (411)	333–412 (460)
47–69 (117)	88–118 (166)	129–167 (215)	170–216 (264)	211–266 (314)	252–315 (363)	293–364 (412)	334–413 (461)
48–70 (118)	89–119 (167)	130–168 (216)	171–218 (266)	212–267 (315)	253–316 (364)	294–365 (413)	335–414 (462)
49–71 (119)	90–120 (168)	131–170 (218)	172–219 (267)	213–268 (316)	254–317 (365)	295–366 (414)	336–416 (464)
50–72 (120)	91–122 (170)	132–171 (219)	173–220 (268)	214–269 (317)	255–318 (366)	296–368 (416)	337–417 (465)
51–74 (122)	92–123 (171)	133–172 (220)	174–221 (269)	215–270 (318)	256–320 (368)	297–369 (417)	338–418 (466)
52–75 (123)	93–124 (172)	134–173 (221)	175–222 (270)	216–272 (320)	257–321 (369)	298–370 (418)	339–419 (467)
53–76 (124)	94–125 (173)	135–174 (222)	176–224 (272)	217–273 (321)	258–322 (370)	299–371 (419)	
54–77 (125)	95–126 (174)	136–176 (224)	177–225 (273)	218–274 (322)	259–323 (371)	300–372 (420)	
55–78 (126)	96–128 (176)	137–177 (225)	178–226 (274)	219–275 (323)	260–324 (372)	301–374 (422)	

FOR OFFENSE CLASSES F THROUGH I

3–13	9–20	15–27	21–35	27–42	33–49	39–56	45–63
4–14	10–21	16–29	22–36	28–43	34–50	40–57	46–65
5–15	11–23	17–30	23–37	29–44	35–51	41–59	47–66
6–17	12–24	18–31	24–38	30–45	36–53	42–60	48–67
7–18	13–25	19–32	25–39	31–47	37–54	43–61	49–68
8–19	14–26	20–33	26–41	32–48	38–55	44–62	

The tables above show the maximum sentence that corresponds to each minimum sentence. For minimum sentences of 340 months or more, the maximum sentence is 120 percent of the minimum sentence, rounded to the next highest month, plus 12 additional months. G.S. 15A-1340.17(e1).

Sex Crimes: The maximum sentence for a Class B1 through E felony subject to the registration requirements of G.S. Chapter 14, Article 27A, is 120 percent of the minimum sentence, rounded to the next highest month, plus 60 additional months, as indicated in parentheses above. G.S. 15A-1340.17(f).

Felony 2013

Main Sentence Types

- Prison
  - Low level felony vs. Serious felony
- Probation
- Probation with a split sentence
- Sex offenders
- Advanced Issues:
  - Extraordinary Mitigation
  - Advanced Supervised Release

Offense Class

Prior Record Level

OFFENSE CLASS		V 17 Pts	VI 18+ Pts
A Max. Death or Life w/o Parole	Death or Life without Parole Defendant under 18 at Time of Offense: Life with or without Parole		
B1 Max. Life w/o Parole	A 240–300 192–240 144–192	A Life w/o Parole 336–420 252–336	A Life w/o Parole 386–483 290–386
B2 Max. 484 (532)	A 157–196 125–157 94–125	A 273–342 219–273 164–219	A 314–393 251–314 189–251
C Max. 231 (279)	A 73–92 58–73 44–58	A 127–159 101–127 76–101	A 146–182 117–146 87–117
D Max. 204 (252)	A 64–80 51–64 38–51	A 111–139 89–111 67–89	A 128–160 103–128 77–103
E Max. 88 (136)	I/A 25–31 20–25 15–20	A 44–55 35–44 26–35	A 50–63 40–50 30–40
F Max. 59	I/A 16–20 13–16 10–13	A 28–36 23–28 20–26	A 33–41 26–33 20–26
Ma	I/A 17–21 13–17 10–13	A 22–27 17–22 13–17	A 25–31 20–25 15–20
Ma	I/A 10–12 8–10 6–8	I/A 15–19 12–15 9–12	A 20–25 16–20 12–16
Max. 24	I 6–8 5–6 4–5	I/A 9–11 7–9 5–7	I/A 10–12 8–10 6–8

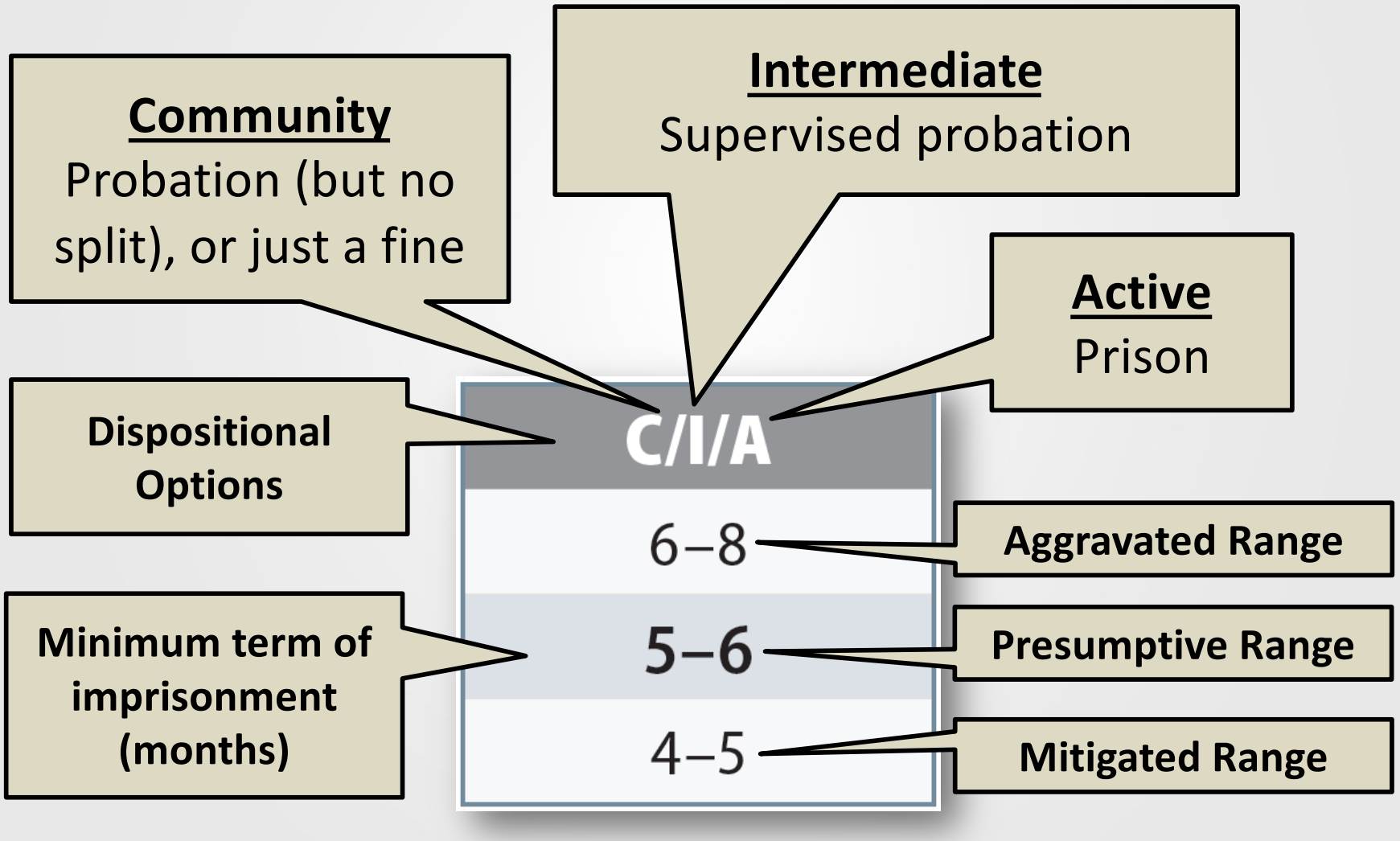
C/I/A

6–8

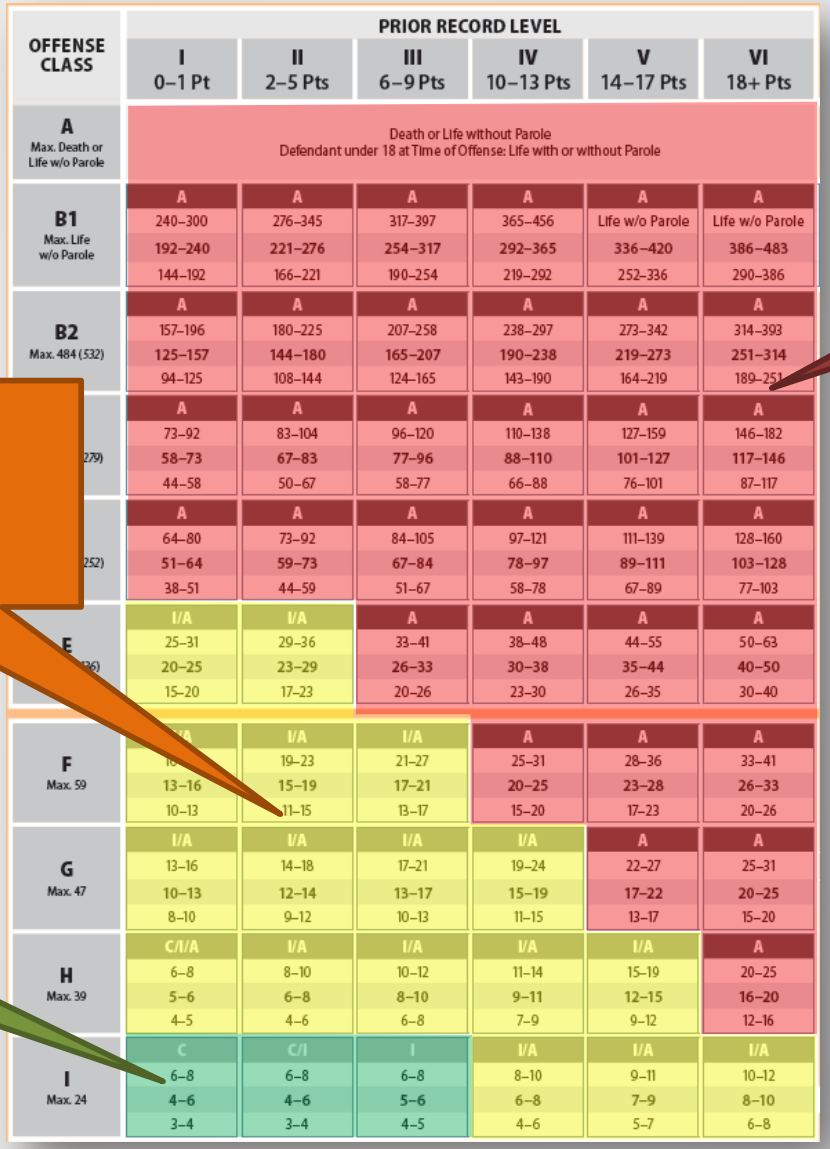
5–6

4–5

Grid Cell


Community
Probation (but no split), or just a fine
Intermediate
Supervised probation
Active
Prison
Dispositional Options
C/I/A
6–8
5–6
4–5
Minimum term of imprisonment (months)
Aggravated Range
Presumptive Range
Mitigated Range

Dispositional Options



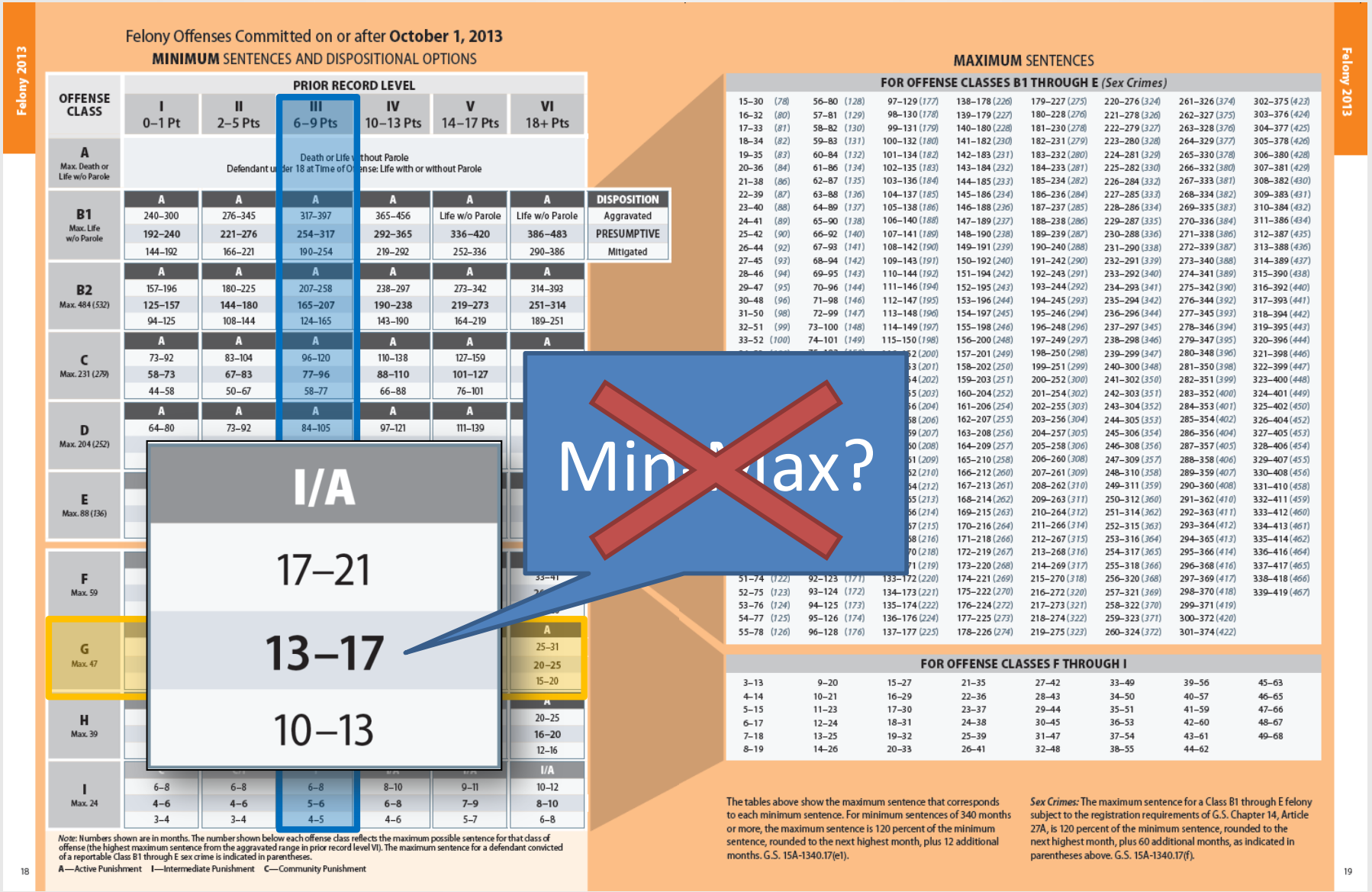
OFFENSE CLASS	PRIOR RECORD LEVEL					
	I 0–1 Pt	II 2–5 Pts	III 6–9 Pts	IV 10–13 Pts	V 14–17 Pts	VI 18+ Pts
A Max. Death or Life w/o Parole	Death or Life without Parole Defendant under 18 at Time of Offense: Life with or without Parole					
B1 Max. Life w/o Parole	A 240–300 192–240 144–192	A 276–345 221–276 166–221	A 317–397 254–317 190–254	A 365–456 292–365 219–292	A Life w/o Parole 336–420 252–336	A Life w/o Parole 386–483 290–386
B2 Max. 484 (532)	A 157–196 125–157 94–125	A 180–225 144–180 108–144	A 207–258 165–207 124–165	A 238–297 190–238 143–190	A 273–342 219–273 164–219	A 314–393 251–314 189–251
[illegible] 279)	A 73–92 58–73 44–58	A 83–104 67–83 50–67	A 96–120 77–96 58–77	A 110–138 88–110 66–88	A 127–159 101–127 76–101	A 146–182 117–146 87–117
[illegible] 252)	A 64–80 51–64 38–51	A 73–92 59–73 44–59	A 84–105 67–84 51–67	A 97–121 78–97 58–78	A 111–139 89–111 67–89	A 128–160 103–128 77–103
E [illegible] 236)	I/A 25–31 20–25 15–20	I/A 29–36 23–29 17–23	A 33–41 26–33 20–26	A 38–48 30–38 23–30	A 44–55 35–44 26–35	A 50–63 40–50 30–40
F Max. 59	[illegible] 16 13–16 10–13	I/A 19–23 15–19 11–15	I/A 21–27 17–21 13–17	A 25–31 20–25 15–20	A 28–36 23–28 17–23	A 33–41 26–33 20–26
G Max. 47	I/A 13–16 10–13 8–10	I/A 14–18 12–14 9–12	I/A 17–21 13–17 10–13	I/A 19–24 15–19 11–15	A 22–27 17–22 13–17	A 25–31 20–25 15–20
H Max. 39	C/I/A 6–8 5–6 4–5	I/A 8–10 6–8 4–6	I/A 10–12 8–10 6–8	I/A 11–14 9–11 7–9	I/A 15–19 12–15 9–12	A 20–25 16–20 12–16
I Max. 24	C 6–8 4–6 3–4	C/I 6–8 4–6 3–4	I 6–8 5–6 4–5	I/A 8–10 6–8 4–6	I/A 9–11 7–9 5–7	I/A 10–12 8–10 6–8

Mandatory Active

Judge's discretion

Mandatory Non-Active

Sentence of imprisonment



Felony Sentencing: Min-Max

Permissible Minimum Sentences

OFFENSE CLASS	PRIOR RECORD LEVEL I 0–1 Pt	II 2–5 Pts	III 6–9 Pts	IV 10–13 Pts	V 14–17 Pts	VI 18+ Pts	DISPOSITION
A Max. Death or Life w/o Parole	Death or Life without Parole Defendant under 18 at Time of Offense: Life with or without Parole						
B1 Max. Life w/o Parole	A	A	A	A	A	A	DISPOSITION
	240–300	276–345	317–397	365–456	Life w/o Parole	Life w/o Parole	Aggravated
	192–240	**221–276**	**254–317**	**292–365**	**336–420**	**386–483**	**PRESUMPTIVE**
	144–192	166–221	190–254	219–292	252–336	290–386	Mitigated
B2 Max. 484 (532)	A	A	A	A	A	A	
	157–196	180–225	207–258	238–297	273–342	314–393	
	125–157	**144–180**	**165–207**	**190–238**	**219–273**	**251–314**	
	94–125	108–144	124–165	143–190	164–219	189–251	
C Max. 231 (279)	A	A	A	A	A	A	
	73–92	83–104	96–120	110–138	127–159	146–182	
	58–73	**67–83**	**77–96**	**88–110**	**101–127**	**117–146**	
	44–58	50–67	58–77	66–88	76–101	87–117	
D Max. 204 (252)	A	A	A	A	A	A	
	64–80	73–92	84–105	97–121	111–139	128–160	
	51–64	**59–73**	**67–84**	**78–97**	**89–111**	**103–128**	
	38–51	44–59	51–67	58–78	67–89	77–103	
E Max. 88 (136)	I/A	I/A	A	A	A	A	
	25–31	29–36	33–41	38–48	44–55	50–63	
	20–25	**23–29**	**26–33**	**30–38**	**35–44**	**40–50**	
	15–20	17–23	20–26	23–30	26–35	30–40	
F Max. 59	I/A	I/A	I/A	A	A	A	
	16–20	19–23	21–27	25–31	28–36	33–41	
	13–16	**15–19**	**17–21**	**20–25**	**23–28**	**26–33**	
	10–13	11–15	13–17	15–20	17–23	20–26	
G Max. 47	I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	A	A	
	13–16	14–18	17–21	19–24	22–27	25–31	
	10–13	**12–14**	**13–17**	**15–19**	**17–22**	**20–25**	
	8–10	9–12	10–13	11–15	13–17	15–20	
H Max. 39	C/I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	A	
	6–8	8–10	10–12	11–14	15–19	20–25	
	5–6	**6–8**	**8–10**	**9–11**	**12–15**	**16–20**	
	4–5	4–6	6–8	7–9	9–12	12–16	
I Max. 24	C	C/I	I	I/A	I/A	I/A	
	6–8	6–8	6–8	8–10	9–11	10–12	
	4–6	**4–6**	**5–6**	**6–8**	**7–9**	**8–10**	
	3–4	3–4	4–5	4–6	5–7	6–8	

Note: Numbers shown are in months. The number shown below each offense class reflects the maximum possible sentence for that class of offense (the highest maximum sentence from the aggravated range in prior record level VI). The maximum sentence for a defendant convicted of a reportable Class B1 through E sex crime is indicated in parentheses.

A—Active Punishment **I**—Intermediate Punishment **C**—Community Punishment

Corresponding Maximums

FOR OFFENSE CLASSES B1 THROUGH E *(Sex Crimes)*

15–30 (78)	56–80 (128)	97–129 (177)	138–178 (226)	179–227 (275)	220–276 (324)		302–375 (423)
16–32 (80)	57–81 (129)	98–130 (178)	139–179 (227)	180–228 (276)	221–278 (326)		303–376 (424)
17–33 (81)	58–82 (130)	99–131 (179)	140–180 (228)	181–230 (278)	222–279 (327)		304–377 (425)
18–34 (82)	59–83 (131)	100–132 (180)	141–182 (230)	182–231 (279)	223–280 (328)		305–378 (426)
19–35 (83)	60–84 (132)	101–134 (182)	142–183 (231)	183–232 (280)	224–281 (329)		
20–36 (84)	61–86 (134)	102–135 (183)	143–184 (232)	184–233 (281)	225–282 (330)		
21–38 (86)	62–87 (135)	103–136 (184)	144–185 (233)	185–234 (282)	226–284 (332)		
22–39 (87)	63–88 (136)	104–137 (185)	145–186 (234)	186–236 (284)	227–285 (333)		
23–40 (88)	64–89						
24–41 (89)	65–90						
25–42 (90)	66–92						
26–44 (92)	67–93						
27–45 (93)	68–94						
28–46 (94)	69–95						
29–47 (95)	70–96						
30–48 (96)	71–98						
31–50 (98)	72–99						
32–51 (99)	73–100						
33–52 (100)	74–101						
34–53 (101)	75–102						
35–54 (102)	76–104						
36–56 (104)	77–105						
37–57 (105)	78–106						
38–58 (106)	79–107						
39–59 (107)	80–108						
40–60 (108)	81–110						
41–62 (110)	82–111						
42–63 (111)	83–112						
43–64 (112)	84–113						
44–65 (113)	85–114						
45–66 (114)	86–116						
46–68 (116)	87–117						
47–69 (117)	88–118						
48–70 (118)	89–119						
49–71 (119)	90–120						
50–72 (120)	91–122 (170)	132–171 (219)	173–220 (268)	214–269 (317)	255–318 (366)	296–368 (416)	337–417 (465)
51–74 (122)	92–123 (171)	133–172 (220)	174–221 (269)	215–270 (318)	256–320 (368)	297–369 (417)	338–418 (466)
52–75 (123)	93–124 (172)	134–173 (221)	175–222 (270)	216–272 (320)	257–321 (369)	298–370 (418)	339–419 (467)
53–76 (124)	94–125 (173)	135–174 (222)	176–224 (272)	217–273 (321)	258–322 (370)	299–371 (419)	
54–77 (125)	95–126 (174)	136–176 (224)	177–225 (273)	218–274 (322)	259–323 (371)	300–372 (420)	
55–78 (126)	96–128 (176)	137–177 (225)	178–226 (274)	219–275 (323)	260–324 (372)	301–374 (422)	

FOR OFFENSE CLASSES F THROUGH I

3–13	9–20	15–27	21–35	27–42		39–56	45–63
4–14	10–21	16–29	22–36				
5–15	11–23	17–30	23–37				
6–17	12–24	18–31	24–38				
7–18	13–25	19–32	25–39				
8–19	14–26	20–33	26–41				

The tables above show the maximum sentence that corresponds to each minimum sentence. For minimum sentences of 340 months or more, the maximum sentence is 120 percent of the minimum sentence, rounded to the next highest month, plus 12 additional months. G.S. 15A-1340.17(e1).

Class B1-E
120% of Min. + 12
(Sex offender:
120% of Min. + 60)

Class F-I
120% of Min. + 9

F M PV

Felony Sentencing

Felony 2013

Felony Offenses Committed on or after **October 1, 2013**

MINIMUM SENTENCES AND DISPOSITIONAL OPTIONS

OFFENSE CLASS	PRIOR RECORD LEVEL I 0–1 Pt	II 2–5 Pts	III 6–9 Pts	IV 10–13 Pts	V 14–17 Pts	VI 18+ Pts
A Max. Death or Life w/o Parole	Death or Life without Parole Defendant under 18 at Time of Offense: Life with or without Parole					
B1 Max. Life w/o Parole	A	A	A	A	A	A
	240–300	276–345	317–397	365–456	Life w/o Parole	Life w/o Parole
	192–240	221–276	254–317	292–365	336–420	386–483
	144–192	166–221	190–254	219–292	252–336	290–386
B2 Max. 484 (532)	A	A	A	A	A	A
	157–196	180–225	207–258	238–297	273–342	314–393
	125–157	144–180	165–207	190–238	219–273	251–314
	94–125	108–144	124–165	143–190	164–219	189–251
C Max. 231 (279)	A	A	A	A	A	A
	73–92	83–104	96–120	110–138	127–159	146–182
	58–73	67–83	77–96	88–110	101–127	117–146
	44–58	50–67	58–77	66–88	76–101	87–117
D Max. 204 (252)	A	A	A	A	A	A
	64–80	73–92	84–105	97–121	111–139	128–160
	51–64	59–73	67–84	78–97	89–111	103–128
	38–51	44–59	51–67	58–78	67–89	77–103
E Max. 88 (136)	I/A	I/A	A	A	A	A
	25–31	29–36	33–41	38–48	44–55	50–63
	20–25	23–29	26–33	30–38	35–44	40–50
	15–20	17–23	20–26	23–30	26–35	30–40
F Max. 59	I/A	I/A	I/A	A	A	A
	16–20	19–23	21–27	25–31	28–36	33–41
	13–16	15–19	17–21	20–25	23–28	26–33
	10–13	11–15	13–17	15–20	17–23	20–26
G Max. 47	I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	A	A
	13–16	14–18	17–21	19–24	22–27	25–31
	10–13	12–14	13–17	15–19	17–22	20–25
	8–10	9–12	10–13	11–15	13–17	15–20
H Max. 39	C/I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	I/A	A
	6–8	8–10	10–12	11–14	15–19	20–25
	4–6	6–8	8–10	9–11	12–15	16–20
	4–5	4–6	6–8	7–9	9–12	12–16
I Max. 24	C	C/I	I	I/A	I/A	I/A
	6–8	6–8	6–8	8–10	9–11	10–12
	4–6	4–6	5–6	6–8	7–9	8–10
	3–4	3–4	4–5	4–6	5–7	6–8

DISPOSITION
Aggravated
PRESUMPTIVE
Mitigated

Note: Numbers shown are in months. The number shown below each offense class reflects the maximum possible sentence for that class of offense (the highest maximum sentence from the aggravated range in prior record level VI). The maximum sentence for a defendant convicted of a reportable Class B1 through E sex crime is indicated in parentheses.

A—Active Punishment **I**—Intermediate Punishment **C**—Community Punishment

18

MAXIMUM SENTENCES

FOR OFFENSE CLASSES B1 THROUGH E *(Sex Crimes)*

15–30 (78)	56–80 (128)	97–129 (177)	138–178 (226)	179–227 (275)	220–276 (324)	261–326 (374)	302–375 (423)
16–32 (80)	57–81 (129)	98–130 (178)	139–179 (227)	180–228 (276)	221–278 (326)	262–327 (375)	303–376 (424)
17–33 (81)	58–82 (130)	99–131 (179)	140–180 (228)	181–230 (278)	222–279 (327)	263–328 (376)	304–377 (425)
18–34 (82)	59–83 (131)	100–132 (180)	141–182 (230)	182–231 (279)	223–280 (328)	264–329 (377)	305–378 (426)
19–35 (83)	60–84 (132)	101–134 (182)	142–183 (231)	183–232 (280)	224–281 (329)	265–330 (378)	306–380 (428)
20–36 (84)	61–86 (134)	102–135 (183)	143–184 (232)	184–233 (281)	225–282 (330)	266–332 (380)	307–381 (429)
21–38 (86)	62–87 (135)	103–136 (184)	144–185 (233)	185–234 (282)	226–284 (332)	267–333 (381)	308–382 (430)
22–39 (87)	63–88 (136)	104–137 (185)	145–186 (234)	186–236 (284)	227–285 (333)	268–334 (382)	309–383 (431)
23–40 (88)	64–89 (137)	105–138 (186)	146–188 (236)	187–237 (285)	228–286 (334)	269–335 (383)	310–384 (432)
24–41 (89)	65–90 (138)	106–140 (188)	147–189 (237)	188–238 (286)	229–287 (335)	270–336 (384)	311–386 (434)
25–42 (90)	66–92 (140)	107–141 (189)	148–190 (238)	189–239 (287)	230–288 (336)	271–338 (386)	312–387 (435)
26–44 (92)	67–93 (141)	108–142 (190)	149–191 (239)	190–240 (288)	231–290 (338)	272–339 (387)	313–388 (436)
27–45 (93)	68–94 (142)	109–143 (191)	150–192 (240)	191–242 (290)	232–291 (339)	273–340 (388)	314–389 (437)
28–46 (94)	69–95 (143)	110–144 (192)	151–194 (242)	192–243 (291)	233–292 (340)	274–341 (389)	315–390 (438)
29–47 (95)	70–96 (144)	111–146 (194)	152–195 (243)	193–244 (292)	234–293 (341)	275–342 (390)	316–392 (440)
30–48 (96)	71–98 (146)	112–147 (195)	153–196 (244)	194–245 (293)	235–294 (342)	276–344 (392)	317–393 (441)
31–50 (98)	72–99 (147)	113–148 (196)	154–197 (245)	195–246 (294)	236–296 (344)	277–345 (393)	318–394 (442)
32–51 (99)	73–100 (148)	114–149 (197)	155–198 (246)	196–248 (296)	237–297 (345)	278–346 (394)	319–395 (443)
33–52 (100)	74–101 (149)	115–150 (198)	156–200 (248)	197–249 (297)	238–298 (346)	279–347 (395)	320–396 (444)
34–53 (101)	75–102 (150)	116–152 (200)	157–201 (249)	198–250 (298)	239–299 (347)	280–348 (396)	321–398 (446)
35–54 (102)	76–104 (152)	117–153 (201)	158–202 (250)	199–251 (299)	240–300 (348)	281–350 (398)	322–399 (447)
36–56 (104)	77–105 (153)	118–154 (202)	159–203 (251)	200–252 (300)	241–302 (350)	282–351 (399)	323–400 (448)
37–57 (105)	78–106 (154)				242–303 (351)	283–352 (400)	324–401 (449)
38–58 (106)	79–107				304 (352)	284–353 (401)	325–402 (450)
39–59 (107)						285–354 (402)	326–404 (452)
40–60 (108)						286–356 (404)	327–405 (453)
41–62						357 (405)	328–406 (454)
42–63						358 (406)	329–407 (455)
43–						(407)	330–408 (456)
44						408)	331–410 (458)
4						10)	332–411 (459)
4						1)	333–412 (460)
4						2)	334–413 (461)
48						13)	335–414 (462)
49–						414)	336–416 (464)
50–7						416)	337–417 (465)
51–74						369 (417)	338–418 (466)
52–75 (123)						298–370 (418)	339–419 (467)
53–76 (124)						299–371 (419)	
54–77 (125)	95				23 (371)	300–372 (420)	
55–78 (126)					260–324 (372)	301–374 (422)	

FOR OFFENSE CLASSES F THROUGH I

3–13	9–20	15–27	21–35	27–42	33–49	39–56	45–63
4–14	10–21	16–29	22–36	28–43	34–50	40–57	46–65
5–15	11–23	17–30	23–37	29–44	35–51	41–59	47–66
6–17	12–24	18–31	24–38	30–45	36–53	42–60	48–67
7–18	13–25	19–32	25–39	31–47	37–54	43–61	49–68
8–19	14–26	20–33	26–41	32–48	38–55	44–62	

"6-17 months, Active"

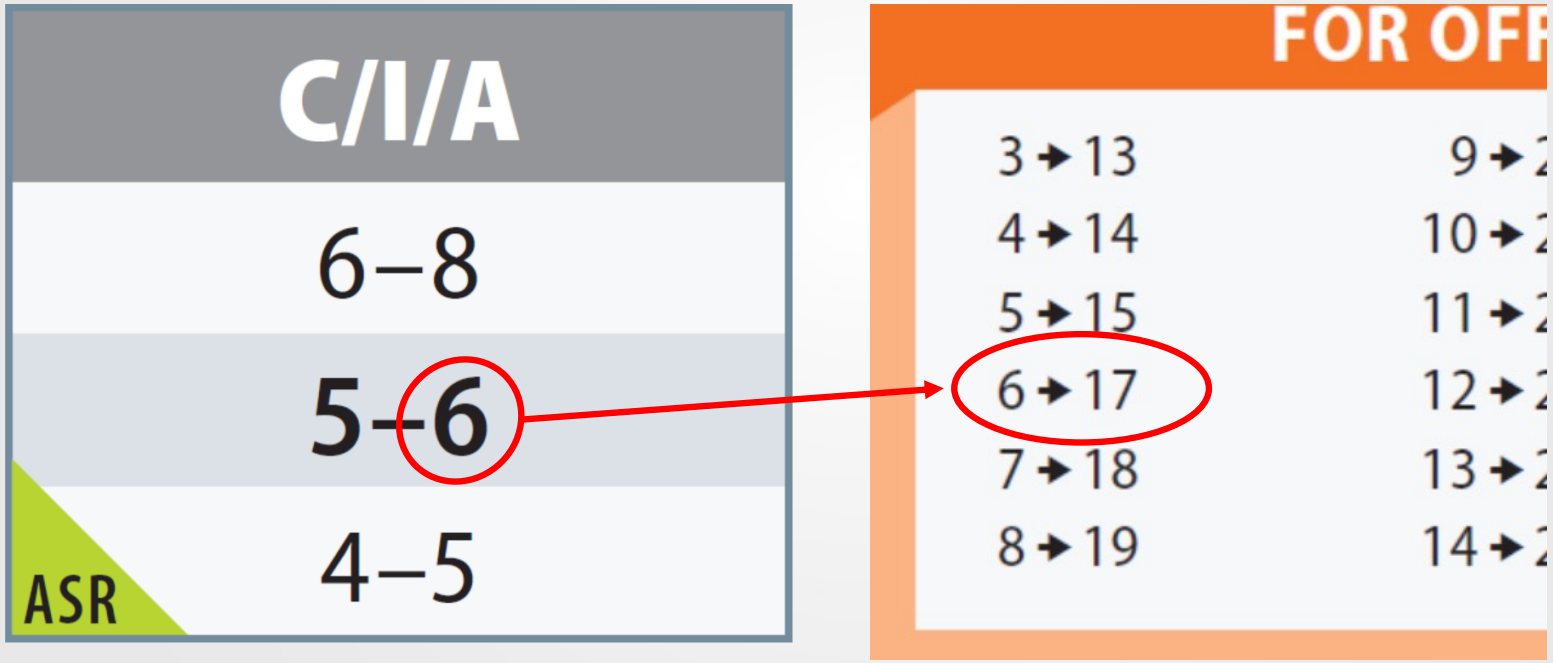
The tables above show the maximum sentence that corresponds to each minimum sentence. For minimum sentences of 340 months or more, the maximum sentence is 120 percent of the minimum sentence, rounded to the next highest month, plus 12 additional months. G.S. 15A-1340.17(e1).

Sex Crimes: The maximum sentence for a Class B1 through E felony subject to the registration requirements of G.S. Chapter 14, Article 27A, is 120 percent of the minimum sentence, rounded to the next highest month, plus 60 additional months, as indicated in parentheses above. G.S. 15A-1340.17(f).

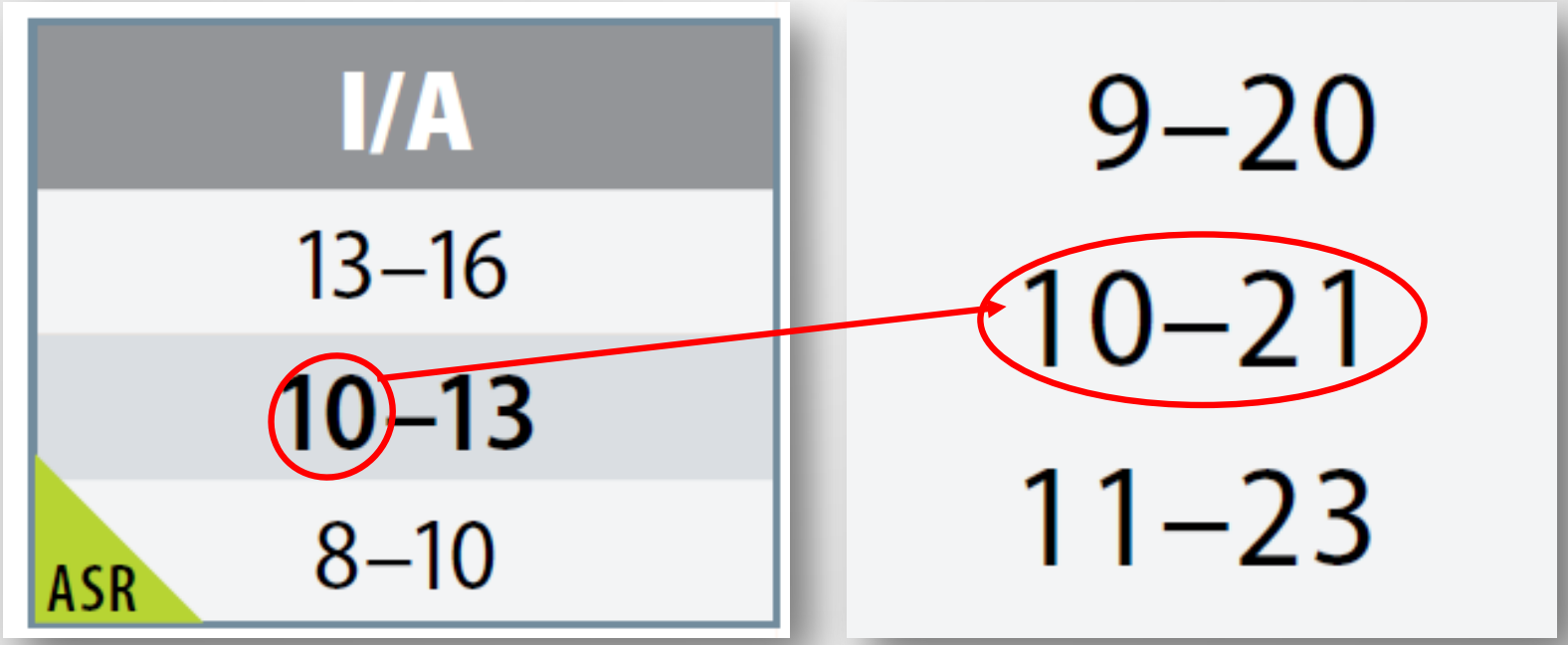
19

Felony 2013

Exercise 1


C/I/A
6–8
5–6
4–5
ASR
FOR OFF
3 → 13
4 → 14
5 → 15
6 → 17
7 → 18
8 → 19
9 →
10 →
11 →
12 →
13 →
14 →

Exercise 2


I/A
13–16
10–13
8–10
ASR
9–20
10–21
11–23

Exercise 3

I/A

25–31

20–25

15–20

ASR

Sex Crimes: The maximum sentence for a Class B1 through E felony subject to the registration requirements of G.S. Chapter 14, Article 27A is 120 percent of the minimum sentence, rounded to the next highest month, plus 60 additional months, as indicated in parentheses below. G.S. 15A-1340.17(f).

FOR OFFENSE CLASSES B1 THROUGH E [Minimum Sentence → Corresponding Maximum (*Sex Crimes*)]

15→30 (78)	56→80 (128)	97→129 (177)	138→178 (226)	179→227 (275)	220→276 (324)	261→326 (374)	302→375 (423)
16→32 (80)	57→81 (129)	98→130 (178)	139→179 (227)	180→228 (276)	221→278 (326)	262→327 (375)	303→376 (424)
17→33 (81)	58→82 (130)	99→131 (179)	140→180 (228)	181→230 (278)	222→279 (327)	263→328 (376)	304→377 (425)
18→34 (82)	59→83 (131)	100→132 (180)	141→182 (230)	182→231 (279)	223→280 (328)	264→329 (377)	305→378 (426)
19→35 (83)	60→84 (132)	101→134 (182)	142→183 (231)	183→232 (280)	224→281 (329)	265→330 (378)	306→380 (428)
20→36 (84)	61→86 (134)	102→135 (183)	143→184 (232)	184→233 (281)	225→282 (330)	266→332 (380)	307→381 (429)
21→38 (86)	62→87 (135)	103→136 (184)	144→185 (233)	185→234 (282)	226→284 (332)	267→333 (381)	308→382 (430)
22→39 (87)	63→88 (136)	104→137 (185)	145→186 (234)	186→236 (284)	227→285 (333)	268→334 (382)	309→383 (431)
[illegible]	64→89 (137)	105→138 (186)	146→188 (236)	187→237 (285)	228→286 (334)	269→335 (383)	310→384 (432)
24→41 (89)	65→90 (138)	106→140 (188)	147→189 (237)	188→238 (286)	229→287 (335)	270→336 (384)	311→386 (434)
25→42 (90)	66→92 (140)	107→141 (189)	148→190 (238)	189→239 (287)	230→288 (336)	271→338 (386)	312→387 (435)
26→44 (92)	67→93 (141)	108→142 (190)	149→191 (239)	190→240 (288)	231→290 (338)	272→339 (387)	313→388 (436)
27→45 (93)	68→94 (142)	109→143 (191)	150→192 (240)	191→242 (290)	232→291 (339)	273→340 (388)	314→389 (437)
28→46 (94)	69→95 (143)	110→144 (192)	151→194 (242)	192→243 (291)	233→292 (340)	274→341 (389)	315→390 (438)
29→47 (95)	70→96 (144)	111→146 (194)	152→195 (243)	193→244 (292)	234→293 (341)	275→342 (390)	316→392 (440)
30→48 (96)	71→98 (146)	112→147 (195)	153→196 (244)	194→245 (293)	235→294 (342)	276→344 (392)	317→393 (441)
31→50 (98)	72→99 (147)	113→148 (196)	154→197 (245)	195→246 (294)	236→296 (344)	277→345 (393)	318→394 (442)
32→51 (99)	73→100 (148)	114→149 (197)	155→198 (246)	196→248 (296)	237→297 (345)	278→346 (394)	319→395 (443)
33→52 (100)	74→101 (149)	115→150 (198)	156→200 (248)	197→249 (297)	238→298 (346)	279→347 (395)	320→396 (444)
34→53 (101)	75→102 (150)	116→152 (200)	157→201 (249)	198→250 (298)	239→299 (347)	280→348 (396)	321→398 (446)
35→54 (102)	76→104 (152)	117→153 (201)	158→202 (250)	199→251 (299)	240→300 (348)	281→350 (398)	322→399 (447)
36→56 (104)	77→105 (153)	118→154 (202)	159→203 (251)	200→252 (300)	241→302 (350)	282→351 (399)	323→400 (448)
37→57 (105)	78→106 (154)	119→155 (203)	160→204 (252)	201→254 (302)	242→303 (351)	283→352 (400)	324→401 (449)
38→58 (106)	79→107 (155)	120→156 (204)	161→206 (254)	202→255 (303)	243→304 (352)	284→353 (401)	325→402 (450)
39→59 (107)	80→108 (156)	121→158 (206)	162→207 (255)	203→256 (304)	244→305 (353)	285→354 (402)	326→404 (452)
40→60 (108)	81→110 (158)	122→159 (207)	163→208 (256)	204→257 (305)	245→306 (354)	286→356 (404)	327→405 (453)
41→62 (110)	82→111 (159)	123→160 (208)	164→209 (257)	205→258 (306)	246→308 (356)	287→357 (405)	328→406 (454)
42→63 (111)	83→112 (160)	124→161 (209)	165→210 (258)	206→260 (308)	247→309 (357)	288→358 (406)	329→407 (455)
43→64 (112)	84→113 (161)	125→162 (210)	166→212 (260)	207→261 (309)	248→310 (358)	289→359 (407)	330→408 (456)
44→65 (113)	85→114 (162)	126→164 (212)	167→213 (261)	208→262 (310)	249→311 (359)	290→360 (408)	331→410 (458)
45→66 (114)	86→116 (164)	127→165 (213)	168→214 (262)	209→263 (311)	250→312 (360)	291→362 (410)	332→411 (459)
46→68 (116)	87→117 (165)	128→166 (214)	169→215 (263)	210→264 (312)	251→314 (362)	292→363 (411)	333→412 (460)
47→69 (117)	88→118 (166)	129→167 (215)	170→216 (264)	211→266 (314)	252→315 (363)	293→364 (412)	334→413 (461)
48→70 (118)	89→119 (167)	130→168 (216)	171→218 (266)	212→267 (315)	253→316 (364)	294→365 (413)	335→414 (462)
49→71 (119)	90→120 (168)	131→170 (218)	172→219 (267)	213→268 (316)	254→317 (365)	295→366 (414)	336→416 (464)
50→72 (120)	91→122 (170)	132→171 (219)	173→220 (268)	214→269 (317)	255→318 (366)	296→368 (416)	337→417 (465)
51→74 (122)	92→123 (171)	133→172 (220)	174→221 (269)	215→270 (318)	256→320 (368)	297→369 (417)	338→418 (466)
52→75 (123)	93→124 (172)	134→173 (221)	175→222 (270)	216→272 (320)	257→321 (369)	298→370 (418)	339→419 (467)
53→76 (124)	94→125 (173)	135→174 (222)	176→224 (272)	217→273 (321)	258→322 (370)	299→371 (419)	
54→77 (125)	95→126 (174)	136→176 (224)	177→225 (273)	218→274 (322)	259→323 (371)	300→372 (420)	
55→78 (126)	96→128 (176)	137→177 (225)	178→226 (274)	219→275 (323)	260→324 (372)	301→374 (422)	

[illegible] CLASSES F THROUGH I [Minimum Sentence → Corresp[illegible]]

3→13	9→20	21→35	27→42	[illegible]	[illegible]→56	45→63
4→14	10→21	[illegible]	28→43	[illegible]	40→57	46→65
5→15	11→23	17→30	[illegible]	[illegible]	41→59	47→66
6→17	12→24	18→31	[illegible]	[illegible]	42→60	48→67
7→18	13→25	19→32	[illegible]	[illegible]	43→61	49→68
8→19	14→26	[illegible]	32→48	[illegible]	44→62	

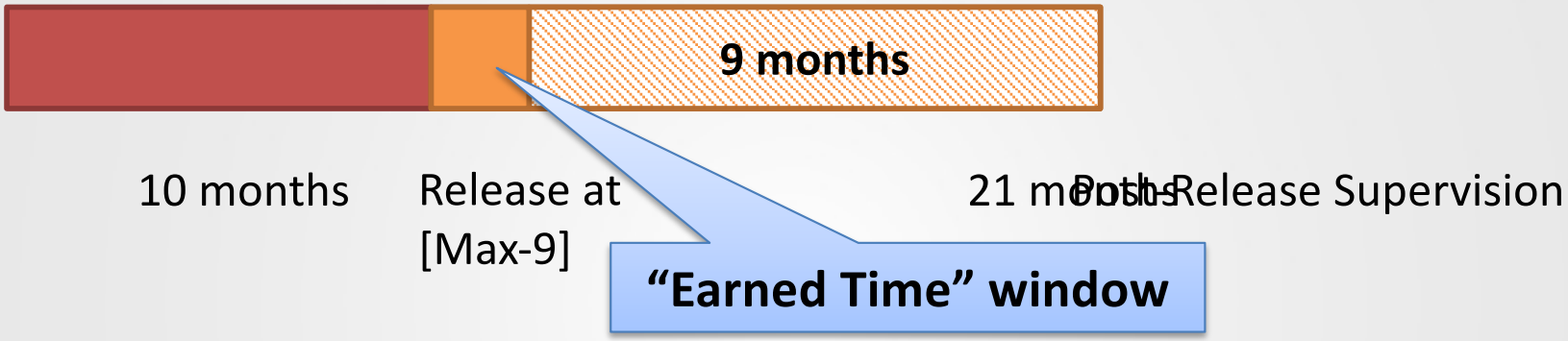
Length of Prob[illegible] Post-Release Supervision

What does it mean?

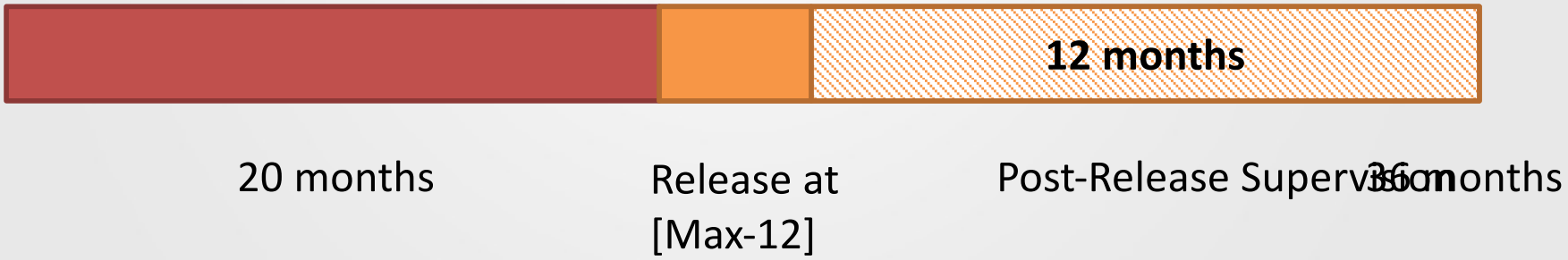
Class G Felony
10-21 months, Active

What does the sentence mean?

Class G felony: **10-21 months**



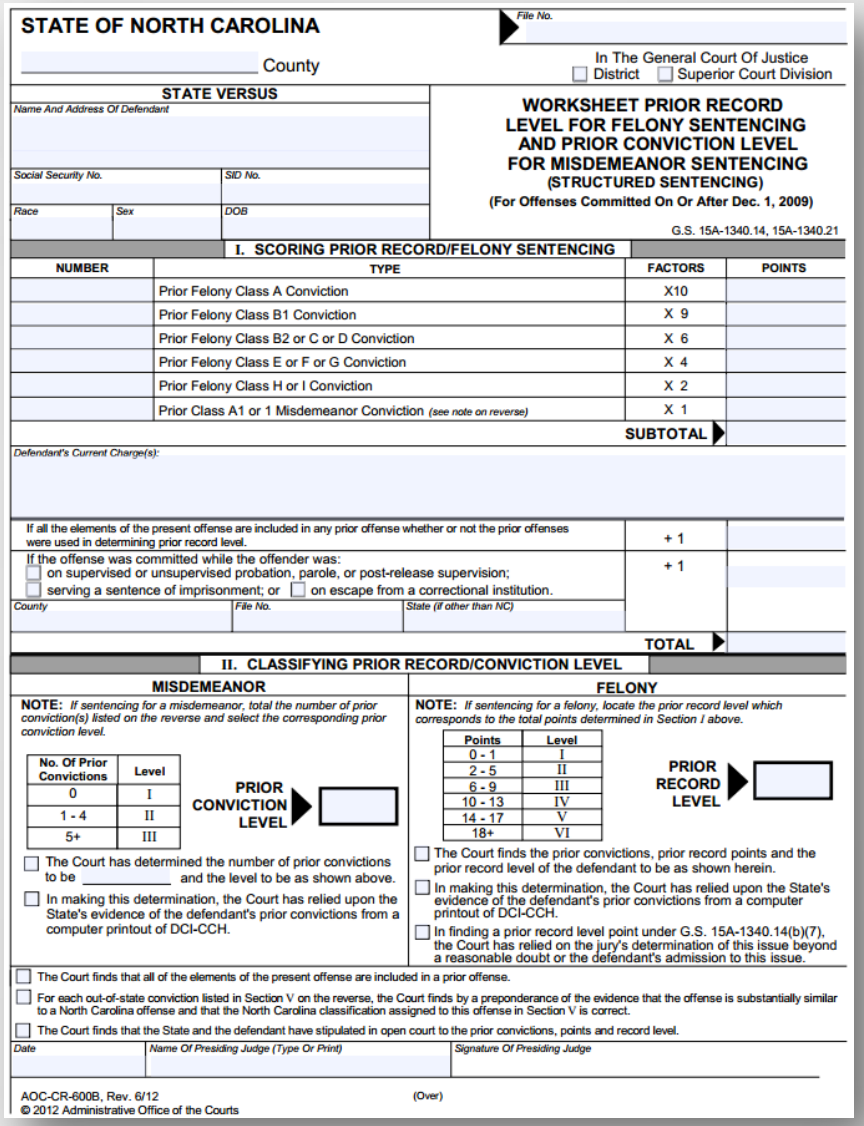
Class E felony: **20-36 months**



Exercise 4

- Prior Record Level

Prior record level



STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA File No.

_____ County

In The General Court Of Justice ☐ District ☐ Superior Court Division

STATE VERSUS

Name And Address Of Defendant

Social Security No. | SID No.

Race | Sex | DOB

WORKSHEET PRIOR RECORD LEVEL FOR FELONY SENTENCING AND PRIOR CONVICTION LEVEL FOR MISDEMEANOR SENTENCING
(STRUCTURED SENTENCING)
(For Offenses Committed On Or After Dec. 1, 2009)

G.S. 15A-1340.14, 15A-1340.21

I. SCORING PRIOR RECORD/FELONY SENTENCING

NUMBER	TYPE	FACTORS	POINTS
	Prior Felony Class A Conviction	X10	
	Prior Felony Class B1 Conviction	X 9	
	Prior Felony Class B2 or C or D Conviction	X 6	
	Prior Felony Class E or F or G Conviction	X 4	
	Prior Felony Class H or I Conviction	X 2	
	Prior Class A1 or 1 Misdemeanor Conviction *(see note on reverse)*	X 1	
		SUBTOTAL	

Defendant's Current Charge(s):

If all the elements of the present offense are included in any prior offense whether or not the prior offenses were used in determining prior record level.	+ 1	
If the offense was committed while the offender was: ☐ on supervised or unsupervised probation, parole, or post-release supervision; ☐ serving a sentence of imprisonment; or ☐ on escape from a correctional institution. County | File No. | State (if other than NC)	+ 1	
	TOTAL	

II. CLASSIFYING PRIOR RECORD/CONVICTION LEVEL

MISDEMEANOR

NOTE: *If sentencing for a misdemeanor, total the number of prior conviction(s) listed on the reverse and select the corresponding prior conviction level.*

No. Of Prior Convictions	Level
0	I
1 - 4	II
5+	III

PRIOR CONVICTION LEVEL ▶ ☐

☐ The Court has determined the number of prior convictions to be _____ and the level to be as shown above.

☐ In making this determination, the Court has relied upon the State's evidence of the defendant's prior convictions from a computer printout of DCI-CCH.

FELONY

NOTE: *If sentencing for a felony, locate the prior record level which corresponds to the total points determined in Section I above.*

Points	Level
0 - 1	I
2 - 5	II
6 - 9	III
10 - 13	IV
14 - 17	V
18+	VI

PRIOR RECORD LEVEL ▶ ☐

☐ The Court finds the prior convictions, prior record points and the prior record level of the defendant to be as shown herein.

☐ In making this determination, the Court has relied upon the State's evidence of the defendant's prior convictions from a computer printout of DCI-CCH.

☐ In finding a prior record level point under G.S. 15A-1340.14(b)(7), the Court has relied on the jury's determination of this issue beyond a reasonable doubt or the defendant's admission to this issue.

☐ The Court finds that all of the elements of the present offense are included in a prior offense.

☐ For each out-of-state conviction listed in Section V on the reverse, the Court finds by a preponderance of the evidence that the offense is substantially similar to a North Carolina offense and that the North Carolina classification assigned to this offense in Section V is correct.

☐ The Court finds that the State and the defendant have stipulated in open court to the prior convictions, points and record level.

Date | Name Of Presiding Judge (Type Or Print) | Signature Of Presiding Judge

AOC-CR-600B, Rev. 6/12 (Over)
© 2012 Administrative Office of the Courts

Prior record level

COUNT

- All felonies
- Class 1 and Class A1 non-traffic misdemeanors
- DWI, commercial DWI, and death by vehicle
- Prayer for Judgment (PJC)
- Crimes from other jurisdictions

DON'T COUNT

- Class 2 & 3 misdemeanors
- Traffic misdemeanors (other than DWI, commercial DWI, and death by vehicle)
- Infractions
- Contempt adjudications
- Juvenile adjudications
- Convictions used to habitualize

- Count only the most serious conviction from a single calendar week of superior court, or session of district court

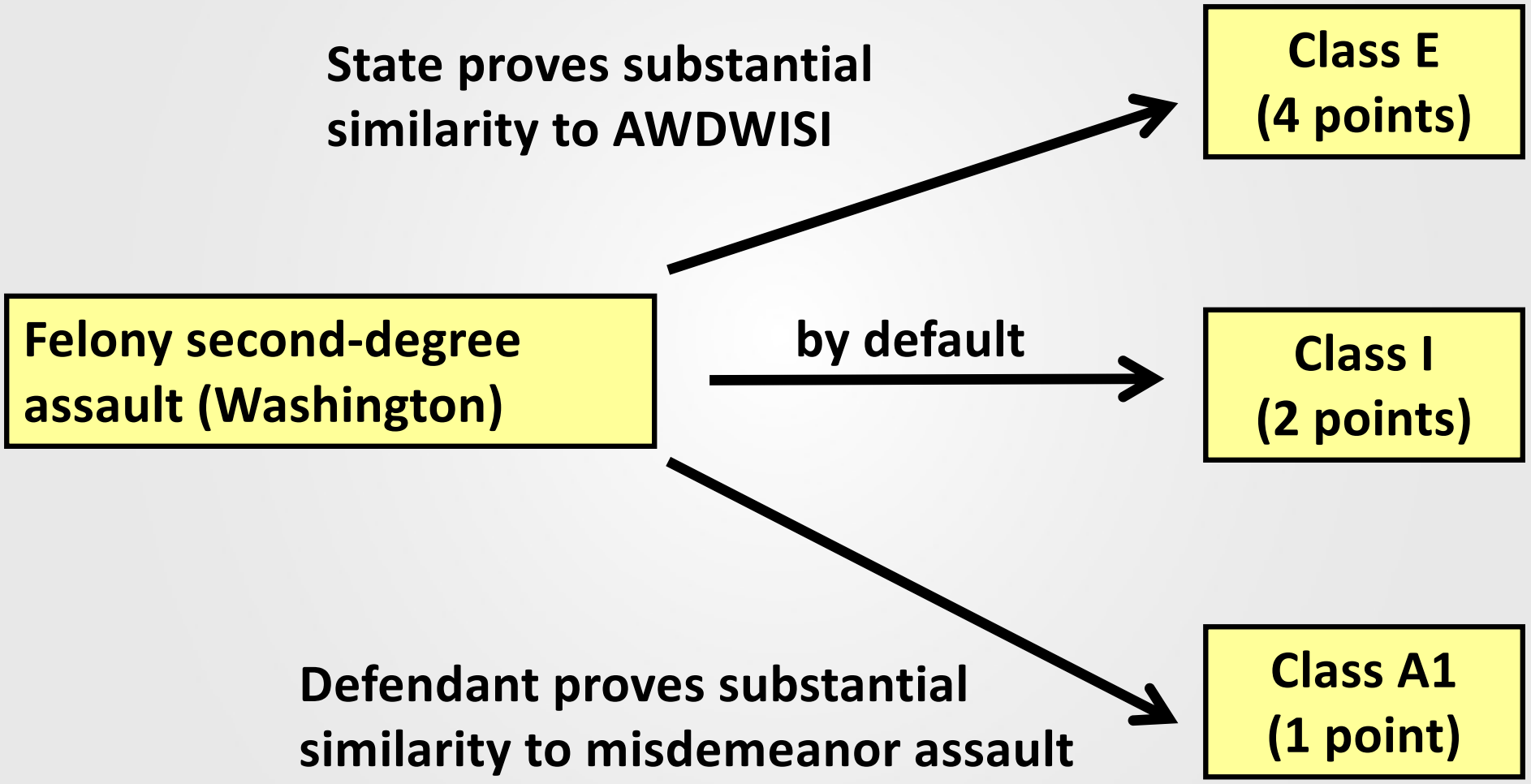
Prior record “bonus points”

- Under supervision (+1)
  - Committed while on probation, parole, post-release supervision, incarcerated, or on escape
  - **State must give 30-day notice and prove to a jury beyond a reasonable doubt (unless admitted to)**
- Same elements (+1)
  - All elements of the present offense included in a prior offense
  - **No stipulations: Judge must make a finding**

Crimes from other jurisdictions

- By default:
  - Prior out-of-state felonies: Class I (2 points)
  - Prior out-of-state misdemeanors: Class 3 (0 points)
- With "substantial similarity" determination:
  - Count like the similar North Carolina offense
  - Proponent must prove by preponderance of evidence

Crimes from other jurisdictions



Exercise 4

Prior record level exercise

A defendant has the following prior record:

- 11/1/98 DWI
- 1/12/11 DWLR
- 8/4/13 PJC for communicating threats (Class 1)
- 4/25/18 2d deg burglary (Class G)
- 4/25/18 Poss. stolen goods (Class H)
- 10/22/20 Criminal contempt (30 days)
- 2/13/21 First-degree rape (South Carolina)

  Current crime committed while on parole

Prior record level exercise

A defendant has the following prior record:

✓	11/1/98	DWI
✗	1/12/11	DWLR
✓	8/4/13	PJC for communicating threats (Class 1)
✓	4/25/18	2d deg burglary (Class G)
✗	4/25/18	Poss. stolen goods (Class H)
✗	10/22/20	Criminal contempt (30 days)
✓	2/13/21	First-degree rape (South Carolina)
+1	Current crime committed while on parole	

9 points → Level III

Prior record level exercise

A defendant has the following prior record:

✓	11/1/98	DWI
✗	1/12/11	DWLR
✓	8/4/13	PJC for communicating threats (Class 1)
✓	4/25/18	2d deg burglary (Class G)
✗	4/25/18	Poss. stolen goods (Class H)
✗	10/22/20	Criminal contempt (30 days)
✓	2/13/21	First-degree rape (South Carolina)
+1	Current crime committed while on parole	

If State establishes "substantial similarity" of rape:

16 points → Level V

Exercise 5

- Sex offenders
- Aggravating/Mitigating factors

Aggravating factors

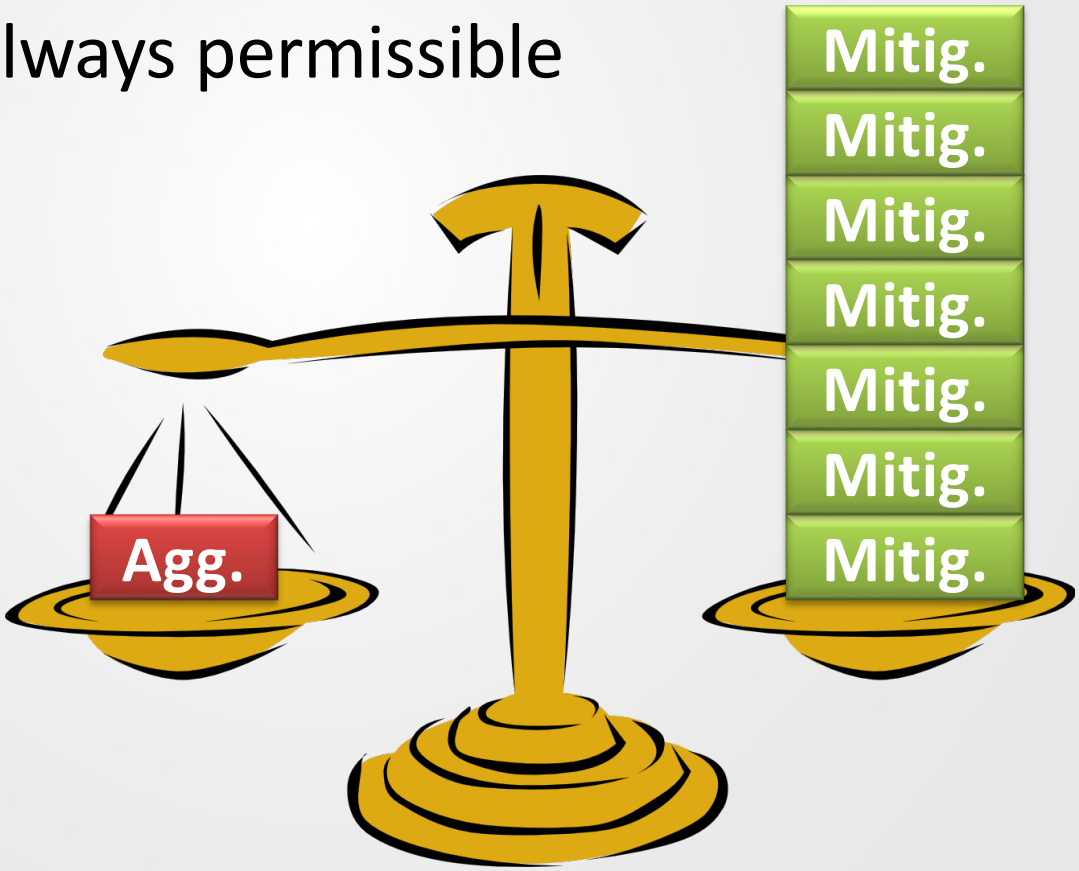
- State must provide notice of intent to prove aggravating factors 30 days before trial/plea
  - Statutory aggravators need not be pled
  - Non-statutory (ad hoc) aggravators must be pled
- State must prove aggravators to the jury beyond a reasonable doubt, unless they are admitted to by the defendant

Mitigating factors

- Defendant's burden to prove to judge by preponderance of the evidence
- Statutory mitigating factors or ad hoc
- No notice requirement
- Judge must consider any offered factors

Weighing factors

- A matter of judicial discretion
- Not a mathematical balance
- Presumptive is always permissible

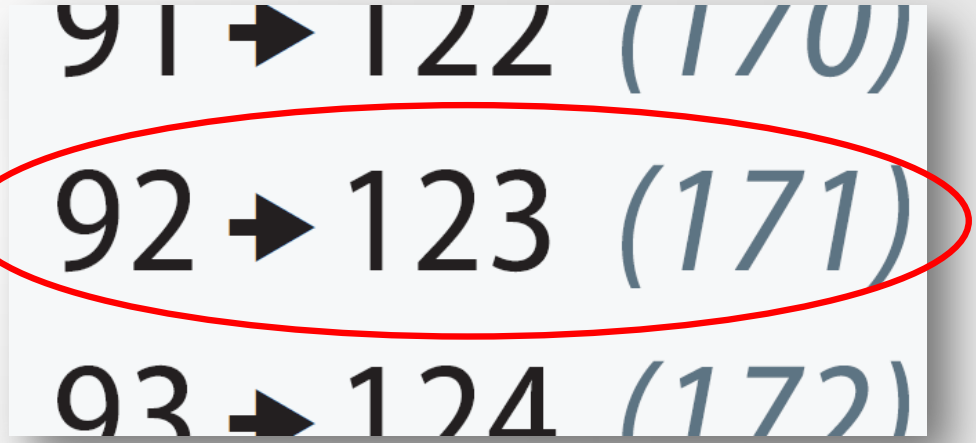


Reportable sex crimes

- Class B1-E sex crimes: Inflated maximum sentence (+60 months instead of +12)
- All felony sex crimes: 5-year post-release supervision

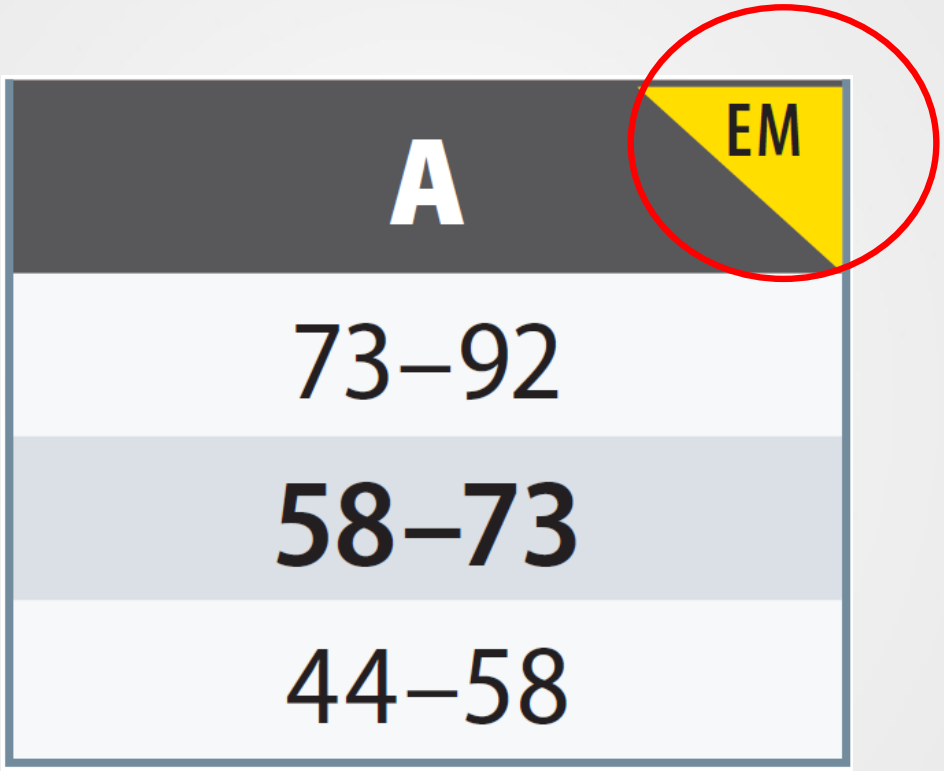
Exercise 5

A	EM
73–92	
58–73	
44–58	



A	EM
73–92	
58–73	
44–58	

Is there any possibility of probation?


A
EM
73–92
58–73
44–58

EM **Extraordinary Mitigation** (possible eligibility). *See* page 10.

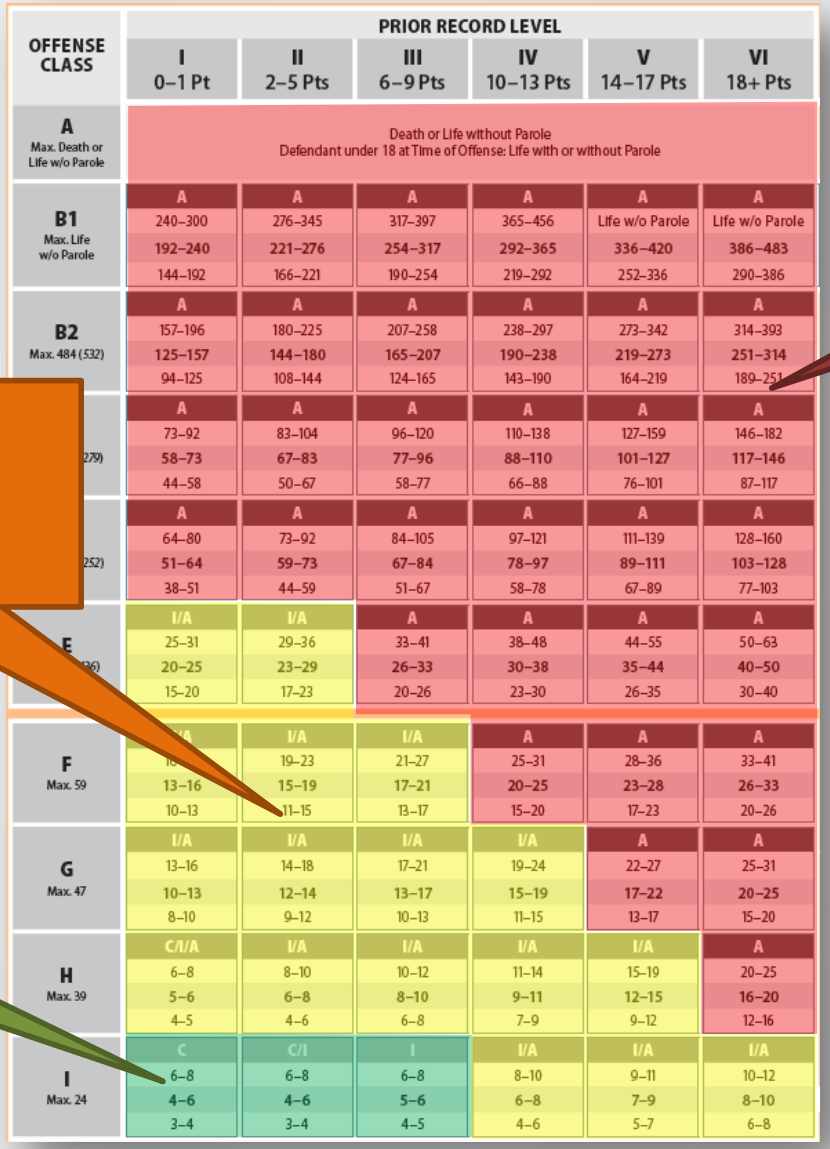
Extraordinary Mitigation

- Allows intermediate punishment in certain "A"-only grid cells
- May apply if the court finds:
  - Extraordinary mitigating factors
  - Those factors substantially outweigh any factors in aggravation
  - It would be a manifest injustice to impose an active punishment

OFFENSE CLASS	PRIOR RECORD LEVEL I 0–1 Pt	II 2–5 Pts	III 6–9 Pts	IV 10–13 Pts	V 14–17 Pts	VI 18+ Pts
A Max. Death or Life w/o Parole	Death or Life without Parole Defendant under 18 at Time of Offense: Life with or without Parole					
B1 Max. Life w/o Parole	A 240–300 192–240 144–192	A 276–345 221–276 166–221	A 317–397 254–317 190–254	A 365–456 292–365 219–292	A Life w/o Parole 336–420 252–336	A Life w/o Parole 386–483 290–386
B2 Max. 484 (532)	A 157–196 125–157 94–125	A 180–225 144–180 108–144	A 207–258 165–207 124–165	A 238–297 190–238 143–190	A 273–342 219–273 164–219	A 314–393 251–314 189–251
C Max. 231 (279)	A 73–92 58–73 44–58	A 83–104 67–83 50–67	A 96–120 77–96 58–77	A 110–138 88–110 66–88	A 127–159 101–127 76–101	A 146–182 117–146 87–117
D Max. 204 (252)	A 64–80 51–64 38–51	A 73–92 59–73 44–59	A 84–105 67–84 51–67	A 97–121 78–97 58–78	A 111–139 89–111 67–89	A 128–160 103–128 77–103
E Max. 88 (136)	I/A 25–31 20–25 15–20	I/A 29–36 23–29 17–23	A 33–41 26–33 20–26	A 38–48 30–38 23–30	A 44–55 35–44 26–35	A 50–63 40–50 30–40
F Max. 59	I/A 16–20 13–16 10–13	I/A 19–23 15–19 11–15	I/A 21–27 17–21 13–17	A 25–31 20–25 15–20	A 28–36 23–28 17–23	A 33–41 26–33 20–26
G Max. 47	I/A 13–16 10–13 8–10	I/A 14–18 12–14 9–12	I/A 17–21 13–17 10–13	I/A 19–24 15–19 11–15	A 22–27 17–22 13–17	A 25–31 20–25 15–20
H Max. 39	C/I/A 6–8 5–6 4–5	I/A 8–10 6–8 4–6	I/A 10–12 8–10 6–8	I/A 11–14 9–11 7–9	I/A 15–19 12–15 9–12	A 20–25 16–20 12–16
I Max. 24	C 6–8 4–6 3–4	C/I 6–8 4–6 3–4	I 6–8 5–6 4–5	I/A 8–10 6–8 4–6	I/A 9–11 7–9 5–7	I/A 10–12 8–10 6–8

Probation

Dispositional Options



OFFENSE CLASS	PRIOR RECORD LEVEL					
	I 0–1 Pt	II 2–5 Pts	III 6–9 Pts	IV 10–13 Pts	V 14–17 Pts	VI 18+ Pts
A Max. Death or Life w/o Parole	Death or Life without Parole Defendant under 18 at Time of Offense: Life with or without Parole					
B1 Max. Life w/o Parole	A 240–300 192–240 144–192	A 276–345 221–276 166–221	A 317–397 254–317 190–254	A 365–456 292–365 219–292	A Life w/o Parole 336–420 252–336	A Life w/o Parole 386–483 290–386
B2 Max. 484 (532)	A 157–196 125–157 94–125	A 180–225 144–180 108–144	A 207–258 165–207 124–165	A 238–297 190–238 143–190	A 273–342 219–273 164–219	A 314–393 251–314 189–251
[illegible] 279)	A 73–92 58–73 44–58	A 83–104 67–83 50–67	A 96–120 77–96 58–77	A 110–138 88–110 66–88	A 127–159 101–127 76–101	A 146–182 117–146 87–117
[illegible] 252)	A 64–80 51–64 38–51	A 73–92 59–73 44–59	A 84–105 67–84 51–67	A 97–121 78–97 58–78	A 111–139 89–111 67–89	A 128–160 103–128 77–103
E [illegible] 236)	I/A 25–31 20–25 15–20	I/A 29–36 23–29 17–23	A 33–41 26–33 20–26	A 38–48 30–38 23–30	A 44–55 35–44 26–35	A 50–63 40–50 30–40
F Max. 59	[illegible] 16 13–16 10–13	I/A 19–23 15–19 11–15	I/A 21–27 17–21 13–17	A 25–31 20–25 15–20	A 28–36 23–28 17–23	A 33–41 26–33 20–26
G Max. 47	I/A 13–16 10–13 8–10	I/A 14–18 12–14 9–12	I/A 17–21 13–17 10–13	I/A 19–24 15–19 11–15	A 22–27 17–22 13–17	A 25–31 20–25 15–20
H Max. 39	C/I/A 6–8 5–6 4–5	I/A 8–10 6–8 4–6	I/A 10–12 8–10 6–8	I/A 11–14 9–11 7–9	I/A 15–19 12–15 9–12	A 20–25 16–20 12–16
I Max. 24	C 6–8 4–6 3–4	C/I 6–8 4–6 3–4	I 6–8 5–6 4–5	I/A 8–10 6–8 4–6	I/A 9–11 7–9 5–7	I/A 10–12 8–10 6–8

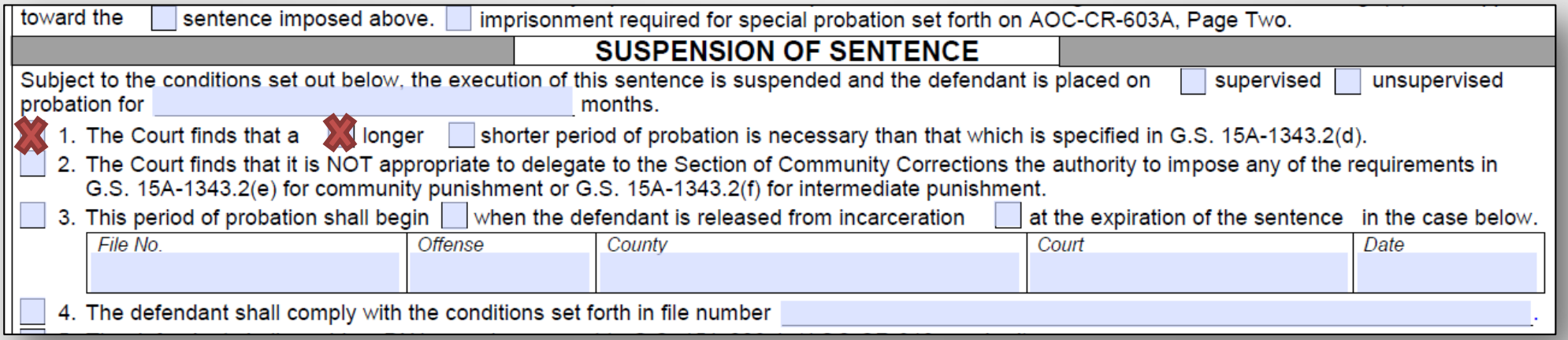
Mandatory Active

Judge's discretion

Mandatory Non-Active

Period of probation

- Default ranges for felonies
  - Community: Between 12 and 30 months
  - Intermediate: Between 18 and 36 months
- May be longer or shorter with findings
- Maximum length (with findings) is 60 months



toward the ☐ sentence imposed above. ☐ imprisonment required for special probation set forth on AOC-CR-603A, Page Two.

SUSPENSION OF SENTENCE

Subject to the conditions set out below, the execution of this sentence is suspended and the defendant is placed on ☐ supervised ☐ unsupervised probation for _____ months.

☒ 1. The Court finds that a ☒ longer ☐ shorter period of probation is necessary than that which is specified in G.S. 15A-1343.2(d).

☐ 2. The Court finds that it is NOT appropriate to delegate to the Section of Community Corrections the authority to impose any of the requirements in G.S. 15A-1343.2(e) for community punishment or G.S. 15A-1343.2(f) for intermediate punishment.

☐ 3. This period of probation shall begin ☐ when the defendant is released from incarceration ☐ at the expiration of the sentence in the case below.

File No.	Offense	County	Court	Date

☐ 4. The defendant shall comply with the conditions set forth in file number _____.

Exercise 6

Indecent Liberties (Class F)

PRL III

Supervised probation

Top of presumptive range

I/A
21–27
17–21
13–17

ASR

21 → 35

22 → 36

Length of Probation Period

The original period of probation for a felony sentenced under Structured Sentencing must fall within the following limits:

- Community—12 to 30 months
- Intermediate—18 to 36 months

The court may depart from those ranges with a finding that a longer or shorter period is required. The maximum permissible period with a finding is 5 years. G.S. 15A-1343.2.

MANDATORY SPECIAL CONDITIONS FOR SEX OFFENDERS AND PERSONS CONVICTED OF OFFENSES INVOLVING PHYSICAL, MENTAL, OR SEXUAL ABUSE OF A MINOR - G.S. 15A-1343(b2)

NOTE: *The following are not defined as intermediate punishments under G.S. 15A-1340.11(6).*
NOTE: *Select **only one** of the three sets of conditions below.*

☐ **1. Special Conditions For Reportable Convictions - G.S. 15A-1343(b2)**

NOTE: *Impose only for a reportable conviction under G.S. 14-208.6.*

The defendant has been convicted of an offense which is a reportable conviction as defined in G.S. 14-208.6(4) and must

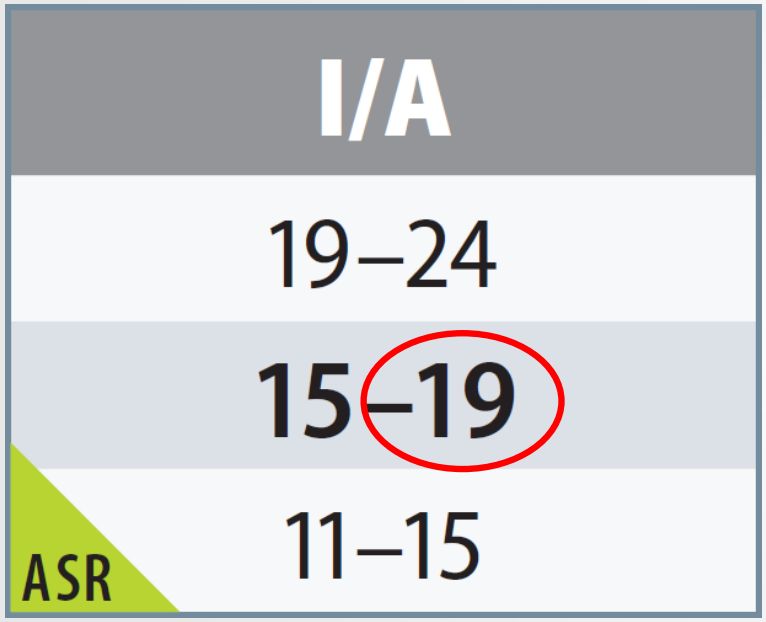
a. Register as a sex offender and enroll in satellite-based monitoring if required on the attached AOC-CR-615, Side Two.
b. Participate in such evaluation and treatment as is necessary to complete a prescribed course of psychiatric, psychological, or other rehabilitative treatment as ordered by the court.
c. Not communicate with, be in the presence of, or found in or on the premises of the victim of the offense.
☐ d. *(if the Court finds physical, mental, or sexual abuse of a minor)* Not reside in a household with
   ☐ (1) *(for sexual abuse)* any minor child.
   ☐ (2) *(for physical or mental abuse)* any minor child ☐ other than the child(ren) named below, for whom the court expressly finds that it is unlikely that the defendant's harmful or abusive conduct will recur and that it would be in the best interest of the child(ren) named below to reside in the same household with the probationer. *(Name minor child(ren) with whom the probationer may reside in the same household)*: _____.
e. Submit at reasonable times to warrantless searches by a probation officer of the defendant's person, of the defendant's vehicle and premises, and of the defendant's computer or other electronic mechanism which may contain electronic data, while the defendant is present, for the following purposes which are reasonably related to the defendant's probation supervision: ☐ child pornography
   ☐ _____.
f. Other:

Special probation (split sentence)

- Jail/prison confinement for up to ¼ the maximum imposed sentence of imprisonment
- May be noncontinuous (e.g., weekends)
  - Must be complete within 2 years of conviction

Exercise 7

1/4



17 → 30
18 → 31
19 → 32
20 → 33

What about the 30 days of jail credit?

Exercise 8

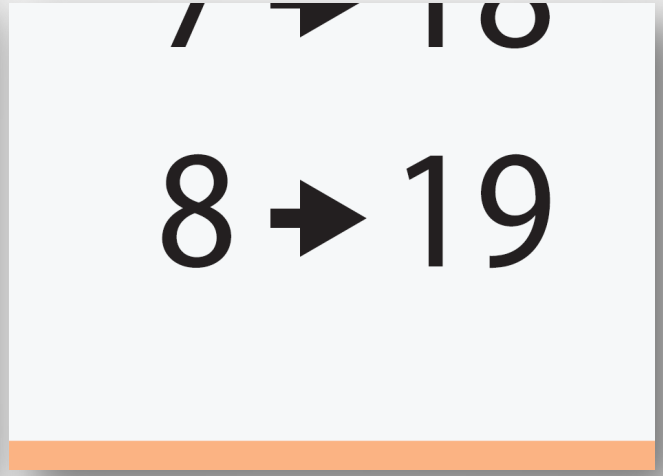
OPFP (Class H)

PRL III

Shortest possible Active sentence

I/A
10–12
8–10
6–8

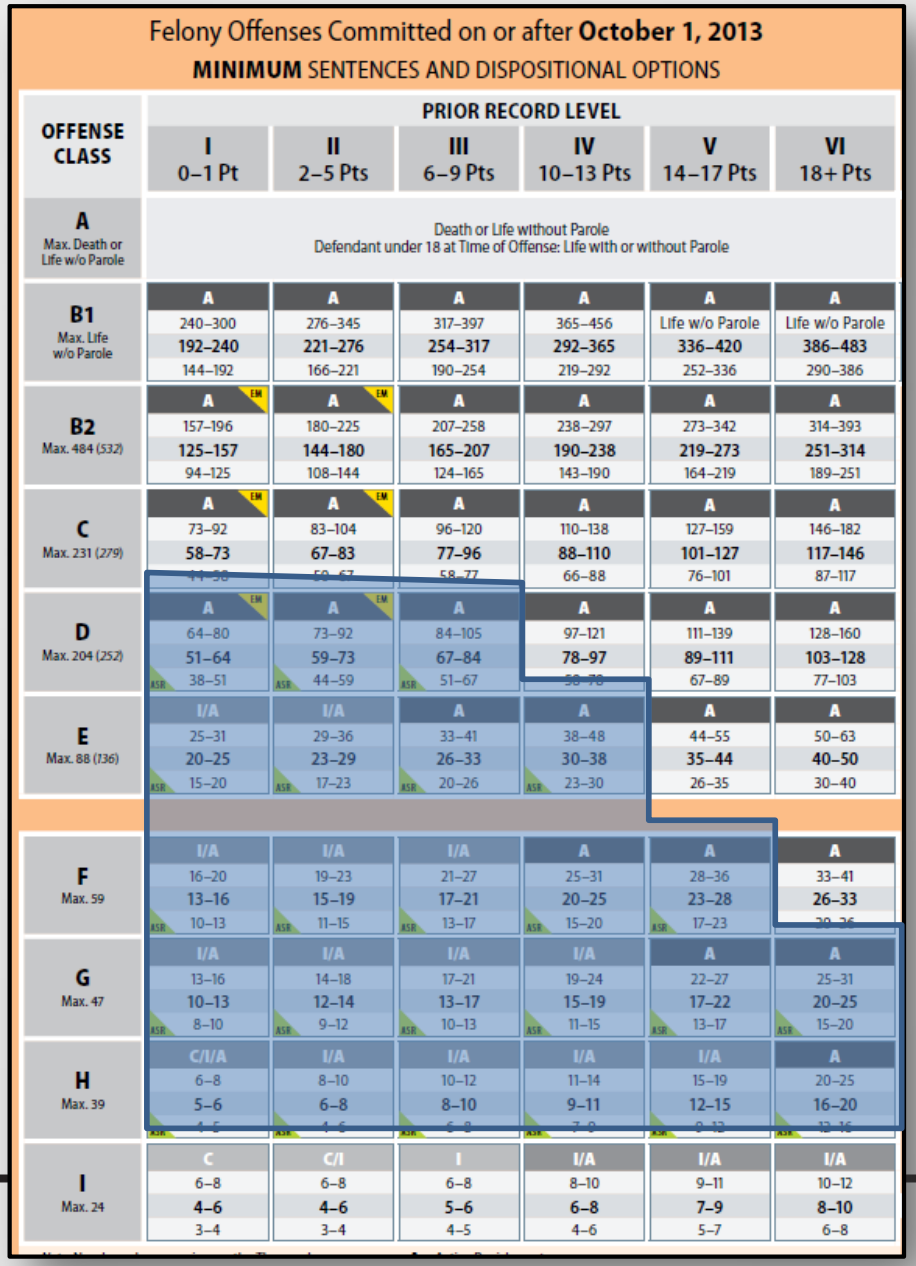
ASR



Advanced Supervised Release

- Opportunity for early release in Active cases
- Inmate may be released on “ASR date” upon completion of “risk reduction incentives” in prison
- May not be ordered over prosecutor’s objection
- Active sentences only

Advanced Supervised Release



Felony Offenses Committed on or after **October 1, 2013**

MINIMUM SENTENCES AND DISPOSITIONAL OPTIONS

OFFENSE CLASS	PRIOR RECORD LEVEL I 0–1 Pt	II 2–5 Pts	III 6–9 Pts	IV 10–13 Pts	V 14–17 Pts	VI 18+ Pts
A Max. Death or Life w/o Parole	Death or Life without Parole Defendant under 18 at Time of Offense: Life with or without Parole					
B1 Max. Life w/o Parole	A 240–300 **192–240** 144–192	A 276–345 **221–276** 166–221	A 317–397 **254–317** 190–254	A 365–456 **292–365** 219–292	A Life w/o Parole **336–420** 252–336	A Life w/o Parole **386–483** 290–386
B2 Max. 484 (532)	A EM 157–196 **125–157** 94–125	A EM 180–225 **144–180** 108–144	A 207–258 **165–207** 124–165	A 238–297 **190–238** 143–190	A 273–342 **219–273** 164–219	A 314–393 **251–314** 189–251
C Max. 231 (279)	A EM 73–92 **58–73** 44–58	A EM 83–104 **67–83** 50–67	A 96–120 **77–96** 58–77	A 110–138 **88–110** 66–88	A 127–159 **101–127** 76–101	A 146–182 **117–146** 87–117
D Max. 204 (252)	A EM 64–80 **51–64** ASR 38–51	A EM 73–92 **59–73** ASR 44–59	A 84–105 **67–84** ASR 51–67	A 97–121 **78–97** 62–78	A 111–139 **89–111** 67–89	A 128–160 **103–128** 77–103
E Max. 88 (736)	I/A 25–31 **20–25** ASR 15–20	I/A 29–36 **23–29** ASR 17–23	A 33–41 **26–33** ASR 20–26	A 38–48 **30–38** ASR 23–30	A 44–55 **35–44** 26–35	A 50–63 **40–50** 30–40
F Max. 59	I/A 16–20 **13–16** ASR 10–13	I/A 19–23 **15–19** ASR 11–15	I/A 21–27 **17–21** ASR 13–17	A 25–31 **20–25** ASR 15–20	A 28–36 **23–28** ASR 17–23	A 33–41 **26–33** 20–26
G Max. 47	I/A 13–16 **10–13** ASR 8–10	I/A 14–18 **12–14** ASR 9–12	I/A 17–21 **13–17** ASR 10–13	I/A 19–24 **15–19** ASR 11–15	A 22–27 **17–22** ASR 13–17	A 25–31 **20–25** ASR 15–20
H Max. 39	C/I/A 6–8 **5–6** 4–5	I/A 8–10 **6–8** 4–6	I/A 10–12 **8–10** 6–8	I/A 11–14 **9–11** 7–9	I/A 15–19 **12–15** 9–12	A 20–25 **16–20** 12–16
I Max. 24	C 6–8 **4–6** 3–4	C/I 6–8 **4–6** 3–4	I 6–8 **5–6** 4–5	I/A 8–10 **6–8** 4–6	I/A 9–11 **7–9** 5–7	I/A 10–12 **8–10** 6–8

Advanced Supervised Release

- ASR date:
  - *If "regular" sentence is presumptive or aggravated*: ASR date is the lowest mitigated minimum sentence in defendant's grid cell
  - *If "regular" sentence is mitigated*: ASR date is 80% of imposed minimum

Example

- PRL III defendant convicted of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses
  - Regular sentence: 8-19 months (presumptive)

	C/I/A	I/A	I/A
H Max. 39	6–8	8–10	10–12
	5–6	**6–8**	**8–10**
	ASR 4–5	ASR 4–6	ASR 6–8

What is the ASR date?

Example

- PRL III defendant convicted of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses
  - Regular sentence: 8-19 months

	C/I/A	I/A	I/A
H Max. 39	6–8	8–10	10–12
	5–6	**6–8**	**8–10**
	ASR 4–5	ASR 4–6	ASR 6–8

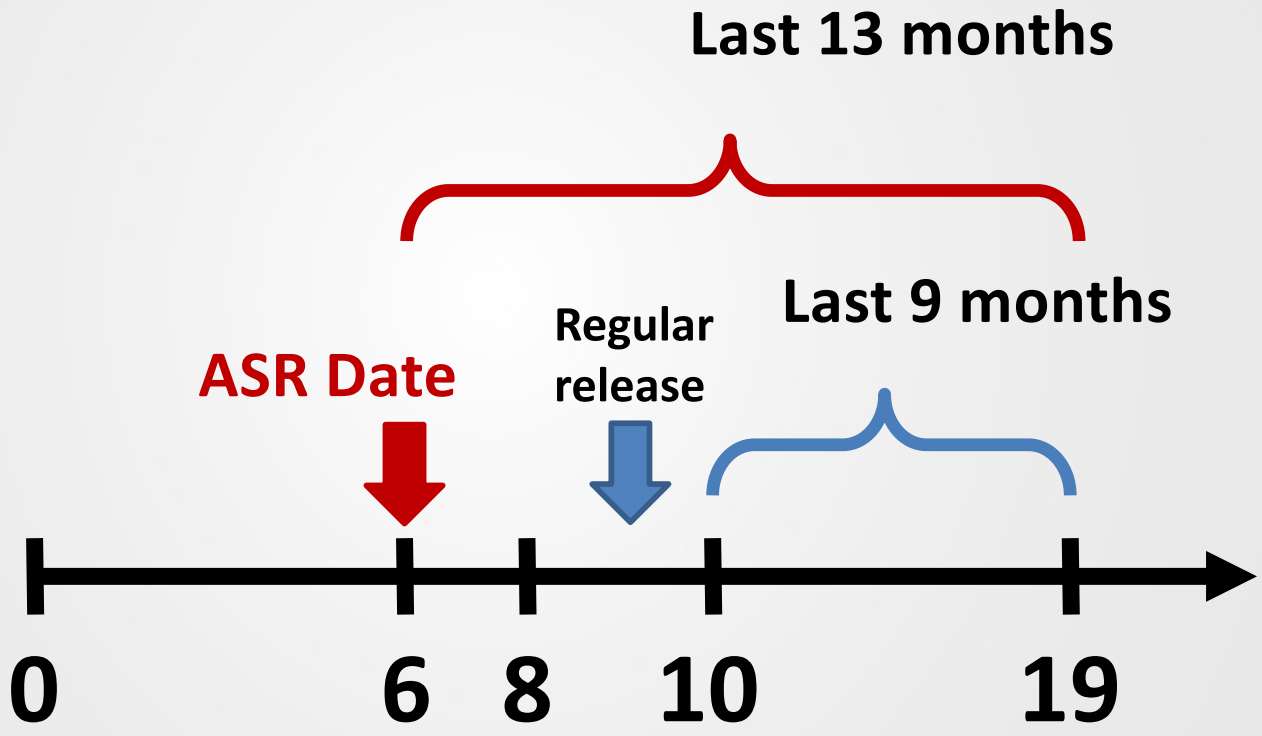
☐ to Life Imprisonment With Parole, pursuant to G.S. Chapter 15A, Article 81B, Part 2A.

for a minimum term of:	and a maximum term of:	☒ ASR term *(Order No. 4, Side Two)*
8 months	**19** months	**6** months

The defendant shall be given credit for _____ days spent in confinement prior to the date of this Judg

Regular sentence: 8-19 months

ASR date: 6 months



Main Sentence Types

- Prison
  - Low level felony vs. Serious felony
- Probation
- Probation with a split sentence
- Sex offenders
- Advanced Issues:
  - Extraordinary Mitigation
  - Advanced Supervised Release


Questions?

Exercise 1

Conviction: **Felony Breaking or Entering (Class H)**
Prior record: **Prior record level I**
Aggravating factors: **None**
Mitigating factors: **None**

What is the longest possible Active sentence?

Exercise 2

Conviction: **Common law robbery (Class G)**
Prior record: **Prior record level I**
Aggravating factors: **None**
Mitigating factors: **None**

What is the shortest possible Active sentence?

Exercise 3

Conviction: **Assault with a deadly weapon inflicting serious injury (Class E)**
Prior record: **Prior record level I**
Aggravating factors: **None**
Mitigating factors: **None**

What is the shortest possible Active sentence?

Exercise 4

Prior record:

11/1/98	**DWI**
1/12/11	**DWLR**
8/4/13	**PJC for communicating threats (Class 1)**
4/25/18	**Second-degree burglary (Class G)**
4/25/18	**Possession of stolen goods (Class H)**
10/22/20	**Criminal contempt (30 days)**
2/13/21	**First-degree rape (South Carolina)**

Current crime committed while on parole

a. If the State offers no additional information about the defendant's South Carolina conviction, what is the defendant's prior record level?
b. What is the defendant's prior record level if the State proves that the South Carolina conviction is substantially similar to first-degree rape in North Carolina?

Exercise 5

Conviction: **Second-degree forcible rape (Class C)**
Prior record: **Prior record level I**
Aggravating factors: **The defendant was armed with or used a deadly weapon.**
The defendant took advantage of a position of trust.
Mitigating factor: **The defendant was honorably discharged from the Armed Forces.**

a. What is the longest possible Active sentence?
b. What is the shortest possible Active sentence?
c. Is there any possibility of probation for this defendant?

Exercise 6

Conviction: **Indecent liberties with a child (Class F)**
Prior record: **Prior record level III**
Aggravating factors: **None**
Mitigating factors: **None**

Place the defendant on supervised probation, with a suspended sentence from the top of the presumptive range.

Exercise 7

Conviction: **Possession of Firearm by Felon (Class G)**
Prior record: **Prior record level IV**
Aggravating factors: **None**
Mitigating factors: **None**
Pretrial jail credit: **30 days**

What is the longest possible term of special probation (split)?

Exercise 8

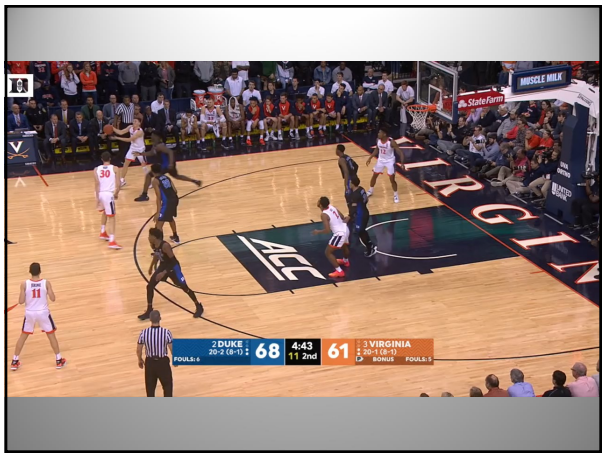
Conviction: **Obtaining property by false pretenses**
Prior record: **Prior record level III**
Aggravating factors: **None**
Mitigating factors: **None**

a. What is the shortest possible active sentence?
b. What is the defendant's Advanced Supervised Release (ASR) date?

EVIDENCE BLOCKING (and Advancing)

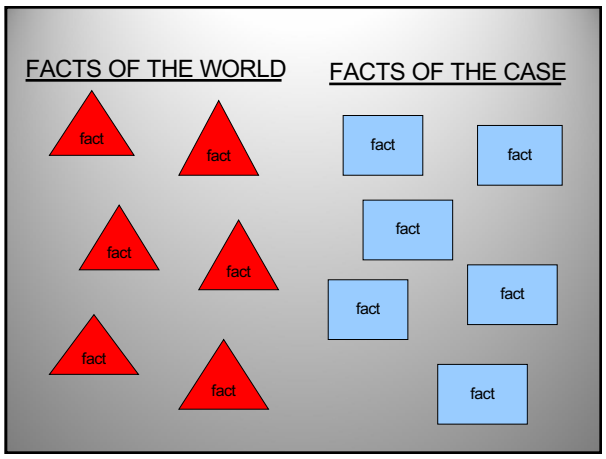
John Rubin
UNC School of Government

1



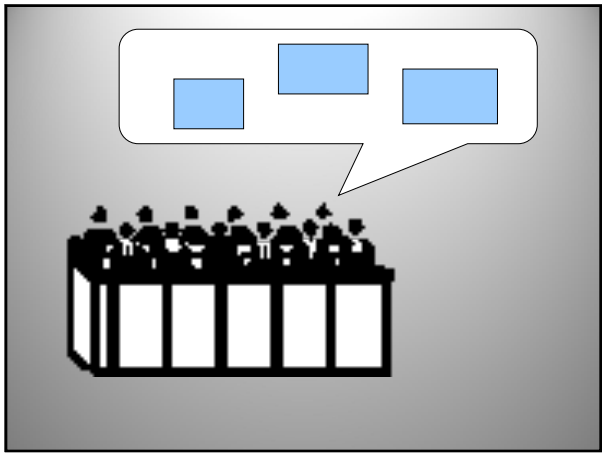
2

3


FACTS OF THE WORLD
FACTS OF THE CASE
fact
fact
fact
fact
fact
fact
fact
fact
fact
fact
fact

4

5



6

1. Learn Facts of the World

- Discovery
- Investigation
- Motions and Hearings

7

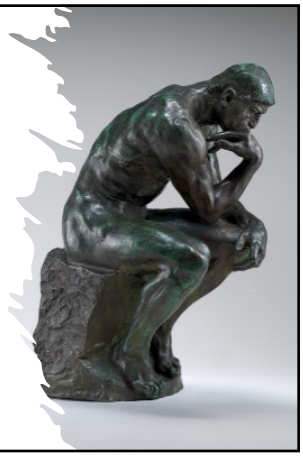
2. Know the Ways of the Block

- Suppression/exclusion
- Problems with witnesses
- Problems with evidence
- Problems with presentation

8

3. Think

- Problems with their evidence so you can keep them from telling their narrative
- Problems with your evidence so you're in a position to tell your narrative



9

4. Choose

- Assess what will likely become "facts of the case"
- Decide on your best theory of defense

10

Possible Theories

1. The sale happened, I talked to Officer Thomas, but I committed no crime because I had no involvement in Stapp's drug business.
2. The sale happened, but I wasn't there and wasn't involved.
3. No sale ever happened. The cops made it up to get my client.

11

1: Documents

- Your client says he was working at McDonalds at the time / tells you two months later
- No one remembers him working that day
- Time card says he did work that day

12

2: State's Witness

- Says he was in area at the time but didn't see Carper
- A friend told State's Witness, "Carper and Stapp just sold to an undercover cop; Stapp got arrested; Carper got away"
- Your investigator learns from other witnesses that State's Witness was selling drugs that day

13

#3: Client Statement

- Client tells you that when he was arrested, he told arresting officers he was selling with Stapp that day
- He hoped they would go easy on him
- Statement was not disclosed

14

#4: Experts

- Week before trial, prosecutor tells you of audio tape of drug sale with Carper's voice on it
- Tape was lost, but officer who heard it will testify as expert that it was Carper
- Prosecutor says she just learned about the tape

15

Evidence Blocking*

Jonathan Rapping**

* The term "evidence blocking" and the ideas set forth in this paper come from my colleague and mentor at the D.C. Public Defender Service, Jonathan Stern. Mr. Stern honed the practice of evidence blocking to an art. There is not a concept in this paper that I did not steal from Mr. Stern, including examples presented. He deserves full credit for this paper.

** Jonathan Rapping is the Executive Director of the Southern Public Defender Training Center and is on the faculty of Atlanta's John Marshall law School.

I. Facts of the World v. Facts of the Case

If a tree falls in the woods and no one is there to hear it, does it make a sound? We may confidently answer, "yes." However, we cannot, with certainty, know what exactly it sounded like. Scientists might estimate what the sound would have been based on whatever factors scientists use, but that will be an approximation. They may disagree on the density of other vegetation in the area that would affect the sound, or the moisture in the soil that may be a factor. Perhaps the guess will be close to the actual sound. Perhaps not. We can never know for sure. A trial is the same way. It is a recreation, in a courtroom, of a series of events that previously took place. There are disagreements over factors that impact the picture that is created for the jury. The picture painted for the jury is affected by biases of the witnesses, the quality and quantity of evidence that is admitted, and the jury's own viewpoint. In the end, the picture the jury sees may be close to what actually occurred or may be vastly different.

Understanding that the picture that is painted for the jury is the one that matters is central to the trial lawyer's ability to be an effective advocate. It is helpful to think of facts in two categories: facts of the world and facts of the case. The first category, facts of the world, are the facts that actually occurred surrounding the event in question in our case. We will never know with certainty what the facts of the world are. The second category, facts of the case, are the facts that are presented at trial. It is from these facts that the fact-finder will attempt to approximate as closely as possible the facts of the world. The fact-finder will never be able to perfectly recreate a picture of what happened during the incident in question. How close the fact-finder can get will be a function of the reliability and completeness of the facts that are presented at trial.

II. The Difference Between Prosecutors and Defense Attorneys

By understanding that the outcome of the trial is a function of the facts of the case, we have a huge advantage over the prosecution. The prosecutor tends to believe he knows the "truth." He thinks the facts of the world are perfectly reflected by his view of the evidence known to him. When the facts of the case point to a conclusion that is different from the one he believes he knows to be true, the prosecutor is unable to adjust. He can't move from the picture he has concluded in his mind to be "true." Therefore, he renders himself unable to see the same picture that is painted before the jury at trial. The good defense attorney understands she is incapable of knowing the "truth." She focuses on the facts of the case. She remains flexible to adjust to facts that are presented, or excluded, that she did not anticipate. In that sense she is better equipped to see

the picture the jury sees and to effectively argue that picture as one of innocence, or that at least raises a reasonable doubt.

The ability to think outside the box is one of the main advantages defense attorneys have over prosecutors. It is a talent honed out of necessity. We necessarily have to reject the version of events that are sponsored by the prosecution. They are a version that points to our client's guilt. We must remain open to any alternative theory, and proceed with that open mind throughout our trial preparation.

Prosecutors generally develop a theory very early on in the investigation of the case. Before the investigation is complete they have usually settled on a suspect, a motive, and other critical details of the offense. In the prosecutor's mind, this version of events is synonymous with what actually happened. In other words, the prosecutor assumes he knows the "truth." The fundamental problem with this way of thinking is that all investigation from that point on is with an eye towards proving that theory. Instead of being open minded about evidence learned, there is a bias in the investigation. Evidence that points to another theory must be wrong. When it comes to a witness who supports the government's theory but, to an objective observer, has a great motive to lie, the prosecutor assumes the witness is truthful and that the motive to lie is the product of creative defense lawyering. This way of thinking infects the prosecution at every level: from the prosecutor in charge of the case to law enforcement personnel who are involved with the prosecution. Whether the prosecution theory ultimately is right or wrong, this mid-set taints the ability to critically think about the case.

Good defense attorneys don't do this!!! We understand that the "truth" is something we will almost certainly never know and that, more importantly, will not be accurately represented by the evidence that makes it into the trial. We understand that a trial is an attempt to recreate a picture of historical events through witnesses who have biases, mis-recollections, and perceptions that can be inaccurate. We know trials are replete with evidence that is subject to a number of interpretations and that the prism through which the jury views this evidence depends on the degree to which, and manner in which, it is presented. In short, as defense attorneys, we understand that a trial is not about what "really happened." Rather, it is about the conclusions to which the fact-finder is led by the facts that are presented at trial. This may closely resemble what actually occurred or be far from it. We will never know. As defense attorneys we deal with the facts that will be available to our fact-finder. To do otherwise would be to do a disservice to our client.

For example, imagine a case that hinges on one issue, whether the traffic light was red or green. The prosecutor has interviewed ten nuns, all of whom

claim to have witnessed the incident in question. Each of the ten nuns insists that the light was green. The defense has one lone witness. This witness says the light was red. At trial, not a single nun shows up to court. The only witness to testify to the color of the light is the lone defense witness, who says it was red. The prosecutor sees this case as a green light case in which one witness was wrong. The jury, on the other hand, sees only a red light case. It knows nothing of the nuns. The only evidence is that the light was red. As defense attorneys we must also see the case as a red light case. These are the only facts of the case. Even assuming the ten nuns were correct, that the light was green, those facts are irrelevant to this case and the jury that will decide it.

III. The Art of Evidence Blocking

The defense attorney's job is to shape the facts of the case in a manner most favorable to her client. She must be able to identify as many ways as possible to keep facts that hurt her client from becoming facts of the case. Likewise, she must be thoughtful about how to argue the admissibility of facts that are helpful to her client's case. This requires a keen understanding of the facts that are potentially part of the case and a mastery of the law that will determine which of these facts become facts of the case.

As a starting proposition, the defense attorney should consider every conceivable way to exclude every piece of evidence in the case. Under the American system of justice, the prosecution has the burden of building a case against the defendant. The prosecution must build that case beyond a reasonable doubt. The facts available to the prosecution are the bricks with which the prosecutor will attempt to build that case. At the extreme, if we can successfully exclude all of the facts, there will be no evidence for the jury. It follows that the more facts we can successfully keep out of the case, the less bricks available to the prosecution from which to build the case against our client.

A wise advocacy principle is to never underestimate your opponent. Along this line it would behoove you to assume that if the prosecutor wants a piece of evidence in a case, it is because it is helpful to his plan to win a conviction against your client. Assume he is competent. Assume he knows what he is doing. Assume that fact is good for his case, and therefore bad for your client. Therefore, you do not want that fact in the case. Resist the temptation to take a fact the prosecution will use, and make it a part of your defense before you have considered whether you can have that fact excluded from the trial and how the case will look without it. Far too often defense attorneys learn facts in a case and begin thinking of how those facts will fit into a defense theory without considering whether the fact can be excluded from the trial. This puts the cart

before the horse. We must train ourselves to view every fact critically. We must consider whether that fact is necessarily going to be a part of the case before we decide to embrace it[1].

The prosecutor obviously knows his case, and how he plans to build it, much better than you do. If you accept the premise prosecutors tend to do things for a reason, i.e. to help convict your client, then it follows that any fact the prosecution wishes to use to build its case against your client is one we should try to keep out of evidence. Even if you are unwilling to give the prosecutor that much credit, limiting the facts at his disposal to use against your client can only be beneficial. This defines a method of practice coined by Jonathan Stern as "evidence blocking." Put plainly, evidence blocking is the practice of working to keep assertions about facts of the world out of the case. This exercise is one that forces us to consider the many ways facts can be kept out of evidence, and therefore made to be irrelevant to the facts of the case, and the derivative benefits of litigating these issues.

It is helpful to think of evidence blocking in four stages: 1) suppression/discovery violations; 2) witness problems; 3) evidence problems; and presentation problems.

A. Suppression / Discovery and Other Statutory Violations

The first stage we must think about when seeking to block evidence includes violations by the prosecution team of the Constitution, statutory authority, or court rule. We must think creatively about how evidence gathered by the State may be the fruit of a Constitutional violation. Generally, in this regard, we consider violations of the Fourth, Fifth, and Sixth Amendments. We look to any physical evidence seized by the government, statements allegedly made by your client, and identifications that arguably resulted from a government-sponsored identification procedure. We consider theories under which this evidence was obtained illegally and we move to suppress that evidence. We also must look to any violations of a statute or rule that might arguably warrant exclusion of evidence as a sanction. A prime example of this is a motion to exclude evidence based on a violation of the law of discovery. How we litigate these issues will define how much of the evidence at issue is admitted

[1] Of course, after going through this exercise, there will be facts that you have concluded are going to be part of the "facts of the case." These are "facts beyond control." At that point it is wise to consider how your case theory might embrace these facts beyond control, thereby neutralizing their damaging impact. However, this paper is meant to serve as a caution to the defense attorney to not engage in the exercise of developing a case theory around seemingly bad facts until she has thoroughly considered whether she can exclude those facts from the case.

at trial and how it can be used. We must use our litigation strategy to define how these issues are discussed.

B. Witness Problems

A second stage of evidence blocking involves identifying problems with government witnesses. This includes considering the witness' basis of knowledge. A witness may not testify regarding facts about which she does not have personal knowledge. It also includes thinking about any privileges the witness may have. Be thoughtful about whether a witness has a Fifth Amendment privilege. Consider marital privilege, attorney/client privilege, and any other privilege that could present an obstacle to the government's ability to introduce testimony it desires in its case. Another example of a witness problem is incompetency. We should always be on the lookout for information that arguable renders a witness incompetent to testify and move to have that witness excluded from testifying at trial. These are some examples of witness problems.

C. Evidence Problems

While witness problems relate to problems with the witness herself, we must also consider a third stage of evidence blocking: problems with the evidence itself. Even with a witness who has no problems such as those described above, there may be problems with the evidence the government wishes for them wish to present. Perhaps the information the witness has is barred because it is hearsay. Consider whether the evidence is arguably irrelevant. Think about whether the evidence is substantially more prejudicial than probative. These are all examples of problems with the evidence.

D. Presentation Problems

A final stage of evidence blocking involves a problem with the method of presentation of the evidence. Maybe the government is unable to complete the necessary chain of custody. The prosecutor may be missing a witness who is critical to completing the chain of custody. Maybe the prosecutor has never been challenged with respect to chain of custody and is unaware of who he needs to get the evidence admitted. By being on your feet you may successfully exclude the evidence the prosecutor needs to make its case against your client. Another example of a presentation problem is where the prosecutor is unable to lay a proper foundation for admission of some evidence. A third example is a prosecutor who is unable to ask a proper question (for example, leading on

direct). These are all examples of problems the prosecutor could have in getting evidence before the jury if you are paying attention and making the appropriate objections.

IV. How Do You Raise An Issue

Once you have decided that there is evidence that should not be admitted at your trial you must consider the best method for bringing the issue to the Court's attention. You essentially have three options: 1) file a pretrial written Motion in Limine, 2) raise the issue orally as a preliminary matter, or 3) lodge a contemporaneous objection. There are pros and cons to each of these methods.

Some motions must be filed in writing prior to trial, such as motions to suppress. Each jurisdiction is different on the requirement regarding what must be filed pre-trial and the timing of the filing[2]. For any motions that must be filed pretrial, you should always file pretrial motions whenever possible, for reasons stated below. However, many evidentiary issues may be raised without filing a motion. Objections to evidence on grounds that it is hearsay, irrelevant, substantially more prejudicial than probative, or any number of evidentiary grounds, are routinely made contemporaneously during trial. Certainly, should you anticipate an evidentiary issue in advance of trial you may raise it with the court. This may be done orally as a preliminary matter or in writing as a motion in limine.

What are the pros and cons of the different methods of raising an objection? Let's first consider a written, pretrial motion in limine. There are several advantages to filing a pretrial motion in limine to exclude evidence on evidentiary grounds. One is that it gives you a chance to educate the judge on the issue. Judges, like all of us, often do not know all of the law governing a particular issue off the top of their heads. If forced to rule on an issue without giving it careful thought, most judges rely on instinct. It is the rare judge whose instinct it is to help the criminal defendant. If the judge is going to rely on one of the parties to guide her, it is more often than not the prosecutor[3]. Therefore, you are often better often having had the chance to educate the judge than to rely on her ruling in your favor on a contemporaneous objection when the answer is not obvious.

---

[2] In Georgia, pursuant to O.C.G.A. 17-7-110, all pretrial motions, demurrers, and special pleas must be filed within ten days of the date of arraignment unless the trial court grants additional time pursuant to a motion.

[3] To the extent that you have previous experience with that judge and you have developed a reputation for being thorough, smart, and honest, you may be the person upon whom the judge relies. If that is the case with the judge before whom you will be in trial, that may factor into your decision about whether to object contemporaneously.

A second reason for filing a written motion pretrial is that you are entitled to a response from the prosecutor. This benefits you in several ways. First, every time you force the prosecution to commit something to writing, you learn a little more about their case. Filing motions are a great way to get additional discovery by receiving a response. Second, whenever the prosecutor commits something to writing, he is locking himself into some version of the facts. If he characterizes a witnesses testimony in a particular way and that witness ends up testifying differently, you have an issue to litigate. Presumably, the prosecutor accurately stated in his response to your motion what the witness told him or his agent. You now are entitled to call the prosecutor, or his agent, to impeach the witness. Maybe the response is an admission of the party opponent that can be introduced at trial. The bottom line is that there is now an issue where there would not have been one had you not forced the response to your motion[4].

A third reason for filing a written motion is that there is always the chance that the prosecutor will fail to respond, despite being required to by law or ordered to by the court. Whenever the prosecutor fails to respond to a written motion you are in a position to ask for sanctions. Sanctions may be for the court to treat your motion as conceded. They might be exclusion of some evidence. Perhaps you may get an instruction in some circumstances. Be creative in the sanctions you request.

A fourth reason is that when you file a motion, you get a hearing. Pretrial hearings are great things. They give us a further preview of the prosecutions case, commit the prosecution to the evidence presented at the hearing, and may result in sanctions.

A fifth reason for filing motions whenever you can is that it increases the size of your client's court file. A thick court file can be beneficial to your client in several ways. The shear size of a large court file is intimidating to judges and prosecutors. Judges like to move their dockets. Thick case files tend to be trials that take a long time to complete. Judges will be less likely to force you to trial in a case with a thick case jacket. Similarly, prosecutors often have to make choices about which cases to offer better pleas in or to dismiss outright. The more of a hassle it is to deal with a case, the greater the chance the prosecutor will offer a good plea to your client or dismiss the case outright.

A sixth reason is that by taking the time to research and write the motion, you are better preparing yourself to deal with the issue and to consider how it impacts your trial strategy.

[4] One of Jonathan Stern's cardinal rules that I have taken to heart is that you always want to be litigating something other than guilt or innocence.

A final reason for filing pretrial motions even when not required is that you appear to be honest and concerned with everyone getting the result right. By appearing to be on the up and up you can gain points with the court that will spill over to other aspects of the trial.

What are the downsides to filing a motion in advance of trial. One is certainly that you give the prosecution a heads up to an issue you seek to raise. To the extent that you identify a problem with the government's case, they may be able to fix it with advance notice. Certainly this is an important consideration that must be factored into your decision about whether to raise an evidentiary issue in writing, pretrial. A second issue, which concerns me much less, is that it allows the prosecutor to do the research he needs to do to address the legal issue you raise. Certainly by filing a pretrial motion you allow everyone to be more prepared. However, if the issue is an important one, and the judge's ruling depends on the prosecutor having a chance to do some research, most judges will give the prosecutor time to research the question before ruling whenever you raise it. To the extent this holds up the trial, there is always the risk the judge will fault you for not raising the issue earlier.

The third option, raising the issue orally as a preliminary matter, is a compromise between the other two alternatives. Obviously, it has some of the pros and cons of the other alternatives. How you handle any given issue must be the product of careful thought and analysis.

V. Conclusion

In conclusion, as defense attorneys we must take advantage of any tools at our disposal to alter the landscape of the trial in our client's favor. In order to do this we must understand and appreciate the difference between facts in the world and facts in the case. By undergoing a rigorous analysis of the facts that are potentially part of the case against our client, we may be able to keep some of those facts out of evidence. This exercise has the benefit of keeping from the prosecutor some of the blocks he hoped to use to build the case against you client. It alters the facts of the case in a way the prosecutor may be unable to deal with. And by litigating these issues we stand to derive residual benefits that will shape the outcome of the trial.

If You Build It, They Will Come: Creating and Utilizing a Meaningful Theory of Defense

by Stephen P. Lindsay

Stephen P. Lindsay is a senior partner in the law firm of Cloninger, Lindsay, Hensley & Searson, P.L.L.C, in Asheville. His firm specializes in all types of litigation. Lindsay focuses primarily on criminal defense in both state and federal courts. He graduated from Guilford College with a BS in Administration of Justice and earned his JD from the University of North Carolina School of Law. A faculty member of the National Criminal Defense College in Macon, Georgia, Lindsay dedicates between four and six weeks per year teaching and lecturing for various public defender organizations and criminal defense bar associations both within and outside of the United States.

So the file hits your desk. Before you open to the first page you hear the shrill noise of not just a single dog, but a pack of dogs. Wild dogs. Nipping at your pride. You think to yourself, "Why me? Why do I always get the dog cases? It must be fate." You calmly place the file on top of the stack of ever-growing canine files. Your reach for your cup of coffee and seriously consider upping your membership in the S.P.C.A. to "Angel" status. Just as you think a change in profession might be in order, your coworker steps in the door, new file in hand, lets out a piercing howl and says, "This one is the dog of all dogs. The mother of all dogs!" Alas. You are not alone.

Dog files bark because there does not appear to be any reasonable way to mount a successful defense. Put another way, winning the case is about as likely as a crowd of people coming to watch a baseball game at a ballpark in a cornfield in the middle of Iowa. According to the movie, *Field of Dreams,* "If you build it, they will come . . ." And they came. And they watched. And they enjoyed. Truth be known, they would come again, if invited —even if they were not invited.

Every dog case is like a field of dreams: nothing to lose and everything to gain. Believe it or not, out of each dog case can rise a meaningful, believable, and solid defense—a defense that can win. But as Kevin Costner's wife said in the movie, "[I]f all of these people are going to come, we have a lot of work to do." The key to building the ballpark is in designing a theory of defense supported by one or more meaningful themes.

What Is a Theory and Why Do I Need One?

Having listened over the last 20 years to some of the finest criminal defense attorneys lecture on theories and themes, it has become clear to me that there exists great confusion as to what constitutes a theory and how it differs from supporting themes. The words "theory" and "theme" are often used interchangeably. However, they are very different concepts. So what is a theory? Here are a few definitions:

- *That combination of facts (beyond change) and law which in a common sense and emotional way leads a jury to conclude a fellow citizen is wrongfully accused.*—Tony Natale
- *One central theory that organizes all facts, reasons, arguments and furnishes the basic position from which one determines every action in the trial.* —Mario Conte
- *A paragraph of one to three sentences which summarizes the facts, emotions and legal basis for the citizen accused's acquittal or conviction on a lesser charge while telling the defense's story of innocense or reduces culpability.* —Vince Aprile

Common Thread Theory Components

Although helpful, these definitions, without closer inspection, tend to leave the reader thinking "Huh?" Rather than try to decipher these various definitions, it is more helpful to compare them to find commonality. The common thread within these definitions is that each requires a theory of defense to have the same three essential elements:

1. a factual component (fact-crunching/ brainstorming);
2. a legal component (genre); and
3. an emotional component (themes/ archetypes).

In order to fully understand and appreciate how to develop each of these elements in the quest for a solid theory of defense, it

is helpful to have a set of facts with which to work. These facts can then be used to create possible theories of defense. The Kentucky Department of Public Advocacy developed the following fact problem:

State v. Barry Rock, 05 CRS 10621 (Buncombe County)

Betty Gooden is a "pretty, very intelligent young lady" as described by the social worker investigating her case. Last spring, Betty went to visit her school guidance counselor, introducing herself and commenting that she knew Ann Haines (a girl that the counselor had been working with due to a history of abuse by her uncle, and who had recently moved to a foster home in another school district).

Betty said that things were not going well at home. She said that her stepdad, Barry Rock, was very strict and would make her go to bed without dinner. Her mother would allow her and her brother (age 7) to play outside, but when Barry got home, he would send them to bed. She also stated that she got into trouble for bringing a boy home. Barry yelled at her for having sex with boys in their trailer. This morning, she said, Barry came to school and told her teacher that he caught her cheating—copying someone's homework. She denied having sex with the boy or cheating. She was very upset that she wasn't allowed to be a normal teenager like all her friends.

The counselor asked her whether Barry ever touched her in an uncomfortable way. She became very uncomfortable and began to cry. The counselor let her return to class, then met her again later in the day with a police officer present. At that time, Betty stated that since she was 10, Barry had told her if she did certain things, he would let her open presents. She explained how this led to Barry coming into her room in the middle of the night to do things with her. She stated that she would try to be loud enough to wake up her mother in the room next door in the small trailer, but her mother would never come in. Her mother is mentally retarded, and before marrying Barry, had quite a bit of contact with Social Services due to her weak parenting skills. She stated that this had been going on more and more frequently in the last month and estimated it had happened 10 times.

Betty is an A/B student who showed no sign of academic problems. After reporting the abuse, she has been placed in a foster home with her friend Ann. She has also attended extensive counseling sessions to help her cope. Medical exams show that she has been sexually active.

Kim Gooden is Betty's 35-year-old mentally retarded mother. She is a "very meek and introverted person" who is "very soft spoken and will not make eye contact." She told the investigator she had no idea Barry was doing this to Betty. She said Barry made frequent trips to the bathroom and had a number of stomach problems that caused diarrhea. She said that Betty always wanted to go places with Barry and would rather stay home with Barry than go to the store with her. She said that she thought Betty was having sex with a neighbor boy, and she was grounded for it. She said that Betty always complains that she doesn't have normal parents and can't do the things her friends do. She is very confused about why Betty was taken away and why Barry has to live in jail now. An investigation of the trailer revealed panties with semen that matches Barry. Betty says those are her panties. Kim says that Betty and her are the same size and share all of their clothes.

Barry Rock is a 39-year-old mentally retarded man who has been married to Kim for five years. They live together in a small trailer making do with the Social Security checks that they both get due to mental retardation.

Barry now adamantly denies that he ever had sex and says that Betty is just making this up because he figured out she was having sex with the neighbor boy. After Betty's report to the counselor, Barry was interviewed for six hours by a detective and local police officer. In this videotaped statement, Barry is very distant, not making eye contact, and answering with one or two words to each question. Throughout the tape, the officer reminds him just to say what they talked about before they turned the tape on. Barry does answer "yes" when asked if he had sex with Betty and "yes" to other leading questions based on Betty's story. At the end of the interview, Barry begins rambling that it was Betty that wanted sex with him, and he knew that it was wrong, but he did it anyway.

Barry has been tested with IQs of 55, 57, and 59 over the last three years. Following a competency hearing, the trial court found Barry to be competent to go to trial.

The Factual Component

The factual component of the theory of defense comes from brainstorming the facts. More recently referred to as "fact-busting," brainstorming is the essential process of setting forth facts that appear in discovery and arise through investigation.

It is critical to understand that facts are nothing more—and nothing less—than just facts during brainstorming. Each fact should be written down individually and without any spin. Non-judgmental recitation of the facts is the key. Do not draw conclusions as to what a fact or facts might mean. And do not make the common mistake of attributing the meaning to the facts that is given to them by the prosecution or its investigators. It is too early in the process to give value or meaning to any particular fact. At this point, the facts are simply the facts. As we work through the other steps of creating a theory of defense, we will begin to attribute meaning to the various facts.

Judgmental Facts (WRONG)	Non-Judgmental Facts (RIGHT)
Barry was retarded	Barry had an IQ of 70
Betty hated Barry	Barry went to Betty's school, went to her classroom, confronted her about lying, accused her of sexual misconduct, talked with her about cheating, dealt with her in front of her friends
Confession was coerced	Several officers questioned Barry, Barry was not free to leave the station, Barry had no family to call, questioning lasted six hours

The Legal Component

Now that the facts have been developed in a neutral, non-judgmental way, it is time to move to the second component of the theory of defense: the legal component. Experience, as well as basic notions of persuasion, reveal that stark statements such as "self-defense," "alibi," "reasonable doubt," and similar catch-phrases, although somewhat meaningful to lawyers, fail to accurately and completely convey to jurors the essence of the defense. "Alibi" is usually interpreted by jurors as "He did it, but he has some friends that will lie about where he was." "Reasonable doubt" is often interpreted as, "He did it, but they can't prove it."

Thus, the legal component must be more substantive and understandable in order to accomplish the goal of having a meaningful theory of defense. Look at Hollywood and the cinema; thousands of movies have been made that have as their focus some type of alleged crime or criminal behavior. According to Cathy Kelly, training director for the Missouri Pubic Defender's Office, when these types of movies are compared, the plots, in relation to the accused, tend to fall into one of the following genres:

1. It never happened (mistake, set-up);
2. It happened, but I didn't do it (mistaken identification, alibi, set-up, etc.);
3. It happened, I did it, but it wasn't a crime (self-defense, accident, claim or right, etc.);
4. It happened, I did it, it was a crime, but it wasn't this crime (lesser included offense);
5. It happened, I did it, it was the crime charged, but I'm not responsible (insanity, diminished capacity);
6. It happened, I did it, it was the crime charged, I am responsible, so what? (jury nullification).

The six genres are presented in this particular order for a reason. As you move down the list, the difficulty of persuading the jurors that the defendant should prevail increases. It is easier to defend a case based upon the legal genre "it never happened" (mistake, set-up) than it is on "the defendant is not responsible" (insanity).

Using the facts of the Barry Rock example as developed through non-judgmental brainstorming, try to determine which genre fits best. Occasionally, facts will fit into two or three genres. It is important to settle on one genre, and it should usually be the one closest to the top of the list; this decreases the level of defense difficulty. The Rock case fits nicely into the first genre (it never happened), but could also fit into the second category (it happened, but I didn't do it). The first genre should be the one selected.

But be warned. Selecting the genre is not the end of the process. The genre is only a bare bones skeleton. The genre is a legal theory, not your theory of defense. It is just the second element of the theory of defense, and there is more to come. Where most attorneys fail when developing a theory of defense is in stopping once the legal component (genre) is selected. As will be seen, until the emotional component is developed and incorporated, the theory of defense is incomplete.

It is now time to take your work product for a test drive. Assume that you are the editor for your local newspaper. You have the power and authority to write a headline about this case. Your goal is to write it from the perspective of the defense, being true to the facts as developed through brainstorming, and incorporating the legal genre that has been selected. An example might be:

Rock Wrongfully Tossed from Home by Troubled Stepdaughter

Word choice can modify, or entirely change, the thrust of the headline. Consider the headline with the following possible changes:

Rock →	***Barry, Innocent Man, Mentally Challenged Man***
Wrongfully Tossed →	***Removed, Ejected, Sent Packing, Calmly Asked To Leave***
Troubled →	***Vindictive, Wicked, Confused***
Stepdaughter →	***Brat, Tease, Teen, Houseguest, Manipulator***

Notice that the focus of this headline is on Barry Rock, the defendant. It is important to decide whether the headline could be more powerful if the focus were on someone or something other than the defendant. Headlines do not have to focus on the defendant in order for the eventual theory of defense to be successful. The focus does not even have to be on an animate object. Consider the following possible headline examples:

Troubled Teen Fabricates Story for Freedom

Overworked Guidance Counselor Unknowingly Fuels False Accusations

Marriage Destroyed When Mother Forced to Choose Between Husband and Troubled Daughter

Underappreciated Detective Tosses Rock at Superiors

Each of these headline examples can become a solid theory of defense and lead to a successful outcome for the accused.

The Emotional Component

The last element of a theory of defense is the emotional component. The factual element or the legal element, standing alone, are seldom capable of persuading jurors to side with the defense. It is the emotional component of the theory that brings life, viability, and believability to the facts and the law. The emotional component is generated from two sources: archetypes and themes.

Archetypes, as used herein, are basic, fundamental, corollaries of life that transcend age, ethnicity, gender and sex. They are truths that virtually all people in virtually all walks of life can agree upon. For example, few would disagree that when one's child is in danger, one protects the child at all costs. Thus, the archetype demonstrated would be a parent's love and dedication to his or her child. Other archetypes include love, hate, betrayal, despair, poverty, hunger, dishonesty and anger. Most cases lend themselves to one or more archetypes that can provide a source for emotion to drive the theory of defense. Archetypes in the Barry Rock case include:

- The difficulties of dealing with a stepchild
- Children will lie to gain a perceived advantage
- Maternity/paternity is more powerful than marriage
- Teenagers can be difficult to parent

Not only do these archetypes fit nicely into the facts of the Barry Rock case, each serves as a primary category of inquiry during jury selection.

In addition to providing emotion through archetypes, attorneys should use primary and secondary themes. A primary theme is a word, phrase, or simple sentence that captures the controlling or dominant emotion of the theory of defense. The theme must be brief and easily remembered by the jurors.

For instance, a primary theme developed in the theory of defense and advanced during the trial of the O.J. Simpson case was, "If it doesn't fit, you must acquit." Other examples of primary themes include:

- One for all and all for one
- Looking for love in all the wrong places
- Am I my brother's keeper?
- Stand by your man (or woman)
- Wrong place, wrong time, wrong person
- When you play with fire, you're going to get burned

Although originality can be successful, it is not necessary to redesign the wheel. Music, especially country/western music, is a wonderful resource for finding themes. Consider the following lines taken directly from the songbooks of Nashville (and assembled by Dale Cobb, an incredible criminal defense attorney from Charleston, South Carolina):

Top 10 Country/Western Lines (Themes?)

10. Get your tongue outta my mouth 'cause I'm kissin' you goodbye.
9. Her teeth was stained, but her heart was pure.
8. I bought a car from the guy who stole my girl, but it don't run so we're even.
7. I still miss you, baby, but my aim's gettin' better.
6. I wouldn't take her to a dog fight 'cause I'm afraid she'd win.
5. If I can't be number one in your life, then number two on you.
4. If I had shot you when I wanted to, I'd be out by now.
3. My wife ran off with my best friend, and I sure do miss him.
2. She got the ring and I got the finger.
1. She's actin' single and I'm drinkin' doubles.

Incorporating secondary themes can often strengthen primary themes. A secondary theme is a word or phrase used to identify, describe, or label an aspect of the case. Here are some examples: a person—"never his fault"; an action—"acting as a robot"; an attitude—"stung with lust"; an approach—"no stone unturned"; an omission—"not a rocket scientist"; a condition—"too drunk to fish."

There are many possible themes that could be used in the Barry Rock case. For example, "blood is thicker than water"; "Bitter Betty comes a calling"; "to the detectives, interrogating Barry should have been like shooting fish in a barrel"; "sex abuse is a serious problem in this country—in this case, it was just an answer"; "the extent to which a person will lie in order to feel accepted knows no bounds."

Creating the Theory of Defense Paragraph

Using the headline, the archetype(s) identified, and the theme(s) developed, it is time to write the "Theory of Defense Paragraph." Although there is no magical formula for structuring the paragraph, the following template can be useful:

Theory of Defense Paragraph
- Open with a theme
- Introduce protagonist/antagonist
- Introduce antagonist/protagonist
- Describe conflict
- Set forth desired resolution
- End with theme

Note that the protagonist/antagonist does not have to be an animate object.

The following examples of theory of defense paragraphs in the Barry Rock case are by no means first drafts. Rather, they have been modified and adjusted many times to get them to this level. They are not perfect, and they can be improved upon. However, they serve as good examples of what is meant by a solid, valid, and useful theory of defense.

Theory of Defense Paragraph One

The extent to which even good people will tell a lie in order to be accepted by others knows no limits. "Barry, if you just tell us you did it, this will be over and you can go home. It will be easier on everyone." Barry Rock is a very simple man. Not because of free choice, but because he was born mentally challenged. The word of choice at that time was "retarded." Despite these limitations, Barry met Kim Gooden, who was also mentally challenged, and the two got married. Betty, Kim's daughter, was young at that time. With the limited funds from Social Security Disability checks, Barry and Kim fed and clothed Betty, made sure she had a safe home in which to live, and provided for her many needs. Within a few years, Betty became a teenager, and with that came the difficulties all parents experience with teenagers: not wanting to do homework, cheating to get better grades, wanting to stay out too late, experimenting with sex. Mentally challenged, and only a stepparent, Barry tried to set some rules—rules Betty didn't want to obey. The lie that Betty told stunned him. Kim's trust in her daughter's word, despite Barry's denials, hurt him even more. Blood must be thicker

than water. All Barry wanted was for his family to be happy like it had been in years gone by. "Everything will be okay, Barry. Just say you did it and you can get out of here. It will be easier for everyone if you just admit it."

Theory of Defense Paragraph Two

The extent to which even good people will tell a lie in order to be accepted by others knows no limits. Full of despair and all alone, confused and troubled, Betty Gooden walked into the guidance counselor's office at her school. Betty was at what she believed to be the end of her rope. Her mother and stepfather were mentally retarded. She was ashamed to bring her friends to her house. Her parents couldn't even help her with homework. She couldn't go out as late as she wanted. Her stepfather punished her for trying to get ahead by cheating. He even came to her school and made a fool of himself. No—of her!!! She couldn't even have her boyfriend over and mess around with him without getting punished. Life would be so much simpler if her stepfather were gone. As she waited in the guidance counselor's office, *Bitter Betty* decided there was no other option—just tell a simple, not-so-little lie. *Sex abuse is a serious problem in this country.* In this case, it was not a problem at all—because it never happened. *Sex abuse was Betty's answer.*

The italicized portions in the above examples denote primary themes and secondary themes—the parts of the emotional component of the theory of defense. Attorneys can strengthen the emotional component by describing the case in ways that embrace an archetype or archetypes—desperation in the first example, and shame towards parents in the second. It is also important to note that even though each of these theories are strong and valid, the focus of each is from a different perspective. The first theory focuses on Barry, and the second on Betty.

The primary purpose of a theory of defense is to guide the lawyer in every action taken during trial. The theory will make trial preparation much easier. It will dictate how to select the jury, what to include in the opening, how to handle each witness on cross, how to decide which witnesses are necessary to call in the defense case, and what to include in and how to deliver the closing argument. The theory of defense might never be shared with the jurors word for word; but the essence of the theory will be delivered through each witness, so long as the attorney remains dedicated and devoted to the theory.

In the end, whether you choose to call them dog cases, or to view them, as I suggest you should, as fields of dreams, such cases are opportunities to build baseball fields in the middle of cornfields in the middle of Iowa. If you build them with a meaningful theory of defense, and if you believe in what you have created, the people will come. They will watch. They will listen. They will believe. "If you build it, they will come . . ." ▪

Suppression of Evidence 101

1

6 Reasons to file a suppression motion.

1- You have great facts and the law is good for you. You should win.

2- You need to know what a witness is going to say and they will be under oath.

3- Your client needs to hear how bad things are.

4- It is a serious case and you need to preserve every issue.

2

More reasons to file suppression motions.

5- There is no defense other than suppression and if you win, the case is over.

6- Some DA's don't want to do the work and will make a better offer.

3

TYPES OF EVIDENCE YOU CAN SUPPRESS

1- IDENTIFICATION of your client.

2- STATEMENTS of your client.

3- PHYSICAL EVIDENCE that hurts your client's case.

4

SUPPRESSING IDENTIFICATIONS

- When a tainted IDENTIFICATION is involved, you should move to suppress.
- The issue is the reliability of the identification.
- It is an issue of fundamental fairness or due process whenever the facts shows tainted reliability.

5

SUPPRESSING IDENTIFICATIONS

- Fifth Amendment Due Process Clause of the U.S. Const.
- Article I, §19 of the N.C. Const.
- EIRA (15A-284.50-53); new jailhouse informant law (15A-981); substantial statutory violations (15A-974)
- RAISE AND PRESERVE ARGUMENT UNDER ALL THREE!

6

3 REQUIREMENTS FOR SUPPRESSION OF STATEMENTS MADE PRIOR TO FORMAL ARREST

1- Your client must have been in CUSTODY when the statement was made.

AND

2- Your client was questioned by police OR the police said something to goad your client to respond.

AND

3- Your client did not waive his Miranda rights.

*** There can also be a violation when client has said doesn't want to talk and police continue to question.

7

VIOLATION OF THE RIGHT TO COUNSEL SITUTATIONS FOR STATEMENT SUPPRESSION

1- Your client was charged AND has asked for a lawyer (or has a lawyer), AND someone working for the police elicited a statement from your client.

The client can be in or out of custody.

2- A) Client is in jail AND

B) Client has asked for an attorney AND

C) Police go to see your client UNSOLICITED by the client to question about the case for which is in jail.

8

SUPPRESSING EVIDENCE FOR RIGHT TO COUNSEL VIOLATIONS

- Sixth Amendment to the U.S. Const.
- Article 1, §23, N.C. Const.
- G.S. 15A-980*

9

RULES YOU MUST OBEY

1- Must file motion **no later than 10 working days** after receiving notice of intent to use evidence by the state. N.C.G.S. §15A-976.

2- Motion **must be accompanied by an affidavit that alleges facts** to support the violations you allege. If your motion doesn't state sufficient facts on its face to support the violations you are alleging, the motion may be dismissed without a hearing.

3- Unless your client's **standing** to raise the claim is obvious, the motion or affidavit must state why he/she has standing.

10

PRACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS

1- Always **cite the State Constitution** in addition to the Federal.

2- Consider preparing **a memorandum of law** to support your argument. Unless judge will have a problem with it, do not file it prior to the hearing.

3- The judge MUST rule on the motion in the session it is heard UNLESS you agree on the record to the ruling being out of session, or out of term, or out of county.

11

SELF TEST ON SUPPRESSION

1) Name 3 types of evidence that may be suppressed through a suppression motion?

2) List 5 tactical reasons to file a suppression motion other than that you have great facts and should win?

3) List 3 technical requirements that may cause a suppression motion to be denied without a hearing if you fail to meet these requirements?

12

ANSWERS TO QUESTION 1
SELF TEST ON SUPPRESSION

1) Name 3 types of evidence that may be suppressed through a suppression motion?

a. Identifications

b. Statements

c. Physical evidence

13

ANSWERS TO QUESTION 2 SELF TEST ON SUPPRESSION

2) List 5 tactical reasons to file a suppression motion other than that you have great facts and should win?

a. The DA may make a **better plea offer** rather than having to do the work to do the motion, or may fear losing and make a better offer.

b. You get to **question witnesses** who may not consent to be interviewed, and you get their answers under oath and on the record for later use.

c. Your **client will see the evidence** and hear testimony against him so that he will have a better idea of the case against him and may become more realistic about the case.

d. It is a **serious case** and you need to **preserve** all the **issues**.

e. Your **only defense** is to get the evidence suppressed.

14

ANSWERS TO QUESTION 3
SELF TEST ON SUPPRESSION

3) List 3 technical requirements that may cause a suppression motion to be denied without a hearing if you fail to meet these requirements?

a. If it is not **filed in a timely manner**. That is within 10 days after they State gives you notice of intent to use the evidence if that notice was received at least 20 days before trial (unless the deadline is extended).

b. If it is not accompanied by an **affidavit**.

c. If it **does not raise a legal issue on its face** that would justify suppression and that is **supported by facts** set forth in the motion that show the issue exists.

15

Problem 1

About 10:30 pm two officers on bike patrol saw two black males standing in the roadway in a part of the town that is known to have a high drug trade and usage. One of the men, A, was known to the officers as a drug user and alcoholic. The second man, B, who later becomes the defendant, is not known to the police. According to the police reports generated, the man B handed something to the man known to the police, A. The officer suspected a drug transaction and moved towards the men to investigate. The two officers approached the two men. One of the officers saw that man B appeared to have something clutched in his fist which was not visible. The officer upon approaching the man, immediately, ordered man B to put his hands on his head with his fingers interlaced on his head. Man B put his hands on his head, but did not interlace his fingers. The officer then grabbed Man B's arm and pulled it in front of Man B. The officer continued to order Man to place his hands with interlocked fingers on his head. Man B refused to comply. The officer then began to tell Man B that he would taze Man B if he did not get on his knees. Man B got on his knees. The officer tried to force Man B to put his hands behind his back and continued to order him to open his hands. Man B failed to comply. The Officer pushed Man B onto his chest, and the other officer tazed Man B. Man B was handcuffed. Man B was found to have a crack rock inside a Newport cigarette box that was crushed in his hand.

16

Issues in Problem 1

1. Information known to the police was not sufficient to make the encounter more than a consensual encounter from the outset because it was based wholly on a hunch.

2. No reasonable suspicion existed because Officer didn't know anything specific when he approached Man B. Suspected he knew that something was in D's hand, but didn't know what. Didn't ask any investigatory questions. Immediately exerted authority over D before establishing any more information by questioning. No particularized suspicion as to D or what crime if any was committed.

17

Additional Issues in Problem 1

3. D was not free to leave as soon as the officer began to order him around. Was seized no basis upon which to seize.

4. The most that the officer was entitled to do was to conduct a consensual encounter, during which the D had the right to refuse to comply.

5. The officer exceeded the bounds of his authority based on his current knowledge which made the whole thing suppressible.

18

Problem 2

An early morning cleaning crew in a church hears a noise and believes there has been a breakin and that the person is still in the building. Police are called. Police respond and reportedly see a man in the parking lot carrying wine. When the officer yells at the man to stop, he runs into the woods. Client is apprehended in the woods and is handcuffed. Police are escorting client to the police car, and he has not been Mirandized or waived his rights. Client says, "this is a motherfucker". The policeman says back to client, "Breaking into a church is a motherfucker." Client responds, "the door was open."

19

Issue in Problem 2

1. Client is in custody at the time the exchange occurred. No Miranda warning had been given or rights waiver made. Was the officer's remark intended to get a response?

If so that is questioning?

20

Problem 3

A home invasion robbery occurs. One of the perpetrators was wearing a mask and was described as being 6' 2", 200lbs., black male with medium length hair. A few days later client is stopped. Client is 5'11", 175lbs. black male with short braids that stick out from his head. Client is shown to the witness. At the time the witness views the client he is sitting alone in the rear of a marked patrol car, and the officer told the witness at the time they contacted the witness to view client that, "they thought they had the guy".

21

Issues in Problem 3

1. It is a single person show up. It is per se suggestive.

2. It is not shortly after the crime, so there is less reason for a show up. No need to keep looking or to know if should let person go immediately.

3. Remarks of the officer are inappropriate and suggestive. In addition, the fact the person is in side a police car is suggestive.

4. Person doesn't really fit the description.

22

Issues in Problem 4

1. The application fails to implicate the premises to be searched. No connection between client living in Durham 4 months before and having stolen property confiscated from him in Durham, and new apartment in Carrboro.

2. The affiant makes a personal conclusion that probable cause exists without supplying any factual information to establish that probable cause exists to search for the property at the place to be searched. Does not set out facts that support his conclusion.

3. The information concerning break-ins and burglaries was stale as to a search for the current residence of the accused because it was between 4 to 7 months old on the date of the application for the warrant.

23

More issues in Problem 4

4. Property that was allegedly stolen in the break-ins and burglaries being investigated that previously was found to be in the possession of the accused at his previous residence had already been confiscated by the Durham Police Department on May 3, 2004. There was no reason stated in the application to believe that the accused was still in possession of additional stolen property and no facts stated to establish that if such property was in the accused's possession that it was probably located at his new residence.

5. Investigator Vaughn executed a warrant outside his territorial jurisdiction which is a violation of N.C.G.S.15A-247.
Observations are fruit of the poisonous tree.

24

More Issues in Problem 4

6. Because the warrant was facially invalid, the investigators were not legally in the place searched and any observations made by them during the search must also be suppressed. Observations are fruit of the poisonous tree.

7. The warrant application is for a general warrant, to look for things that they cannot name that they hope might be there, and that is prohibited by North Carolina Statutes, the Constitution of North Carolina and the Constitution of the United States.

25

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	**MOTION FOR DECLARATION**
	)	**OF INDIGENCE FOR PURPOSES OF**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**OF OBTAINING INVESTIGATIVE**
	)	**& EXPERT ASSISTANCE**
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John DOe***, by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, N.C.Gen.Stat. § 7A-450(a), and ***State v. Davis***, 168 N.C. App. 321, 608 S.E.2d 74 (2005), for an Order declaring the Defendant to be indigent and appointing second-counsel in this matter. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. On DATE, the Defendant, John Doe, was arrested and charged with three counts of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses in the above-captioned cases.

2. On DATE, Mr. Doe was indicted for three counts of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses in the above-captioned cases.

3. The charges of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses arise from allegations from the NC Department of Revenue that Mr. Doe obtained refunds on his North Carolina Individual Income Tax returns for the years _____.

4. Prior to being charged with the aforementioned offenses, Mr. Doe was employed as a Deputy for the ___ County Sheriff's Department, as well as a law enforcement officer for other law enforcement agencies.

5. Upon being charged with the aforementioned offenses in DATE, Mr. Doe was suspended from the ___ County Sheriff's Department, as well as the other law enforcement agencies with which he was previously employed.

6. Since being charged with the aforementioned offenses, Mr. Doe was not been able to obtain gainful employment in his chosen profession of law enforcement. Mr. Doe was required to obtain employment in other fields.

7. Only in the last few weeks has Mr. Doe been able to obtain employment in the law enforcement profession. However, due to Mr. Doe's current financial situation involving the NC Department of Revenue and the Internal Revenue Service, much of Mr. Doe's

income is being used to satisfy back taxes and tax penalties associated with his tax situation.

8. Due to being unemployed in the law enforcement profession, having to find other sources of income, and being required to satisfy back taxes and tax penalties, Mr. Doe is not able to obtain sufficient funds to hire the necessary experts for his defense.

9. Undersigned counsel has been provided discovery in this matter, much of which consists of income tax returns and other related documents.

10. Due to Mr. Doe's financial situation, undersigned counsel has agreed to represent Mr. Doe pro bono.

11. Due to his financial situation, Mr. Doe is an indigent individual and does not have the means with which to retain the necessary expert assistance required to defend against the aforementioned charges, namely a forensic accountant and/or a private investigator.

12. Under the Constitution of the United States and the State of North Carolina, a defendant facing criminal charges is entitled to expert assistance in defending against said charges. If the defendant is indigent, counsel and the necessary expert assistance must be appointed at state expense.

13. Neither the Defendant's family, nor the Defendant, can shoulder the financial burden of retaining the necessary expert assistance to defend against the aforementioned charges.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Honorable Court for the following relief:

1. That the Court enter an order declaring the Defendant to be an indigent individual;

2. That the Court enter an order allowing the Defendant to seek and obtain funds for expert assistance from the Court and that the Office of Indigent Defense Services and/or the Administrative Office of the Courts be directed to reimburse said experts for said services; and

3. For such other and further relief to which the Defendant may be entitled and which the Court may deem just and proper.

This the __th day of _____.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: ------
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: --------

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion for Declaration of Indigence for Purposes of Obtaining Investigative & Expert Assistance*** was this day served upon the prosecution by the following method:

__X__ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, addressed to the following:

_____
Special Deputy Attorney General
NC Departement of Justice – Special Prosecutions Section
P.O. Box 629
Raleigh, NC 27602

_____ by personally serving the Office of the Attorney General via hand delivery;

__X__ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Special Deputy Attorney General; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the Attorney General maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE DISTRICT COURT**
COUNTY OF _____	**DIVISION __ CR_____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	**MOTION FOR PRESERVATION OF**
vs.	**)**	**ALL DOCUMENTS/EVIDENCE**
	)	**& WORK PRODUCT**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe,*** by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, pursuant to the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, Article 48 of the North Carolina General Statutes, N.C. Gen. Stat. §§ 15A-501(6), 15A-903(c) & (d), N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-1415(f), and ***State of North Carolina vs. Theodore Jerry Williams***,[1] and hereby requests that this Honorable Court enter an Order commanding all law enforcement and prosecutorial agencies, officers, employees, agents and/or attorneys involved in the investigation and prosecution of the above-captioned matters to preserve and retain any and all documentation, physical evidence, and work product obtained and/or produced in the investigation and prosecution of these matters.

The Defendant further requests that this Honorable Court order all law enforcement agencies involved in the investigation of these matters to release to the prosecution all materials and information acquired during the course of the investigation into these matters, pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. §§ 15A-501(6) and 15A-903(c) and (d). In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant states unto the Court as follows:

1. The Defendant is charged with one count of first-degree murder.

2. The documentation and physical evidence the Defendant seeks to have preserved are discoverable under Article 48 of the North Carolina General Statutes.

3. N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-501(6) states:

> **Upon the arrest of a person, with or without a warrant, but not necessarily in the order hereinafter listed, a law-enforcement officer…must make available to the State on a timely basis all materials and information acquired in the course of all felony**

[1] 362 N.C. 628, 669 S.E.2d 290 (2008).

investigations. This responsibility is a continuing and affirmative duty.

4. N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-903(a)(1) states:

> **Upon motion of the defendant, the court must order the State to make available to the defendant the complete files of all law enforcement agencies, investigatory agencies, and prosecutors' offices involved in the investigation of the crimes committed or the prosecution of the Defendant.**

5. N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(a)(1)(a) states in part:

> **The term "file" includes the defendant's statements, the codefendant's statements, witness statements, investigating officers' notes, results of tests and examinations, or any other matter or evidence obtained during the investigation of the offenses alleged to have been committed by the defendant.**

6. N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(c) states:

> **On a timely basis, law enforcement and investigatory agencies shall make available to the prosecutor's office a complete copy of the complete files related to the investigation of the crimes committed or the prosecution of the defendant for compliance with this section and any disclosure under G.S. 15A-902(a). Investigatory agencies that obtain information and materials listed in subdivision (1) of subsection (a) of this section shall ensure that such information and materials are fully disclosed to the prosecutor's office on a timely basis for disclosure to the defendant.**

7. N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(d) states:

> **Any person who willfully omits or misrepresents evidence or information required to be disclosed pursuant to subsection (1) of subsection (a) of this section, or required to be provided to the prosecutor's office pursuant to subsection (c) of this section, shall be guilty of a Class H felony. Any person who willfully omits or misrepresents evidence or information required to be disclosed pursuant to any other provision of this section shall be guilty of a Class 1 misdemeanor.**

8. In order, for the Defendant to be afforded his statutory right to inspect and copy all evidence under both the statutory and constitutional laws

governing discovery in criminal cases, any and all evidence must be made available to the Defendant for inspection.

9. N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-1415(f), in addressing discovery requirements in post-conviction proceedings in superior court, states in part:

> **…The State, to the extent allowed by law, shall make available to the defendant's counsel the complete files of all law enforcement and prosecutorial agencies involved in the investigation of the crimes committed or the prosecution of the Defendant…**

10. N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-1415(f) has been interpreted to require the prosecution to provide to the defense prosecutorial work product.[2]

11. In order to ensure all evidence is available and not inadvertently destroyed, the Court should enter an Order requiring all law enforcement and prosecutorial agencies involved in the investigation and prosecution of these matters to preserve any and all documents, evidence, and work product obtained and/or produced in connection with these matters.

12. The interests of justice and the rights of the Defendant require the preservation of all documents, evidence, and work product connected with these matters and, as such, the Court should enter an Order requiring that such materials be preserved.

13. Further, the defense hereby places the State on notice that the defense is demanding the preservation of any and all evidence in these matters in order that the State will have notice of the defense's demand and will not be able to assert the doctrine of "bad faith,"[3] in the event any unwarranted loss or destruction of documentation or evidence occurs.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Honorable Court for the following relief:

1. That the Court enter an Order commanding all law enforcement and prosecutorial agencies, officers, employees, agents and/or attorneys involved in the investigation and prosecution of the above-captioned matters to preserve and retain any and all documentation, physical evidence, and work product obtained and/or produced in the investigation of these matters;

2. That the Court enter an Order requiring all law enforcement and prosecutorial agencies, officers, employees, agents and/or attorneys

[2] ***State v. Bates***, 348 N.C. 62, 505 S.E.2d 97 (1998).
[3] See ***Arizona v. Youngblood,*** 488 U.S., 109 S.Ct. 333, 102 L.Ed.2d 281 (1988),

involved in the investigation and prosecution of the above-captioned matters to release to the prosecution all materials and information acquired during the course of the investigation into these matters, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-501(6) and 15A-903(c) & (d); and

3. For such other and further relief to which the Defendant may be entitled and which the Court may deem just and proper.

This the __th day of DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
North Carolina State Bar Number: _____
127 W. Hargett Street, Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

By:_____
Emily D. Gladden
Attorney for the Defendant
North Carolina State Bar Number: _____
127 W. Hargett Street, Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Notice of Appearance*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery to the Office of the District Attorney – District __ (_____ County);

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the __th day of DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, P.L.L.C.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
North Carolina State Bar Number: ___
127 W. Hargett Street, Suite 705 Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE DISTRICT COURT**
COUNTY OF _____	**DIVISION 16 C__ _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	**ORDER ON DEFENDANT'S**
vs.	**)**	**MOTION FOR**
	)	**PRESERVATION OF**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**DOCUMENTS,**
	)	**EVIDENCE & WORK**
Defendant.	**)**	**PRODUCT**

THIS MATTER having come on to be heard before the Honorable _____, Chief District Court Judge, presiding at the DATE session of Criminal District Court for the County of _____, pursuant to the Defendant's ***Motion for Preservation of All Documents/ Evidence & Work Product***, which was filed on DATE; and

IT APPEARING TO THE COURT, that at the time this matter was presented to the Court, the State of North Carolina was present and represented by Assistant District Attorney _____, and the Defendant was present and represented by Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and Emily D. Gladden, Attorney at Law;

IT APPEARING TO THE COURT, after determining that the Court has jurisdiction over the subject matter and the parties, and, after considering the Defendant's Motion, and after hearing the arguments of counsel for both the State and the Defense, finds the Defendant's ***Motion for Preservation of Documents/Evidence & Work Product*** should be allowed.

IT IS THEREFORE, ORDERED, ADJUDGED, and DECREED, that the ***Defendant's Motion for Preservation of Documents/Evidence & Work Product*** is hereby granted as follows:

1. All law enforcement and prosecutorial agencies, officers, employees, agents and/or attorneys involved in the investigation and prosecution of these matters shall preserve and retain any and all documentation, physical evidence, and work product obtained and/or produced in the investigation of these matters pursuant to all applicable statutory and constitutional law.

2. All law enforcement and prosecutorial agencies, officers, employees, agents, and/or attorneys involved in the investigation and prosecution of the above-captioned matters shall release to the prosecution all materials and information acquired during the course of the investigation into these matters, pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-501(6) and N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A -903(c).

This the _____ day of DATE.

_____
The Honorable _____
Chief District Court Judge

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF	**__ CRS _____**
STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**
	)
vs.	**)**
	) **REQUEST FOR**
JOHN DOE,	**)** **ARRAIGNMENT**
	)
	)
Defendant.	**)**

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe,*** by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, pursuant to the "Law of the Land" Clause of Article I, Sections 19, 23 and 27 of the North Carolina Constitution, the Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, and N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A- 941, and hereby submits this written request for arraignment.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Request for Arraignment*** was this day served upon the prosecution by the following method:

__X__ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, addressed to the following:

_____
Special Deputy Attorney General
NC Departement of Justice – Special Prosecutions Section
P.O. Box 629
Raleigh, NC 27602

_____ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	)	
	)	
VS.	)	**REQUEST FOR VOLUNTARY DISCOVERY (ALTERNATIVE MOTION FOR DISCOVERY)**
	)	
JOHN DOE,	)	
	)	
Defendant.	)	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe,*** by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby requests voluntary discovery from the prosecution in this case, pursuant to the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article I, §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, ***Brady v. Maryland***, 373 U.S. 83, 83 S.Ct. 1194, 10 L.Ed.2d 215 (1963) and its progeny, and Article 48 of the North Carolina General Statutes.

1. Pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(a)(1), the Defendant requests the complete files of all law enforcement agencies, investigatory agencies, and prosecutor offices involved in the investigation of the crimes committed or the prosecution of the defendant.

2. Pursuant to N.C.Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(a)(1)(a), the Defendant requests the following:

    (a) The defendant's statements;

    (b) The co-defendant's statements;

    (c) Witness statements;

    (d) Investigating officers' notes;

    (e) Results of tests and examinations; and

    (f) Any other matter or evidence obtained during the investigation of the offenses alleged to have been committed by the defendant.

3. Pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(a)(1)(a), if any matter or evidence

has been submitted for testing or examination, the Defendant requests the following:

(a) Any and all test and/or examination results;

(b) Any and all testing/examination data;

(c) Any and all calculations, or writings of any kind, generated in connection with said testing and/or examination results;

(d) Any and all preliminary test and/or screening results; and

(e) Any and all bench notes

4. Pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(a)(1)(d), the Defendant invokes his the right to inspect and copy or photograph any materials in possession of the State and, under appropriate safeguards, to inspect, examine, and test any physical evidence or sample of physical evidence in possession of the State.

5. Pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(a)(2), the Defendant requests, within a reasonable time prior to trial, as specified by the Court, that the State provide the following to the Defendant:

(a) Notice to the defendant of any expert witnesses that the State reasonably expects to call as a witness at trial;

(b) A report of the results of any examinations or tests conducted by any State experts.

(c) The curriculum vitae of any State experts,

(d) The opinion, and the underlying basis for that opinion, of any State expert.

6. Pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903(a)(3), the Defendant requests that the State provided, at the beginning of jury selection, a written list of the names of all other witnesses whom the State reasonably expects to call during the trial.

7. The Defendant requests a complete copy of the Defendant's prior criminal record, if any, including but not necessarily limited to:

a. All juvenile and adult detention, jail, prison, parole, probation, and pre-sentence investigation records and reports;

b. All arrest, conviction, and adult and juvenile criminal offense records and reports;

c. All records and reports of any law enforcement authority as that term is defined in paragraph 5(a) above;

d. All records and reports of any detention or court authority;

e. All records and reports of any prosecuting authority as that term is defined in paragraph 5(b) above;

8. The Defendant requests the opportunity to inspect and copy or photograph any and all books, papers, documents, photographs, motion pictures, videotapes, mechanical or electronic recordings, buildings and places, or any other crime scene, tangible objects, or copies or portions thereof, which are within the possession, custody or control of the State and which are material to the preparation of the defense, or are intended for use by the State as evidence at the trial or were obtained from or allegedly belonged to the Defendant.

9. The Defendant requests a copy of any and all search warrants, arrest warrants and non-testimonial identification orders issued in connection with the case, as well as any supporting affidavits, sufficient to allow the Defendant to determine whether to proceed under N.C. Gen. Stat. §15A-971 *et seq*.

10. The Defendant requests a description of any and all pre-trial identification procedures conducted by the State or any of its agents in connection with the alleged crimes, and the date, time, place and persons present at such procedure, sufficient to allow the Defendant to determine whether to proceed under N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-971, *et seq*.

11. The Defendant requests a description of any conversation between the Defendant and any law-enforcement officer, official or agent, and the date, time, place, and persons present at such time, sufficient to allow the Defendant to determine whether to proceed under N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-971, *et seq*.

12. The Defendant requests a description of any and all property or contraband seized from the Defendant, Defendant's home, or an area under Defendant's control that the State intends to offer as evidence at trial, or which led to any other evidence the State intends to use at trial, and the time, place, and manner of any such seizure, sufficient to allow the Defendant to determine whether to proceed under N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-971, *et seq*.;

13. The Defendant requests a description of any and all electronic, mechanical, visual or photographic surveillance of the Defendant conducted by State or federal law-enforcement officers, officials or agents, and the date, time, place and persons

present at such surveillance, sufficient to allow the Defendant to determine whether to proceed under N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-971, *et seq.*

14. The Defendant requests a description of any electronic, mechanical, visual, or photographic surveillance of other persons, places or organizations conducted by State or federal law-enforcement officers, officials or agents which resulted in the interception and/or recording of any of the Defendant's conversations, photographs of the Defendant, or other information relating to the Defendant, and the date, time, location and manner of any such surveillance, sufficient to allow the Defendant to determine whether to proceed under N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-971, *et seq*.

15. The Defendant requests information related to the nature of any other criminal acts, or prior bad acts, allegedly committed by the Defendant which the State intends to introduce as evidence in its case-in-chief or at sentencing, and the particulars of those acts, including but not limited to the time and place the acts were allegedly committed, whether the acts were the subject of any court proceedings, and the results of any such proceedings.

16. The Defendant requests a statement indicating whether or not any informants were involved in the investigation or preparation of the cases against the Defendant.

17. Pursuant to ***Brady v. Maryland***, 373 U.S. 83 (1963), ***United States v. Agurs***, 427 U.S. 97 (1976), ***United States v. Bagley***, 374 U.S. 667 (1985) and ***Kyles v. Whitley***, 514 U.S. 419 (1995) any and all documents, reports, facts or other information in whatever form which would tend to exculpate the Defendant, mitigate the degree of the offense or the appropriate punishment, weaken or overcome testimony adverse to the Defendant given by a State's witness, impeach the credibility of a State's witness, or would otherwise tend to be favorable to the Defendant in any way, including but not limited to:

    a. Any notes or reports, in whatever form, which were prepared by any law-enforcement officer, official or agent and which would tend to refute, impeach or contradict any of the evidence the State intends to introduce at trial, or which tends to show or indicate in any way that the Defendant did not commit the crimes charged in the indictment or that he may have a legal defense to such crimes;

    b. Any evidence or information which would tend to indicate in any way that someone other than the Defendant committed the crimes charged, including but not limited to any reports concerning any investigation of suspects other than the Defendant carried out in connection with this case or containing a description of the alleged perpetrator that is inconsistent

with the physical characteristics of the Defendant;

c. The facts and circumstances surrounding any pretrial identification procedure conducted by any law-enforcement officer, official or agent in connection with this case in which any alleged witness failed to identify the Defendant or identified someone other than the Defendant;

d. Any written, recorded or oral statements made by any person which would tend to exculpate the Defendant or indicate in any way that Defendant may not have committed the alleged crimes or that Defendant may have a legal defense to such crimes;

e. The names and addresses of any witnesses who may have knowledge of facts which might be favorable to the Defendant, or who were interviewed by any law-enforcement officer, official or agent and failed to provide inculpatory information concerning the Defendant;

f. Any statements previously made by a prospective witness for the State, whether written or oral and whether made under oath or otherwise, which are inconsistent or at variance in any way with what the witness is anticipated to testify to at trial;

g. The complete prior criminal and juvenile records of all witnesses who may testify for the State, the nature of any criminal charges under investigation or pending against such witnesses in any jurisdiction, and a description of any prior bad acts engaged in by any such witnesses;

h. The details of any promises or indications of actual or possible immunity, leniency, favorable treatment or any other consideration whatsoever, or of any inducements or threats, made or suggested by any State or federal employee or agent to any person who has provided information to or will testify for the State in this case, or to anyone representing such a person;

i. Any information suggesting any bias or hostility by any prospective witness for the State toward the Defendant, or any other factor bearing on the credibility of any prospective witness for the State, including but not limited to any mental illness or condition, or dependence on or use of alcohol or drugs of any kind, whether or not received legally; and

18. All additional information of the type requested above that comes to the attention of the State or its agents after initial compliance with this request.

19. If the State intends to redact any portions of any discovery required to be provided to the Defendant under N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-903 *et seq*., then the Defendant specifically requests that the State first seek a protective order, with notice to the

Defendant, from the Superior Court before any redacting is performed.

TIME OF REQUEST

This request for voluntary discovery is made not later than the tenth working day after the undersigned counsel was notified of the return of a true bill in the above-referenced matters. The undersigned counsel received said notification of the return of said true bill on DATE.

WHEREFORE the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Honorable Court for the following relief:

1. That the State voluntarily provide the aforementioned items of discovery within seven (7) days of the service of this Request upon the State, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-902(a);

2. That if the State fails or refuses to provide the requested voluntary discovery herein, within the time period prescribed by law, that the Court treat this voluntary discovery request as a motion for the Court to issue an Order compelling the Office of the District Attorney to provide the required discovery pursuant to Article 48 of the North Carolina General Statutes; and

3. For such other and further relief to which the Defendant may be entitled and which the Court may deem just and proper.

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett Street, Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Request for Voluntary Discovery (Alternative Motion for Discovery)*** was this day served upon the prosecution by the following method:

__X__ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, addressed to the following:

Special Deputy Attorney General
NC Departement of Justice – Special Prosecutions Section
P.O. Box 629
Raleigh, NC 27602

_____ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett Street, Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**
STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**
	)
vs.	**) MOTION FOR EXTENSION OF TIME**
	) TO FILE FURTHER MOTIONS
JOHN DOE,	**)**
	)
Defendant.	**)**

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article I §§ 19 and 23 of the Constitution of the State of North Carolina, and applicable law of the State of North Carolina, for an Order permitting additional time to the defense in which to file further pre-trial motions in these cases. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. The Defendant is charged with first-degree murder and robbery with a dangerous weapon. The trial of this matter has been scheduled to commence on DATE.

2. During negotiations between the State and the Defense concerning the scheduling of a trial date, the Defense agreed to file all motions in this matter on or before DATE.

3. At the filing of this Motion, the defense has reviewed the discovery thus far in these matters and has, upon information and belief, drafted and filed those motions which the defense deems necessary and appropriate at this time.

4. Undersigned counsel has, to the best of his ability, attempted to identify the motions which need to be filed, based upon his review of discovery and has, in fact, drafted and filed such motions.

5. However, the reality of litigation in the criminal courts is such that information may become available to the defense at any time, such that a motion may be required to be filed in a period of time past the agreed upon DATE.

6. As such, the defense respectfully requests that the Court enter an Order permitting additional time in which to file further pre-trial motions in this matter should the need arise.

7. This Motion is made in good faith and is not filed for the purpose of obstruction or delay.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
State Bar No.: _____
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email: _____

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion for Extension of Time to File Further Motions*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the 4th day of August, 2012.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
State Bar No.: _____
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email: _____

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**)**	
	)	**MOTION FOR COMPLETE**
vs.	**)**	**RECORDATION OF**
	)	**ALL PROCEEDINGS**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-1241(b), the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, and Article 1 §§ 19, 23, and 24 of the North Carolina Constitution, for an Order directing that all proceedings and any hearings and trials of the above-referenced matters be recorded, including, but not limited to, jury selection, opening statements, and closing arguments of counsel. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. The Defendant is charged with three counts of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses.

2. Because all aspects of a criminal trial encompass the constitutional rights of defendants, the interests of justice and the rights of the Defendant to due process, both substantive and procedural, would be best safeguarded by an Order directing that all parts of any hearings or trials in these matters be recorded.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Honorable Court to enter an Order pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-1241(b) directing that all proceedings held in these matters be recorded.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion for Complete Recordation of All Proceedings*** was this day served upon the prosecution by the following method:

__X__ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, addressed to the following:

_____
Special Deputy Attorney General
NC Departement of Justice – Special Prosecutions Section
P.O. Box 629
Raleigh, NC 27602

_____ by personally serving the Office of the Attorney General via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Special Deputy Attorney General; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the Attorney General maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE**
	SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS __ __ ____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	**MOTION FOR**
	)	**SEQUESTRATION OF**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**STATE'S WITNESSES**
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-1225, the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, and Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, for an Order from this Court ordering the sequestration of all witnesses, other than the Defendant, outside of the courtroom until called to testify and instructing all witnesses not to discuss their testimony with other witnesses throughout the entirety of the trial. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. The Defendant is charged in with three counts of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses.

2. Over periods of time, memories of eye-witnesses, as well as other witnesses, fade, and thereby increase the possibility that a witness, either consciously or unconsciously, may tailor testimony to fit the majority view or rely less on his or her own recollection and more on an unobserved or unremembered fact offered by another witness.

3. The Court can further ensure untainted testimony and the preservation of the Defendant's rights to Due Process and Equal Protection by sequestering witnesses outside the courtroom during the trial of these matters until their testimony is needed.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Honorable Court for an Order sequestering all witnesses, other than the Defendant, outside of the courtroom until called to testify and instructing all witnesses not to discuss their testimony with other witnesses throughout the entirety of the trial.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion for Sequestration of State's Witnesses*** was this day served upon the prosecution by the following method:

__X__ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, addressed to the following:

_____
Special Deputy Attorney General
NC Departement of Justice – Special Prosecutions Section
P.O. Box 629
Raleigh, NC 27602

_____ by personally serving the Office of the Attorney General via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Special Deputy Attorney General; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the Attorney General maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**
STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**
	)
vs.	**) MOTION FOR COURT TO NOTE**
	) RACE OF ALL POTENTIAL JURORS
JOHN DOE,	**) EXAMINED FOR SELECTION**
	)
Defendant.	**)**

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe,*** by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, ***Batson v. Kentucky***, 476 U.S. 79, 106 S.Ct. 1712, 90 L.Ed.2d 69 (1986), and ***Powers v. Ohio***, 499 U.S. 400, 111 S.Ct. 1364, 113 L.Ed.2d. 411 (1991), to adopt a procedure in the trial of these matters which ensures that the race of every potential juror be examined to perfect any future appellate record. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. The Defendant is charged with three counts of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses.

2. These matters are scheduled for trial beginning on DATE.

3. In order to have the record accurately reflect the proceedings in the trial of this matter, and in order to perfect any future appellate record in this case, it is absolutely essential that the race of every potential juror be noted for the record. A record of the race of every juror is necessary to preserve the defendant's rights under the Fifth, Sixth, Eighth and Fourteenth Amendments of the United States Constitution, Article I, §§ 19, 24 and 27 of the North Carolina Constitution, ***Batson v. Kentucky***, 476 U.S. 79, 106 S.Ct. 1712, 90 L.Ed.2d 69 (1986) and ***Powers v. Ohio***, 499 U.S. 400, 111 S.Ct. 1364, 113 L.Ed.2d. 411 (1991).

4. The North Carolina Supreme Court has held that a record must be made of the race of all potential jurors in order for appellate courts to properly review any ***Batson*** claims. *See* ***State v. Mitchell***, 321 N.C. 650 (1988) and ***State v. Brogden***, 329 N.C. 534 (1991).

5. Statements from defense counsel as to the race of the jurors is not sufficient and the North Carolina Supreme Court has expressly disapproved of the practice of having the court reporter attempt to record the race of every juror. ***Brogden***. The most reliable source concerning the race of any juror is the juror himself/herself.

6. In order to properly record the race of potential jurors, the Defendant would propose the following statement and inquiry to prospective jurors:

   Ladies and Gentlemen, as part of the Court's preliminary questions to you, in addition to asking to state your name and where you reside, the Court will ask you to provide us with the race and/or ethnic background with which you identify yourself. We do this for statistical purposes and, because the record of the jury selection proceedings is in written form only, without having you identify your race and/or ethnic background there will no record of that to which we can refer later if need be.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Honorable Court for the following relief:

1. That every potential juror be asked to identify his/her race/ethnic background. In order to provide an accurate record, this procedure must include every juror, including those excused for hardship by the court, for cause at the request of either party, by use of peremptory by either party and those jurors who actually are selected to serve;

2. The defendant requests that jurors race be asked his or her race as part the court's preliminary inquiry of the potential jurors at the beginning of jury selection; and

3. For such other and further relief to which the Defendant may be entitled and which the Court may deem just and proper.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion for Court to Note Race of All Potential Jurors Examined for Selection*** was this day served upon the prosecution by the following method:

__X__ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, addressed to the following:

_____
Special Deputy Attorney General
NC Departement of Justice – Special Prosecutions Section
P.O. Box 629
Raleigh, NC 27602

_____ by personally serving the Office of the Attorney General via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Special Deputy Attorney General; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the Attorney General maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.: _____
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone: _____
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email: _____

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	**MOTION FOR JOINDER OF**
	)	**ALL OFFENSES FOR TRIAL WITH**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**CHARGE OF 1ST DEGREE MURDER**
	)	**()**
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Assistant Capital Defender, and Barry T. Winston, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-926, the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, and Article I §§ 19 and 23 of the Constitution of the State of North Carolina, to issue an Order that all of the above-referenced charges pending against the Defendant be joined for trial. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

PROCEDURAL BACKGROUND

1. John Doe is an indigent defendant charged with first-degree murder in __ CRS _____. The Court has held a Rule 24 conference concerning the charge of first-degree murder and the at said hearing the State announced its intention to seek the death penalty against Mr. Allen.

2. John Doe is also charged with the following offenses:

   a.

   b.

   c.

   d.

   e.

   f.

   g.

h.

i.

j.

3. Both undersigned counsel are appointed to represent Mr. Doe in the charge of first-degree murder, robbery with a dangerous weapon (__ CRS ____), attempted murder (CRS), attempted robbery with a dangerous weapon (CRS), and felony possession of cocaine (CRS).

4. Undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum is appointed to represent Mr. Doe in the six charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon numbered CRS through .

5. All of the charges pending against the Defendant arise out of a series of alleged acts and occurrences which began on DATE and which, according to the State's rendition of the facts, culminated on DATE with the alleged murder of Jane Doe.

6. The charge of first degree murder () and the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon (), attempted murder (), attempted robbery with a dangerous weapon (), and felony possession of cocaine () are scheduled for trial beginning on DATE.

7. The charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon () are scheduled to be tried beginning on DATE.

8. On DATE, at a motions hearing in the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon (), the State moved the Court to join the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon ()
for trial on DATE.

9. The Defendant had previously filed a Motion for Severance of Offenses related to the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon ().

10. The Court, upon motion of the prosecution, and after a summation of the facts in the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon (), and over objection of the Defendant, joined all of the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon () for trial beginning on DATE.

11. After the ruling of the Court in joining the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon () for trial, all of those charges are scheduled to be tried on DATE, while the remaining charges of first degree murder () and the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon (), attempted murder (), attempted robbery with a dangerous weapon (), and felony possession of cocaine () are scheduled for trial beginning on DATE.

FACTUAL BACKGROUND

12. In the cases of robbery with a dangerous weapon (), which have been joined for trial, the Defendant, along with co-defendants, is accused of having committed the offenses on six separate occasions. Specifically, the State has alleged that the six offenses were committed on the following dates and against the following individuals:

a.

b.

c.

d.

e.

f.

13. In the remaining cases which have not been joined for trial the State is alleging that the Defendant, along with the same co-defendants in __ CRS ____, committed those offenses, including the alleged murder of Jane Doe, during the early morning hours of DATE.

14. At the DATE hearing concerning the State's Motion for Joinder of__ through ___, the State of indicated that they were closely related in time to the remaining charges which have not been joined for trial.

15. The State further asserted that the joined charges (through) involved the Defendant and the same co-defendants. The co-defendants in through , Marvin Doe and Craig Doe, are the same co-defendants who have been charged with first-degree murder and the related offenses alleged to have occurred on DATE,

16. Further, on DATE, the State alleged that co-defendant, Marvin Doe, would be testifying against the Defendant as to all of the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon in through , and that the same co-defendant made a statement incriminating the Defendant in all of the un-joined charges, including the charge of first-degree murder.

17. Further, on DATE, the State alleged that the Defendant confessed to some of the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon in through CRS , and that the Defendant confessed to the un-joined charges as well, including the charge of first-degree murder.

18. Finally, the State asserted that the course of conduct and the modus operandi in the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon () were the same or similar as the course of conduct and modus operandi in the un-joined charges and that the conduct which began on DATE and ended with the death of Jane Doe on DATE were part of a series of acts or transactions connected together and/or constituting parts of a single scheme or plan.

19. The Court, upon motion of the State and over objection of the Defendant, found that the facts as alleged in the charges of robbery with a dangerous weapon () indicated that there was a common conspiracy between the Defendant and the co-defendants, that the matters were close in time and related under the circumstances, that the Defendant confessed to some of the charges, that the Defendant would not be prejudiced in the trial of _____ through _____ because of the alleged confession of the Defendant and the testifying co-defendant(s).

20. The Court further found that there was a common scheme, plan, and a temporal connection between the charges in _____ through _____.

JOINDER OF ALL CHARGES IS REQUIRED

21. Pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-926, the findings of the Court in ordering the joining of offenses in _____ through _____, and because of the underlying facts concerning all of the offenses alleged against the

Defendant, all of the offenses are related in time, place, and occasion and must be joined for trial.

22. Specifically, 15A-926(c)(1) states in part as follows:

> When a defendant has been charged with two or more offenses joinable under subsection (a) his timely motion to join them for trial ***must be granted*** unless the court determines that because the prosecutor does not have sufficient evidence to warrant trying some of the offenses at that time or if, for some other reason, the ends of justice would be defeated if the motion were granted. (Emphasis added)

23. Based upon the factual summary of the State on DATE, which asserted, among other things, that all of the acts which culminated in the death of Jane Doe on DATE were part of a series of acts and transactions connected together and/or constituting a single scheme or plan, all of the charges against the Defendant, including the charges joined together () should all be joined for trial with the pending charge of first-degree murder in .

24. Based upon the allegations of the State on DATE, that the acts alleged to have been committed by the Defendant and the co-defendant occurred during the month of DATE, involved similar facts (including the robberies and attempted robberies of multiple victims during early morning hours, the use of firearms to commit such robberies, the use of disguises in the course of such robberies, the alleged confession of the Defendant most of the charges pending against him, the statements and anticipated testimony of co-defendants), and involved similar modus operandi, all of the charges pending against the defendant must be joined for trial with the pending charge of first-degree murder in DATE.

25. Based upon the findings of the Court in joining the charges in ___ through ___ for trial and based upon the fact that those same findings relate to the un-joined charges, all of the charges pending against the defendant must be joined for trial with the pending charge of first-degree murder in _____.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Court for the following relief:

1. That the Court enter an order joining all of the charges pending against the Defendant () for trial on the **D**ATE.

2. For such other and further relief to which the Defendant may be entitled and which the Court may deem just and proper.

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Assistant Capital Defender
123 W. Main St., Suite 401
Durham, NC 27701
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 560-6900
Email:

By:_____
Barry T. Winston, by Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
312 W. Franklin St.
Chapel Hill, NC 27514
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 929-4953
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing **Motion for Joinder of All Offenses for Trial with Charge of 1st Degree Murder ()** was this day served upon the District Attorney for the th Judicial District, via Hand Delivery, at the address set forth below:

_____
Office of the District Attorney for the __th Judicial
District ____ County Courthouse
_____, NC

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Assistant Capital Defender
123 W. Main St., Suite 401
Durham, NC 27701
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 560-6900
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA | **IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE**
SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION

COUNTY OF | **CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	**NOTICE OF INTENT TO**
	)	**INTRODUCE EXPERT TESTIMONY**
JANE DOE,	**)**	
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES, the Defendant, ***Jane Doe***, by and through her undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-905(c)(2), and hereby gives notice of intent to introduce expert testimony in the following fields with the listed experts:

1. Forensic Psychiatry and Psychiatry, via Dr. _____, M.D.

Copies of the curriculum vitae of the aforementioned expert have been provided to the prosecution by prior counsel. Undersigned counsel will provide a current curriculum vitae prior to the trial of these matters.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
P.O. Box 1029
Raleigh, NC 27602
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Notice of Intent to Introduce Expert Testimony*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

_____ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery;

__X__ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
P.O. Box 1029
Raleigh, NC 27602
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA		**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF		**CRS _____**
STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	)	
	)	**NOTICE OF INTENT TO USE**
vs.	)	**EVIDENCE OF PRIOR**
	)	**CONVICTIONS MORE**
JOHN DOE,	)	**THAN 10 YEARS OLD**
	)	
Defendant.	)	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court pursuant to the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, N.C.G.S. § 8C-1, Rule 609(b) of the North Carolina Rules of Evidence, and hereby gives notice to the prosecution of the Defendant's intent to utilize evidence of prior convictions of the State's cooperating witness, ***Sarah Snitch***, during the cross examination of said witness. Specifically, the Defendant intends to use evidence of the following prior convictions:

1. Breaking & Entering & Larceny, County, conviction date: DATE;

2. Armed Robbery, County, conviction date: ;

3. 2nd Degree Kidnapping, County, conviction date: ;

4. Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, offense date: , County, conviction date: ;

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Notice of Intent to Use Evidence of Prior Convictions More Than 10 Years Old*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery (***Assistant District Attorney***);

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney (); and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA		**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF		**CRS _____**
STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	**NOTICE OF INTENT TO USE**
vs.	**)**	**EVIDENCE OF PRIOR**
	)	**CONVICTIONS MORE**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**THAN 10 YEARS OLD**
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe*** by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court pursuant to the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, N.C.G.S. § 8C-1, Rule 609(b) of the North Carolina Rules of Evidence, and hereby gives notice to the prosecution of the Defendant's intent to utilize evidence of prior convictions of the State's cooperating witness, ***Lying Bastard***, during the cross examination of said witness. Specifically, the Defendant intends to use evidence of the following prior convictions:

1. Assault on Govt. Official, County, conviction date: DATE;

2. ;

3. ;

4. ;

5. ;

6. ;

7. ;

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Notice of Intent to Use Evidence of Prior Convictions More Than 10 Years Old*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery (***Assistant District Attorney*** _____);

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney (); and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF	**CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**)**	
	)	**NOTICE OF INTENT TO ADMIT**
vs.	**)**	**STATEMENT OF MEDICAL STAFF**
	)	**PURSUANT TO N.C. GEN. STAT. §**
JANE DOE,	**)**	**8C-1, RULES 803(24) & 804(b)(5)**
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***Jane Doe,*** by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, pursuant to the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article I §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, and N.C. Gen. Stat. § 8C-1, Rules 803(24) and 804(b)(5), and hereby gives notice to the State that the defense intends to introduce statements provided by the medical staff at Southeastern Regional Medical Center to Investigating Officer ____, of the _____ Police Department, which has been provided to the defense in discovery. In support of this Notice, the defense would assert as follows:

1. Jane Doe is charged with two counts of second-degree murder, one count of assault with a deadly weapon inflicting serious injury, and one count of reckless driving to endanger.

2. The trial of these matters is scheduled to commence on DATE.

3. These matters arise from a motor vehicle accident which occurred on DATE in ____, North Carolina. It is uncontroverted that Ms. Doe was the driver of the vehicle in question and that said vehicle was involved in a traffic accident whereupon two individuals were killed and a third was critically injured.

4. Upon information and belief, the State may seek to introduce evidence of the fact that Ms. Doe's blood was tested at Southeastern Regional Medical Center, after she was admitted to that facility following the aforementioned accident.

5. Upon information and belief, the toxicological testing on Ms. Doe's blood at Southeastern Regional Medical Center revealed that Ms. Doe's blood did not contain any alcohol.

6. Upon information and belief, the aforementioned testing of Ms. Doe's blood by Southeastern Regional Medical Center did reveal the presence of opiates in Ms. Doe's blood.

7. However, in his reports regarding his investigation of the motor vehicle accident, Detective ____ indicated that he inquired "the medical staff" at the "ER" regarding the toxicology screen on Ms. Doe's blood and that "**[i]t was explained to [the officer] however, that Doe was administered medication prior to her screening and this may have produced the reading for the opiates.**"

8. Further in his report, Detective ____ states that "[He] learned that through hospital staff that Doe's toxicology report of her blood revealed that she did in fact have opiates that exceeded the screening cut-off limits for this screening but as mentioned previously, she was administered medication prior to her blood being drawn for toxicology screening."

9. Upon information and belief, neither law enforcement, nor the prosecution, has been able to determine that the opiates present in Ms. Doe's blood was present for any reason other than lawfully administered pain medication, which she received during medical treatment for the motor vehicle accident in question.

10. Nowhere in the reports of Detective _____ can the defense find the identity of the "medical staff" who told Detective _____ that the opiates in Ms. Doe's blood was the result of the pain medication she was administered at Southeastern Regional Medical Center.

11. Because the aforementioned "medical staff" is unidentified, that person or persons is/are "unavailable" as that term is defined under N.C. Gen. Stat. § 8C-1, Rule 804(a)(5).

12. Because the aforementioned "medical staff" is unidentified, that person's or persons' statement to Detective _____, regarding the opiates in Ms. Doe's system, falls within the parameters of N.C. Gen. Stat. § 8C-1, Rule 804(a)(5).

13. Additionally, because the aforementioned "medical staff" is unidentified, that person's or persons' statement to Detective ____, regarding the opiates in Ms. Doe's system, falls within the parameters of N.C. Gen. Stat. § 8C-1, Rule 803(24).

14. Because the "medical staff" is unidentified, should the prosecution attempt to place in evidence the reports indicating that Ms. Doe's blood tested positive for the presence of opiates, the defense will seek to have the statements contained within Detective ____'s reports, as well as his hand written notes, admitted into evidence to rebut any claim that Ms. Doe had opiates in her system at the time of the motor vehicle accident in question in these matters.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Notice of Intent to Admit Statement of Medical Staff Pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. § 8C-1, Rules 803(24) & 804(b)(5)*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

__X__ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

_____ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery;

__X__ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney (Assistant District Attorney _____); and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	
	)	**NOTICE OF DEFENSES**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and Jonathan E. Broun, Attorney at Law, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-905(c)(1) and hereby serves notice that the Defendant may assert the following defenses in the trial of the above-referenced matters: insanity, mental infirmity, diminished capacity, automatism, voluntary intoxication. This notice is filed and served upon the District Attorney for the —th Judicial District pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-905(c)(1). The Defendant will provide the State with the required reciprocal discovery and specific information as to the nature and extent of the defenses once that documentation and evidence becomes available to the defense.

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

By:_____
Jonathan E. Broun
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Center for Death Penalty Litigation
201 W. Main Street, Suite 301
Durham, NC 27701
Telephone: Facsimile: (919) 956-9547 Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Notice of Defenses*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	**OBJECTION TO JOINDER**
	)	**& MOTION FOR**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**SEVERANCE OF DEFENDANTS**
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Assistant Capital Defender, and hereby opposes the joinder of the co-defendants in the above-referenced matters and further moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-927, the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, and Article I §§ 19 and 23 of the Constitution of the State of North Carolina, to issue an Order that the co-defendants in the above-referenced matters be severed for purposes of a fair trial upon all charges against the Defendant.

The Defendant hereby moves that the cases of the co-defendants, identified as Craig Doe and Marvin Doe, charged with the same offenses as those against the Defendant in the charge of Attempted Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon in , the charges of Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon in , and the charge of Attempted Murder in , be severed and tried separately from the Defendant. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. Severance is necessary to promote a fair determination of the defendant's guilt or innocence in each offense.

2. Craig Doe and Marvin Doe are, upon information and belief, charged with the same offenses as the Defendant arising out of the same transactions.

3. Upon information and belief, Craig Doe and Marvin Doe are charged with accountability for the same offenses as the Defendant, and that the offenses charged are part of a common scheme or plan, are part of the same act or transaction, and are so closely connected in time, place, and occasion, that it would be difficult to separate one charge from proof and of the others.

4. The undersigned counsel is informed and believes, and therefore alleges, that the State of North Carolina intends to offer into evidence out-of-court statements of both Craig Doe and Marvin Doe, which make reference to the Defendant but that are not admissible against the Defendant. Furthermore, it is impossible to delete all references to the Defendant so that the statement would not prejudice the Defendant.

5. In view of the number of offenses charged and the complexity of the evidence to be offered, the jury will not be able to distinguish between the evidence against the co-defendants and the Defendant, nor will the jury be able to apply the law intelligently to each offense as related to both co-defendants and the Defendant, if all the Defendants are tried together in front of the same jury.

6. To try the Defendant and Craig Doe and Marvin Doe jointly is a denial of the Defendant's right to Due Process under both the Constitution of the United States and the Constitution of North Carolina and, additionally, a violation of N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-927. There is a substantial likelihood that the Defendant could be convicted through association with the two co-defendants.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant prays for an order denying any motions for joinder of the defendants for trial by the State and granting the Defendant's motion for severance of defendants. It is requested that the Defendant be granted a hearing on said motion prior to the trial of these matters.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Assistant Capital Defender
123 W. Main St., Suite 401
Durham, NC 27701
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 560-6900
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing **Objection to Joinder and Motion for Severance of Defendants** was this day served upon the District Attorney for the __th Judicial District, via Hand Delivery, at the address set forth below:

Jeff Cruden-Assistant District Attorney
Office of the District Attorney for the __th Judicial District
____ County Courthouse
_____, NC

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Assistant Capital Defender
123 W. Main St., Suite 401
Durham, NC 27701
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 560-6900
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF ___	**CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	**OBJECTION TO JOINDER**
	)	**& MOTION FOR**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**SEVERANCE OF OFFENSES**
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby opposes joinder of the offenses in the above-referenced matters and further moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-927, the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, and Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the Constitution of the State of North Carolina, to issue an Order that the offenses in the above-referenced matters be severed for purposes of a fair trial upon all charges against the Defendant. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. The Defendant is charged in the bills of indictment with one count each of Possession of a Firearm by a Felon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury, and Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon..

2. The Defendant is accused of having all of the offenses on DATE and, upon information and belief, the charges are alleged to arise out of the same act or transaction.

3. Pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-927(b)(1), if, before trial, it is found necessary to promote a fair determination of the defendant's guilt or innocence of each offense, the court must grant a severance of offenses.

4. In these matters, severance of the offenses is "necessary to promote a fair determination of the defendant's guilt or innocence of each offense." See N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-827(b)(1).

5. If the offenses with which the Defendant is charged were tried jointly, the jury impaneled to hear the case would necessarily hear that the Defendant is charged with "Possession of a Firearm by a Convicted Felon." This would mean that in a trial involving the charges of Robbery with a

Dangerous Weapon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, and Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury, the jury would hear, via the "possession of a firearm" charge, that the Defendant has a criminal history.

6. Were the charges to be tried separately, the Defendant's criminal history would not be admissible at the trial of the Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, and Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury charges, unless and until the Defendant took the stand and subjected himself to cross-examination.

7. If the charges are tried jointly, the jury deciding all charges would, upon being advised that the Defendant is charged with Possession of a Firearm by a Felon, would then be apprised of the Defendant's criminal history and would, therefore, be more likely to convict the Defendant of all charges, based upon being informed of the Defendant's criminal history. For this reason, subjecting the Defendant to a joint trial of all offenses would prejudice the Defendant in defending against the charges of Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, and Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury.

8. A combined trial of all offenses would, in relation to the charges of Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, and Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury, result in otherwise inadmissible evidence (the Defendant's prior criminal record) being received into evidence.

9. In order to ensure a fair trial, free from the prejudice caused by the admission of potentially inadmissible evidence, the charges of Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, and Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury, should be severed from the charge of Possession of a Firearm by a Convicted Felon and separate trials should be conducted on said charges.

10. In the alternative, and in the interest of judicial economy, the Defendant would assert and request that, in lieu of two separate trials on the charges, the Court should, instead, bifurcate the trials of Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, and Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury, from the trial of Possession of a Firearm by a Felon, such that the Possession of a Firearm by Felon charge be tried second, assuming the Defendant is convicted of the other charges.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Honorable Court for the following relief:

1. That the charges of Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, and Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury in and Possession of a Firearm by a Convicted Felon in be severed and tried separately;

2. In the alternative, and in the interest of judicial economy, the Defendant would assert and request that, in lieu of two separate trials on the charges, the Court should, instead, bifurcate the trials of Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, and Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury, from the trial of Possession of a Firearm by a Felon, such that the Possession of a Firearm by Felon charge be tried second, assuming the Defendant is convicted of the other charges; and

3. For such other and further relief to which the Defendant may be entitled and which the Court may deem just and proper.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Objection to Joinder and Motion for Severance of Offenses*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery (***Assistant District Attorney***);

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF	**__ CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	)	
	)	
vs.	)	**MOTION FOR SEVERANCE OF OFFENSES**
	)	
JOHN DOE,	)	
	)	
Defendant.	)	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Assistant Capital Defender, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-927, the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, and Article I §§ 19 and 23 of the Constitution of the State of North Carolina, to issue an Order that the offenses against the Defendant be severed for purposes of a fair trial upon all charges.

The Defendant hereby moves that the charge of Attempted Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon in , the charges of Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon in and , the charge of Possession of Cocaine in , and the charge of Attempted Murder in , all be tried separately from one another. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. Severance is necessary to promote a fair determination of the defendant's guilt or innocence in each offense.

2. The offenses are not properly joinable under N.C. Gen. Stat. § 15A-926 in that the offenses are not based upon the same act or transaction or on a series of acts or transactions connected together or constituting parts of a single scheme or plan.

3. In view of the number of offenses charged and the complexity of the evidence to be offered, the jury will not be able to distinguish the evidence and apply the law intelligently to each offense, if these indictments are tried together in front of the same jury.

4. Based upon the fact that the charges of Attempted Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon, Attempted Murder, and Possession of Cocaine, are alleged to have occurred on a different date and time from the other aforementioned charges and are not

part of the same acts or transactions, trying the Defendant for all of the charges at the same time would be unduly prejudicial to the Defendant, would prejudice the jury against the Defendant, and would result in a breach of the Defendant's right to a fair trial.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant prays for an order severing the offenses. It is requested that the Defendant be granted a hearing on said motion prior to the trial of these matters.

This DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Assistant Capital Defender
123 W. Main St., Suite 401
Durham, NC 27701
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 560-6900
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing **Motion for Severance of Offenses** was this day served upon the District Attorney for the __th Judicial District, via Hand Delivery, at the address set forth below:

_____-Assistant District Attorney
Office of the District Attorney for the __th Judicial
District _____ County Courthouse
_____, NC

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Assistant Capital Defender
123 W. Main St., Suite 401
Durham, NC 27701
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 560-6900
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF	**CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	**MOTION FOR PRODUCTION**
vs.	**)**	**OF TRANSCRIPTS OF**
	)	**ALL WITNESS TESTIMONY**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**FROM FIRST TRIAL OF**
	)	**STATE vs. JOHN DOE**
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution and Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, and for an Order from this Court ordering the production of transcripts of any and all witness testimony from the first trial of this matter. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. John Doe is charged with one count of first-degree murder and robbery with a dangerous weapon. As such, he faces the possibility of life in prison without parole.

2. The trial of this matter commenced before a jury in _____ County Superior Court beginning on DATE. The presentation of the prosecution's case began on DATE.

3. On DATE, due to the introduction of certain evidence, upon the motion of the defendant, a mistrial was declared by the presiding judge, The Honorable _____.

4. The prosecution has elected to re-try Mr. Doe and, upon information and belief, has requested a special session of Criminal Superior Court for _____ County to begin on DATE.

5. Both the prosecution and the defense have agreed upon the date of DATE as a date upon which the re-trial of these matters will commence.

6. During the trial of these matters, and prior to the ordering of a mistrial, the prosecution presented several prosecution witnesses and elicited testimony from said witnesses.

7. In order for Mr. Doe's counsel to effectively represent Mr. Doe at the re-trial of these matters, counsel requires working access to an accurate and written copy of the testimony of all prosecution witnesses who testified in the first trial.

8. In order for Mr. Doe to be afforded his rights to confrontation, cross-examination, and effective assistance of counsel, counsel requires working access to an accurate and written copy of the testimony of all prosecution witnesses who testified in the first trial.

9. On DATE, the Court found Mr. Doe to be indigent for the purposes of obtaining second counsel[1] and for the purpose of obtaining expert assistance and other tools for an adequate defense.

10. In *Griffin v. Illinois*,[2] the U.S. Supreme Court held that the State is constitutionally required to provide indigent prisoners with the tools for an adequate defense or appeal when those tools are available to other prisoners who can pay for the costs.

11. In *State v. Britt*,[3] the U.S. Supreme Court held that:

> **[w]hile the outer limits of [the Griffin v. Illinois] principle are not clear, there can be no doubt that the State must provide an indigent defendant with a transcript of prior proceedings when that transcript is needed for an effective defense or appeal**.

12. Written transcripts of the witnesses' testimony during the first trial will be invaluable to undersigned counsel's preparation for the re-trial of these matters, as well as cross-examination of said witnesses should said witnesses be called to testify at the second trial of these matters.

13. Mr. Doe does not have access to any other means, formal or informal, of obtaining an accurate record of the testimony offered during the first trial of these matters.

14. Accordingly, Mr. Doe is entitled to receive written transcripts of the testimony of all witnesses from the first trial of this matter.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant respectfully prays unto this Honorable Court for the following relief:

---

[1] At the time the order determining Mr. Baker to be indigent was entered, the State had announced its intention to seek the death penalty. The State declared the case non-capital on May, 2012.
[2] 351 U.S. 958, 76 S.Ct. 585 (1956)
[3] 92 S.Ct. 431. 404 U.S. 226, 30 L.Ed.2d 400 (1971)

1. That the Court enter an Order requiring the production of transcripts of all witness testimony from the first trial of these matters, which occurred during the DATE term of Criminal Superior Court for the County of ;

2. That, due to the Defendant's status as an indigent, the State of North Carolina (North Carolina Administrative Office of the Courts) bear the costs of the production of said transcripts; and

3. For such other and further relief to which the Defendant may be entitled and which the Court may deem just and proper.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for John Doe
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion for Production of Transcripts of All Witness Testimony From First Trial of Phillip Scott Baker*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

__X__ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney as follows:

Mr. _____
Assistant District Attorney – 22nd Prosecutorial District
P.O. Box 1854
, NC

_____ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for John Doe
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF	**CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	**MOTION TO**
	)	**EXCLUDE INFLAMMATORY**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**PHOTOGRAPHS**
	)	
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through the undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court, pursuant to N.C.Gen.Stat. § 15A-1225, the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, N.C.Gen.Stat. § 8C-1, Rules 401, 402 & 403, and ***State v. Hennis***, 323 N.C. 279, 372 S.E.2d. 523 (1988), to conduct a pre-trial hearing to review any photographs, slides, videos or models that the State intends to offer for evidentiary or illustrative purposes; and

THE DEFENDANT further moves this Honorable Court to prohibit the State from the use of more than one photograph of the alleged victim in the charge of first-degree murder. In support of the foregoing Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. John Doe is charged with first-degree murder, and robbery with a dangerous weapon.

2. The trial of these matters is scheduled to commence on DATE,
.

3. The photographs of the alleged victim in this case, both at the scene of the crime and/or autopsy photographs, beyond one selected by the state, would be void of probative value and redundant to the illustrations provided by the selected photograph. Such photographs would be prejudicial to the defendant by depicting scenes, which are inflammatory.

WHEREFORE, the Defendant, based upon the foregoing, respectfully prays that conduct a pre-trial hearing to review any photographs, slides, videos or models that the State intends to offer for evidentiary or illustrative purposes and that the Court prohibit the State from the use of more than one photograph of the alleged victim in the charge of first-degree murder.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion To Exclude Inflammatory Photographs*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF _____	**__ CRS _____**

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	**MOTION IN LIMINE TO RESTRICT**
vs.	**)**	**INTRODUCTION OF EVIDENCE**
	)	**OF DEFENDANT'S INVOCATION**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**OF 5TH AND 6TH**
	)	**AMENDMENT RIGHTS**
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court pursuant the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, and N.C.Gen.Stat. § 8C-1, Rule 403 and requests that this Honorable Court issue an Order restricting the prosecution from admitting or introducing any evidence of the defendant's invocation of his 5th and 6th Amendment rights at the time of his arrest for the pending charges.

1. The Defendant is charged in the bills of indictment with one count each of 2nd Degree Rape and 2nd Degree Sexual Offense.

2. The alleged acts with which the Defendant is charged are alleged to have occurred on or about DATE.

3. Upon information and belief, the Defendant was arrested in DATE and, upon information and belief, at the time of his arrest, he invoked his right to remain silent and his right to counsel.

4. Additionally, prior to being arrested, when the Defendant was notified that an investigation against him was pending, he retained the services of an attorney.

5. Allowing the prosecution to admit or elicit any evidence or testimony regarding the Defendant's invocation of his Fifth and Sixth Amendment rights would violate the Defendant's constitutional rights and such evidence is not probative of any material fact and would severely prejudice the Defendant in the defense of the pending charges.

WHEREFORE, the defendant respectfully moves that the Court bar the prosecution from admitting or introducing any evidence of the Defendant's invocation of

his 5th and 6th Amendment rights.

This the DATE.

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion in Limine to Restrict Introduction of Evidence of Defendant's Invocation of 5th and 6th Amendment Rights*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery (***Assistant District Attorney***);

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney (); and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA		**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF		**CRS _____**
STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	**)**	
	)	
vs.	**)**	**MOTION IN LIMINE TO**
	)	**RESTRICT EVIDENCE**
JOHN DOE,	**)**	**OF PRIOR CRIMES**
	)	**& BAD ACTS**
Defendant.	**)**	

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court pursuant to N.C.G.S. § 15A-952, the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, and N.C.Gen.Stat. § 8C-1, Rules 403 and 404(a) and requests that this Honorable Court issue an Order restricting the prosecution from admitting or introducing any evidence of the defendant's prior convictions unless and until the defendant chooses to testify in his own defense and restricting the prosecution from introducing any evidence of prior bad acts. In support of this Motion, the Defendant would show unto the Court as follows:

1. The Defendant is charged in the bills of indictment with one count each of Possession of a Firearm by a Felon, Assault with a Deadly Weapon with Intent to Kill Inflicting Serious Injury, Assault Inflicting Serious Bodily Injury, and Robbery with a Dangerous Weapon.

2. Upon information and belief, the Defendant may have prior convictions for criminal offenses.

3. Upon information and belief, the prosecution will attempt to rely on the Defendant's prior convictions and/or alleged prior bad acts to show proof of motive, opportunity, intent, preparation, plan, knowledge, identity, absence of mistake, absence of entrapment, absence of accident, or other purpose consistent with statutory and case law under the above-cited rules.

4. The probative value of said evidence, as to any of the present charges is minimal and would be outweighed by the undue prejudice to the Defendant should such evidence be introduced at trial.

5. In addition, there is little similarity and/or temporal proximity of the prior act evidence to the crimes with which the Defendant is currently charged.

6. Specifically, the prosecution should be barred from introducing any evidence of prior convictions, unless and until the Defendant takes the stand as a witness.

WHEREFORE, the defendant respectfully moves that the court restrict the prosecution from admitting or introducing any evidence of the defendant's prior convictions, as named above, or any detail of said convictions, unless the defendant chooses to testify in his own defense and from introducing any evidence of alleged prior bad acts on the part of the Defendant.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion in Limine to Restrict Evidence of Prior Crimes and Bad Acts*** was this day served upon the District Attorney by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, properly addressed to Office of the District Attorney;

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the District Attorney via hand delivery (***Assistant District Attorney*** _____);

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Office of the District Attorney (); and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the District Attorney maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

By:_____

Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney at Law
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Cheshire, Parker, Schneider, & Bryan, PLLC
133 Fayetteville St., Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 832-0739
Email:

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA	**IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION**
COUNTY OF	**CRS _____**
STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA,	)
	) **MOTION IN LIMINE TO RESTRICT**
vs.	) **INTRODUCTION OF EVIDENCE**
	) **OF DEFENDANT'S INTERACTIONS/**
JOHN DOE,	) **NEGOTIATIONS/PENALTIES &**
	) **SANCTIONS RELATED TO THE**
Defendant.	) **INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE**

NOW COMES the Defendant, ***John Doe***, by and through his undersigned counsel, Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum, Attorney at Law, and hereby moves this Honorable Court pursuant the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Eighth, and Fourteenth Amendments to the United States Constitution, Article 1 §§ 19 and 23 of the North Carolina Constitution, and N.C.Gen.Stat. § 8C-1, Rules 403 and 404(a) and requests that this Honorable Court issue an Order restricting the prosecution from admitting or introducing any evidence of the defendant's prior charge of assault.

1. John Doe is charged with three counts of Obtaining Property by False Pretenses. The North Carolina Department of Justice and the North Carolina Department of Revenue alleged that the Defendant committed the crimes by knowingly filing fraudulent North Carolina Individual Income Tax Returns with the North Carolina Department of Revenue for the years _____.

2. The trial of these matters is scheduled to commence on DATE.

3. The Defendant maintains that he did not knowingly file fraudulent income tax returns and that he did not intend to cheat and defraud the NC Department of Revenue or any other tax collection agency.

4. Upon information and belief, the Defendant's problems with his individual income tax returns for _____, triggered a review by the Internal Revenue Service (hereinafter referred to as the IRS).

5. Upon information and belief, although the IRS has not sought criminal charges against the Defendant, after the Defendant hired a Certified Public Accountant to amend his tax returns, and after said tax returns were amended in _____, the IRS levied fines, penalties, and liens against the Defendant.

6. The indictments against the Defendant only allege crimes against the

North Carolina Department of Revenue. No allegations are made regarding any crimes or wrongdoing against the IRS or the federal government.

7. As such, any mention to the jury of the Defendant's interaction and involvement with the IRS regarding tax years _____, and any problems arising therefrom will be more prejudicial than probative, will severely prejudice the Defendant in the trial of these matters, and will have no bearing or relevance on any legal or factual issue at the trial of the matters before this Court.

WHEREFORE, the defendant respectfully moves that the Court bar the prosecution from admitting or introducing any evidence of the Defendant's interaction/negotiations/penalties and/or sanctions with or from the Internal Revenue Service.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email:

Certificate of Service

This shall certify that a copy of the foregoing ***Motion in Limine to Restrict Introduction of Evidence of Defendant's Interactions/Negotiations/Penalties & Sanctions Related to the Internal Revenue Service*** was this day served upon the prosecution by the following method:

_____ depositing a copy hereof in a postpaid wrapper in a post office or official depository under the exclusive care, custody, and control of the United States Postal Service, addressed to the following:

__X__ by personally serving the Office of the Attorney General (***Special Deputy Attorney General*** _____) via hand delivery;

_____ by transmitting a copy via facsimile transmittal to the Special Deputy Attorney General; and/or

_____ by depositing a copy in the box for the Office of the Attorney General maintained by the Clerk of Superior Court.

This the DATE.

TIN FULTON WALKER & OWEN, PLLC

By:_____
Maitri "Mike" Klinkosum
Attorney for the Defendant
State Bar No.:
Tin Fulton Walker & Owen, P.L.L.C.
127 W. Hargett St., Suite 705
Raleigh, NC 27601
Telephone:
Facsimile: (919) 720-4640
Email:

Voir Dire

How to Ask Life Experience Questions on Voir Dire

A. Start with an **IMPERATIVE COMMAND**:

> **"Tell us about," "Share with us," "Describe for us"**

The reason we start the question with an imperative command is to make sure that the juror feels it is proper and necessary to give a narrative answer, not just a "yes" or "no."

B. Use a **SUPERLATIVE** to describe the experience you want them to talk about:

> **"The best," "The worst," "The most serious"**

The reason we ask the question in terms of a superlative is to make sure we do not get a trivial experience from the juror.

C. Ask for a **PERSONAL EXPERIENCE**

> **"That you saw," "That happened to you," "That you heard of," "That you know of"**

This is the crucial part of the question where you ask the juror to relate a personal experience. Be sure to keep the question open-ended, not leading.

D. Or ask for an **EXPERIENCE OF A FAMILY MEMBER OR SOMEONE CLOSE** to the juror

> **"That you or someone close to you saw," "That happened to you or someone you know"**

This gives the jurors the chance to relate an experience that had an effect on their perceptions but may not have directly happened to them. It also lets the jurors avoid embarrassment by attributing one of their experiences to someone else.

E. **PUTTING THE QUESTION TOGETHER**

> See sample questions, below.

Some Sample Life Experience Voir Dire Questions

A. Race

1. Tell us about the most serious incident you ever saw where someone was treated badly because of his or her race (or gender, religion, etc.).

2. Tell us about the worst experience you or someone close to you ever had because someone stereotyped you or someone close to you because of your race (or gender, religion, etc.).

3. Tell us about the most significant interaction you have ever had with a person of a different race.

4. Tell us about the most difficult situation where you, or someone you know, stereotyped someone, or jumped to a conclusion about them because of his or her race (or gender, religion, etc.) and turned out to be wrong.

B. Alcohol/Alcoholism

1. Tell us about a person you know who is a wonderful guy when sober, but changes into a different person when drunk.

2. Share with us a situation where you or a person you know of was seriously affected because someone in the family was an alcoholic.

C. Self-Defense

1. Tell me about the most serious situation you have ever seen where someone had no choice but to use violence to defend himself or herself (or someone else).

2. Tell us about the most frightening experience you or someone close to you had when threatened by another person.

3. Tell us about the craziest thing you or someone close to you ever did out of fear.

4. Tell us about the bravest thing you ever saw someone do out of fear.

5. Tell us about the bravest thing you ever saw someone do to protect another person.

D. Jumping to Conclusions

1. Tell us about the most serious mistake you or someone you know has ever made because you jumped to a snap conclusion.

E. False Suspicion or Accusation

1. Tell us about the most serious time when you or someone close to you was accused of doing something bad that you had not done.

2. Tell us about the most difficult situation you were ever in, where it was your word against someone else's, and even though you were telling the truth, you were afraid that no one would believe you.

3. Tell us about the most serious incident where you or someone close to you mistakenly suspected someone else of wrongdoing.

F. Police Officers Lying/Being Abusive

1. Tell us about the worst encounter you or anyone close to you has ever had with a law enforcement officer.

2. Tell us about the most serious experience you or a family member or friend had with a public official who was abusing his authority.

3. Tell us about the most serious incident you know of where someone told a lie, not for personal gain, but because he or she thought it would ultimately bring about a fair result.

G. Lying

1. Tell us about the worst problem you ever had with someone who was a liar.

2. Tell us about the most serious time that you or someone you know told a lie to get out of trouble.

3. Tell us about the most serious time that you or someone you know told a lie out of fear.

4. Tell us about the most serious time that you or someone you know told a lie to protect someone else.

5. Tell us about the most serious time that you or someone you know told a lie out of greed.

6. Tell us about the most difficult situation you were ever in where you had to decide which of two people were telling the truth.

7. Tell us about the most serious incident where you really believed someone was telling the truth, and it turned out he or she was lying.

8. Tell us about the most serious incident where you really believed someone was lying, and it turned out he or she was telling the truth.

H. Prior Convictions/Reputation

1. Tell us about the most inspiring person you have known who had a bad history or reputation and really turned himself around.

2. Tell us about the most serious mistake you or someone close to you every made by judging someone by his or her reputation, when that reputation turned out to be wrong.

I. Persuasion/Gullibility/Human Nature

1. Tell us about the most important time when you were persuaded to believe that you were responsible for something you really weren't responsible for.

2. Tell us about the most important time when you or someone close to you was persuaded to believe something about a person that wasn't true.

3. Tell us about the most important time when you or someone close to you was persuaded to believe something about yourself that wasn't true.

J. Desperation

1. Tell us about the most dangerous thing you or someone you know did out of hopelessness or desperation.

2. Tell us about the most out-of-character thing you or someone you know ever did out of hopelessness or desperation.

3. Tell us about the worst thing you or someone you know did out of hopelessness or desperation.

How to Lock in a Challenge for Cause

Step #1. Mirror the juror's answer: "So you believe that . . . ."

a. Use the juror's exact language

b. Don't paraphrase

c. Don't argue

Step #2. Then ask an open-ended question inviting the juror to explain (no leading questions at this point):

> "Tell me more about that"
>
> "What experiences have you had that make you believe that?"
>
> "Can you explain that a little more?"

Step #3. Normalize the impairment

a. Get other jurors to acknowledge the same idea, impairment, bias, etc.

> "Ms. Smith feels that the police would not arrest a person if he were not guilty. Do you feel that way as well, Mr. Barnes?"

b. Don't be judgmental or condemn it.

> "I see. Thank you for sharing that, Ms. Smith."

Step #4. Now switch to leading questions to lock in the challenge for cause:

a. Reaffirm where the juror is:

> "So you would need the defendant to testify that he acted in self-defense before you could decide that this shooting was in self-defense"

b. If the juror tries to weasel out of his impairment, or tries to qualify his bias, you must strip away the qualifications and force him back into admitting his preconceived notion as it applies to this case:

> Q: "So you would need the defendant to testify that he acted in self-defense before you could

decide that this shooting was in self-defense."

A: "Well, if the victim said it might be self-defense, or if there was some scientific evidence that showed it was self-defense, I wouldn't need your client to testify."

Q: "How about where there was no scientific evidence at all, and where the supposed victim absolutely insisted that it was not self-defense. Is that the situation where you would need the defendant to testify before finding self-defense?"

c. Reaffirm where the juror is not (i.e., what the law requires).

"And it would be very difficult, if not impossible, for you to say this was self-defense unless the defendant testified that he acted in self-defense."

d. Get the juror to agree that there is a big difference between these two positions.

"And you would agree that there is a big difference between a case where someone testified that he acted in self-defense and one where the defendant didn't testify at all."

e. Immunize the juror from rehabilitation

"It sounds to me like you are the kind of person who thinks before they form an opinion, and then won't change that opinion just because someone might want you to agree with them. Is that correct?"

"You wouldn't change your opinion just to save a little time and move this process along?"

"You wouldn't let anyone intimidate you into changing your opinion just to save a little time and move the process along?"

"Are you comfortable swearing an oath to follow a rule 100% even though it's the opposite of the way you see the world?"

"Did you know that the law is always satisfied when a juror gives an honest opinion, even if that opinion might be different from that of the lawyers or even the judge? All the law asks is that you give your honest opinion and feelings."

A Rating System for Non-Capital Jurors

1. LEGALLY EXCLUDABLE AS BIASED FOR THE DEFENSE. This juror openly expresses the view that he will or cannot vote for conviction.

2. This juror overtly expresses views favorable to accused people in general ("I see the police shooting/framing too many people in my community"), or favorable to what your client is accused of doing ("I don't think anyone should go to jail for marijuana,"), but also says she will follow the judge's instructions and convict if the evidence warrants.

3. This juror comes across as truly open-minded. He is willing to convict, but is aware of and concerned with the effect of a conviction on the client's life. He may be an intelligent abstract thinker, or a less analytical but compassionate, person. He will be tolerant of and listen to the views of those he disagrees with.

4. Moderately pro-prosecution. This juror believes that crime is a serious problem and generally thinks the police do a good job. She does not, however, have any particular axe to grind concerning your client or the kind of crime your client is accused of committing. She wants to be sure of guilt before convicting and can recount experiences/stories of someone being falsely accused about a serious matter.

5. Pro-prosecution. This juror not only believes that crime is a serious problem, but has a personal experience, connection, or belief that gives him an axe to grind concerning your client or the kind of crime your client is accused of committing. Often, she will have had very little personal contact with members of your client's racial or ethnic group and, if she has had contact, she recalls it in the context of a negative experience. This juror is often afraid: afraid of crime, afraid of people of different races and backgrounds, afraid of poor people. It is important to get these jurors talking about their experiences. They will often say something that establishes a challenge for cause.

6. Very pro-prosecution. This juror is a version of #5 on steroids. She not only believes crime is a very serious problem, but talks aggressively about the need to do something about it. She speaks in cop-talk (as derived from television) and speaks in general terms about the importance of holding people responsible for their actions. These jurors may also associate themselves (at least figuratively, sometimes literally) with law-enforcement issues, institution, and people. They may get their news and information from right-wing talk radio and may blame specific classes of people (liberals, minorities) for problems of crime and lawlessness.

LEGALLY EXCLUDABLE AS BIASED FOR THE STATE. This juror either openly expresses the view that he will vote for conviction or will not follow the judge's instructions; or has some factual characteristic that makes him automatically disqualified (involved with the prosecution or police investigation of this case, etc.).

Jury Selection (or Jury De-selection) (6-29-11)

Michael G. Howell
Capital Defender's Office
123 West Main Street, Ste. 601, Durham, NC 27701
(919) 354-7220

Purpose of Jury De-selection: **IDENTIFY the worst jurors and REMOVE them**.

Means for removal

1) Challenge for Cause § 15A-1212…The 3 most common grounds are:

(6) The juror has ***formed or expressed an opinion as to the guilt or innocence*** of the defendant. (You may ***NOT ask what the opinion is***.)

8) As a matter of conscience, ***regardless of the facts and circumstances, the juror would be unable to render a verdict with respect to the charge in accordance with the law*** of North Carolina.

(9) **For any other cause**, the juror is ***unable to render a fair and impartial verdict***.

2) Peremptory Challenges § 15A-1217

Each defendant is allowed ***six (6) challenges*** (in non-capital cases).

Each party is entitled to ***one (1) peremptory challenge for each alternate juror*** in addition to any unused challenges.

Law of Jury Selection

Statutes (read N.C.G.S. 15A-1211 to 1217)
Case law (See outline, Freedman and Howell, *Jury Selection Questions*, 25 pp.)
Jury instructions (applicable to your case)
Recordation (N.C.G.S. 15A-1241)

Two Main Methods of Jury Selection

1) Traditional Approach or "Lecturer" Method

Lecture technique (almost entirely) with leading or closed-ended questions
Purposes…Indoctrinate jury about law and facts of your case, and establish lawyer's authority or credibility with jury
Commonly used by prosecutors (and some civil defense lawyers)
In the "sermon" or lecture, the lawyer does over 95% of the talking
Example…*"Can everyone set aside what if any personal feelings you have about drugs and follow the law and be a fair and impartial juror?"*
Problem…Learn very little (if anything) about jurors

2) The "Listener" Method of Jury Selection

Purpose…Learn about the jurors' experiences and beliefs (instead of trying to change their beliefs)

The premise…Personal experiences shape jurors' views and beliefs, and can help predict how jurors will view facts, law, and each other.

Open-ended questions will get and keep jurors talking and reveal information about
Jurors' life experiences,
Attitudes, opinions, and views, and
Interpersonal relations with each other and their communication styles

Information will allow attorney to achieve GOAL of jury selection…
Identify the worst jurors for your case, and
Remove them (for cause or by peremptory strike)

Basically, a conversation with lawyer doing 10% of talking (the "90/10 rule")

Quote from life-long Anonymous public defender…*"I used to think that jury selection was my chance to educate the jurors about the law or the facts of my case. Now, I realize that jury selection is about the jurors educating me about themselves."*

"Default positions"
Lecturer… "Can you follow the law and be fair and impartial?"
Listener…"Please tell me more about that…"

Command Superlative Analogue Technique (New Mexico Public Defenders)

Effective technique within Listener Method
Ask about significant or memorable life experiences
It will trigger a conversation about jurors' life experiences and views

Three Elements of Command Superlative Analogue Technique
1) Ask about a personal experience relating to the issue, or an experience of a family member or someone close to the juror [*analogue*]
2) Add superlative adjective (best, worst, etc.) to help them recall [*superlative*]
3) Put question in command form (i.e., "Tell us about…) [*command*]

Example…*"Tell me about your closest relationship with a person who has been affected by illegal drugs."*

Caution…Time consuming…Cannot use it for everything…Save it for the key issues

(*For sample questions, see Mickenberg, *Voir Dire and Jury Selection*, pp. 11-13; Trial School Workshop Aids, pp. 5-7).

Listener Method in Practice

Preparation

Know the case and law…Develop theory and theme

Pick the pertinent issues or areas (in that case) that you want jurors to talk about

Cannot do the same voir dire in every case…It varies with the theory of each case

Outline your questions (or offensive plays) for each area
-Superlative memory technique and follow-up (for 3-4 key topics)

-Open-ended questions for each area or topic
-Introductions (*see below)
-Standard group questions (that may lead to open-ended, individual follow-up)
-Key legal concepts (for the most important issues)

*__Introductions__…to jury selection overall…and to each issue or topic
It makes the issue relevant
It puts jurors at ease and increases their chances of talking to you
Introductions need to be concise, straightforward, and honest
Example…*"Joe is charged in this case with selling cocaine. For decades, illegal drugs have been a problem for our society. Because of that, many of us have strong feelings about people who use and sell illegal drugs. I want to talk to you all about that."*
For motor-mouths…if you have to talk, do it here…At least it serves a purpose.

Jury selection "playbook"
Questions
Statutes and pertinent jury instructions
Case law outline and copies of key cases
Blank seating chart

<u>Three (3) Rules for the Courtroom</u>

1) Always use **PLAIN LANGUAGE**
Never talk like a lawyer…Be your pre-lawyer self
Talking to communicate with average folks…not to impress with vocabulary

2) **Get the jurors talking**…and keep them talking
Superlative memory questions (for the key issues)
Open-ended questions (who, what, how, why, where, when)
Give up control…let jurors go wherever they want
Follow "the 90/10 rule"…a conversation with lawyer doing 10% of talking
Be empathetic and respectful…encourage them to tell you more
Do NOT argue with, bully, or cross-examine a juror

The "superlative memory technique" example…*"Tell me about your closest relationship with a person who has been affected by illegal drugs."*
Open-ended examples…*"What are your views about illegal drugs? Why do you feel that way? What are your experiences with folks who use or sell drugs? How have you or anyone close to you been affected by people who use or sell drugs?"*

3) **Catch every response**…Both verbal and non-verbal
Must LISTEN to every word…and WATCH every gesture or expression
Essential to catch every response to follow-up and keep them talking

Do NOT ignore a juror or cut off an answer
Use reflective questions in follow-up (*Some people believe "x" and others believe "y"…What do you think?*)

Decision-Making Time

Assess the answers and the jurors…Decide what to do..?
NEVER make decision based on stereotypes or demographics
ALWAYS judge a juror based on individual responses

Challenge for cause…The decision whether to challenge is easy
Do you immediately challenge or search for other areas of bias (?)
The hard part is executing a challenge for cause
See handouts, *Jury Selection: Challenges for Cause* (7-11-10) and Mickenberg, *Voir Dire and Jury Selection*, pp. 13-15)

Peremptory challenges...rank the severity of bad jurors with 6 strikes in mind
Severity issue…"Wymore Method" for capital cases uses a rating system
Need to use your limited number of strikes wisely

JURY SELECTION QUESTIONS

Michael G. Howell, Stephen C. Freedman, and Lisa Miles
Capital Defender's Office
123 West Main Street, Ste. 601, Durham, NC 27701
(919) 354-7220
(Feb. 14, 2012)

I. GENERAL PURPOSE OF VOIR DIRE

"Voir dire examination serves the **dual purpose** of enabling the court to **select an impartial jury and assisting counsel in exercising peremptory challenges**." MuMin v Virginia, 500 U.S. 415, 431 (1991). The N.C. Supreme Court explained that a **similar "dual purpose"** was to ascertain whether **grounds exist for cause challenges** and to enable the lawyers to **intelligently exercise their peremptory challenges**. State v. Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 SE2d 191, 202 (1995).

"A defendant is not entitled to any particular juror. His right to challenge is not a right to select but to reject a juror." State v. Harris, 338 N.C. 211, 227 (1994).

The purpose of voir dire and the exercise of challenges "is to eliminate extremes of partiality and to assure both…[parties]…that the persons chosen to decide the guilt or innocence of the accused will reach that decision solely upon the evidence produced at trial." State v. Conner, 335 N.C. 618, 440 S.E.2d 826, 832 (1994).

Jurors, like all of us, have natural inclinations and favorites, and they sometimes, at least on a subconscious level, give the benefit of the doubt to their favorites. So jury selection, in a real sense, is an opportunity for counsel to see if there is anything in a juror's yesterday or today that would make it difficult for that juror to view the facts, not in an abstract sense, but in a particular case, dispassionately. State v Hedgepath, 66 N.C. App. 390 (1984).

"Where an adversary wishes to exclude a juror because of bias, …it is the adversary seeking exclusion who must demonstrate, ***through questioning***, that the potential juror lacks impartiality." Wainwright v. Witt, 469 U.S. at 423 (1985).

II. PROCEDURAL RULES OF VOIR DIRE

Overall: The trial court has the duty to control and supervise the examination of prospective jurors. Regulation of the extent and manner of questioning during voir dire rests largely in the trial court's discretion. Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 S.E.2d 191, 202 (1995).

Group v. Individual Questions: "The prosecutor and the…defendant…may **personally question prospective jurors individually** concerning their competency to serve as jurors…." NCGS 15A-1214(c).

The trial judge has the discretion to limit individual questioning and require that certain general questions be submitted to the panel as a whole in an effort to expedite jury selection. State v. Phillips, 300 N.C. 678, 268 S.E.2d 452 (1980).

Same or Similar Questions: The defendant may not be prohibited from asking a question merely because the court [or prosecutor] has previously asked the same or similar question. N.C.G.S. 15A-1214(c); State v. Conner, 335 N.C. 618, 440 S.E.2d 826, 832 (1994).

Leading Questions: Leading questions are permitted during jury voir dire [at least by the prosecutor]. State v. Fletcher, 354 N.C. 455, 468, 555 S.E.2d 534, 542 (2001).

Re-Opening Voir Dire: N.C.G.S. 15A-1214(g) permits the trial judge to reopen the examination of a prospective juror if, at any time before the jury has been impaneled, it is discovered that the juror has made an incorrect statement or that some other good reason exists. Whether to reopen the examination of a passed juror is within the judge's discretion. Once the trial court reopens the examination of a juror, each party has the absolute right to use any remaining peremptory challenges to excuse such a juror. State v. Womble, 343 N.C. 667, 678, 473 S.E.2d 291, 297 (1996). For example, in State v. Wiley, 355 N.C. 592, 607-610 (2002), the prosecution passed a "death qualified" jury to the defense. During defense questioning, a juror said that he would automatically vote for LWOP over the death penalty. The trial judge re-opened the State's questioning of this juror and allowed the prosecutor to remove the juror for cause.

Preserving Denial of Challenges for Cause: In order to preserve the denial of a challenge for cause for appeal, the defendant must adhere to the following procedure:
1) The defendant must have exhausted the peremptory challenges available to him;
2) After exhausting his peremptory challenges, the defendant must move (orally or in writing) to renew a challenge for cause that was previously denied if he either:
   a) Had peremptorily challenged the juror in question, or

b) Stated in the motion that he would have peremptorily challenged the juror if he had not already exhausted his peremptory challenges; and

3) The judge denied the defendant's motion for renewal of his cause challenge.

N.C.G.S 15A-1214(h) and (i).

Renewal of Requests for Disallowed Questions: Counsel may renew its requests to ask questions that were previously denied. Occasionally, a trial court may change its mind. See, State v. Polke, 361 N.C. 65, 68-69 (2006); State v. Green, 336 N.C. 142, 164-65 (1994).

III. SUBSTANTIVE AREAS OF INQUIRY

Accomplice Liability: Prosecutor properly asked about jurors' abilities to follow the law regarding acting in concert, aiding and abetting, and the felony murder rule by the following "non-stake-out" questions in State v. Cheek, 351 N.C. 48, 65-68, 520 S.E.2d 545, 555-557 (1999):

"[I]f you were convinced, beyond a reasonable doubt, of the defendant's guilt, even though he didn't actually pull the trigger or strike the match or strike the blow in the murder, but that he was guilty of aiding and abetting and shared the intent that the victim be killed—could you return a verdict of guilty on that?"

"[T]he fact that one person may not have actually struck the blow or pulled the trigger or lit the match, but yet he could be guilty under the felony murder rule if he was jointly acting together with someone else in the kidnapping or committing an armed robbery?"

"[C]ould you follow the law…under the felony murder rule and find someone guilty of first-degree murder, if you were convinced, beyond a reasonable doubt, that they had engaged in the underlying felony of either kidnapping or armed robbery, and find them guilty, even though they didn't actually strike the blow or pull the trigger or light the match…that caused [the victim's] death…?"

Accomplice/Co-Defendant (or Interested Witness) Testimony:

It is proper to ask about prospective jurors' abilities to follow the law with respect to interested witness testimony…When an accomplice is testifying for the State, the accomplice is considered an interested witness, and his testimony is subject to careful [or the highest of] scrutiny. State v. Jones, 347 N.C. 193, 201-204 (1997). See, NCPI-Crim. 104.21, 104.25 and 104.30.

The following were proper questions (asked by the prosecutor) about a **co-defendant/accomplice with a plea arrangement** from State v. Jones, 347 N.C. 193, 201-202, 491 S.E.2d 641, 646 (1997):

a) *There may be a witness who will testify…pursuant to a plea arrangement, plea bargain, or "deal" with the State. Would the mere fact that there is a plea bargain with one of the State's witnesses affect your decision or your verdict in this case?*

b) *Could you listen to the court's instructions of how you are to view accomplice or interested witness testimony, whether it came from the State or the defendant….?*

c) After having listened to that testimony and the court's instructions as to what the law is, and you found that testimony believable, could you give it the same weight as you would any other uninterested witness?

[According to the N.C. Supreme Court, **these 3 questions were proper and not stake-out questions**…They were designed to determine if jurors could follow the law and be impartial and unbiased. Jones, 347 N.C. at 204. The prosecutor accurately stated the law. An accomplice testifying for the State is considered an interested witness and his testimony is subject to careful scrutiny. The jury should analyze such testimony in light of the accomplice's interest in the outcome of the case. If the jury believes the witness, it should give his testimony the same weight as any other credible witness. Jones, 347 N.C. at 203-204.]

You may hear testimony from a witness who is testifying pursuant to a plea agreement. This witness has pled guilty to a lesser degree of murder in exchange for their promise to give truthful testimony in this case. Do you have opinions about plea agreements that would make it difficult or impossible for you to believe the testimony of a witness who might testify under a plea agreement? The prosecutor's inquiry merely (and properly) sought to determine whether a plea agreement would have a negative effect on prospective jurors' ability to believe testimony from such witnesses. State v. Gell, 351 N.C. 192, 200-01 (2000).

Age of Juror and Effects of It: N.C.G.S. 9-6.1 allows jurors age 72 years or older to request excusal or deferral from jury service but it does not prohibit such jurors from serving. In State v. Elliott, 360 N.C. 400, 408 (2006), the Court recognized that it is sensible for trial judges to consider the effects of age on the individual juror since the adverse effects of growing old do not strike all equally or at the same time. [Based on this, it appears that the trial court and the parties should be able to inquire into the effects of aging with older jurors.]

Circumstantial Evidence/Lack of Eyewitnesses:

Prosecutor informed prospective jurors that "*only the three people charged with the crimes know what happened to the victims…and…none of the three would testify against the others and therefore the State had no eyewitness testimony to offer.*" He then asked: "*Knowing that this is a serious case, a first degree murder case, do you feel like you have to say to yourself, well, the case is just too serious…to decide based upon circumstantial evidence and I would require more than circumstantial evidence to return a verdict of first degree murder?*" The court found that these statements properly (1) informed the jury that the state would be relying on circumstantial evidence and (2) inquired as to whether the lack of eyewitnesses would cause them problems. (Also, it was not a stake-out question.) State v. Teague, 134 N.C. App. 702 (1999).

It was proper in first degree murder case for State to tell the jury that they will be relying upon circumstantial evidence with no witnesses to the shooting and then ask them

if that will cause any problems. State v Clark, 319 N.C. 215 (1987).

Child Witnesses: Trial judge erred in not allowing the defendant to ask prospective jurors "*if they thought children were more likely to tell the truth when they allege sexual abuse.*" State v Hatfeld, 128 N.C. App. 294 (1998)

Defendant's Prior Record: In State v Hedgepath, 66 N.C. App. 390 (1984), the trial court erred in refusing to allow counsel to question jurors about their willingness and ability to follow judge's instructions that they are to consider defendant's prior record only for purposes of determining credibility.

Defenses (i.e., Specific Defenses): A prospective juror who is unable to accept a particular defense...recognized by law is prejudiced to such an extent that he can no longer be considered competent. Such jurors should be removed from the jury when challenged for cause. State v Leonard, 295 N.C. 58, 62-63 (1978).

a) Accident: Defense counsel is free to inquire into the potential jurors' attitudes concerning the specific defenses of accident or self-defense. State v. Parks, 324 N.C. 420, 378 S.E.2d 785 (1989).

b) Insanity: It was reversible error for trial court to fail to dismiss juror who indicated he was not willing to return a verdict of NGRI even though defendant introduced evidence that would satisfy them that the defendant was insane at the time of the offense. State v Leonard, 295 N.C. 58,62-63 (1978); see also Vinson.

c) Mental Health Defense: The defendant has the right to question jurors about their attitudes regarding a potential insanity or lack of mental capacity defense, including questions about: "*courses taken and books read on psychiatry, contacts with psychiatrist or persons interested in psychiatry, members of family receiving treatment, inquiry into feelings on insanity defense and ability to be fair.*" U.S. v Robinson, 475 F.2d 376 (D.C. Cir. 1973); U.S. v Jackson, 542 F.2d 403 (7th Cir. 1976).

d) Self-Defense: Defense counsel is free to inquire into the potential jurors' attitudes concerning the specific defenses of accident or self-defense. Parks, 324 N.C. 420, 378 S.E.2d 785 (1989).

Drug-Related Context of Non-Drug Offense: In a prosecution for common law robbery and assault, there was no error in allowing prosecutor (after telling prospective jurors that a proposed sale of marijuana was involved) to inquire into whether any of them would be unable to be fair and impartial for that reason. State v Williams, 41 N.C. App. 287, disc. rev. denied, 297 N.C. 699 (1979).

The following was not a "stake-out" question and was a proper inquiry to determine the impartiality of the jurors: "*Do you feel like you will automatically turn off the rest of the case and predicate your verdict of not guilty solely upon the fact that these*

people were out looking for drugs and involved in the drug environment, and became victims as a result of that?" State v Teague, 134 N.C. App. 702 (1999)

Eyewitness Identification: The following prosecutor's question was upheld as proper (and non-stake-out): *"Does anyone have a per se problem with eyewitness identification? Meaning, it is in and of itself going to be insufficient to deem a conviction in your mind, no matter what the judge instructs you as to the law?"* The prosecutor was "simply trying to ensure that the jurors could follow the law with respect to eyewitness testimony…that is treat it no differently that circumstantial evidence." State v. Roberts, 135 N.C. App. 690, 697, 522 S.E.2d 130 (1999).

Expert Witness: *"If someone is offered as an expert in a particular field such as psychiatry, **could** you accept him as an expert, his testimony as an expert in that particular field."* According to State v Smith, 328 N.C. 99, 131 (1991), this was not an attempt to stake out jurors.

It was not an abuse of discretion for the judge to prevent defense counsel from asking jurors "*whether they **would** automatically reject the testimony of mental health professionals."* This was apparently a stake out question. State v. Neal, 346 N.C. 608, 618 (1997).

Focusing on "The Issue":
In a child homicide case, the prosecutor was allowed to ask a prospective juror "*if he could look beyond evidence of the child's poor living conditions and lack of motherly care and focus on the issue of whether the defendant was guilty of killing the child."* The Supreme Court found that this was not a stake-out question. State v. Burr, 341 N.C. 263, 285-86 (1995).

Following the Law: "The right to an impartial jury contemplates that each side will be allowed to make inquiry into the ability of prospective jurors to follow the law. Questions designed to measure a prospective juror's ability to follow the law are proper within the context of jury selection." State v. Jones, 347 N.C. 193, 203 (1997), *citing* State v. Price, 326 N.C. 56, 66-67, 388 S.E.2d 84, 89, *vacated on other grounds*, 498 U.S. 802 (1990).

If a juror's answers about a fundamental legal concept (such as the presumption of innocence) demonstrated either **confusion about**, or **a fundamental misunderstanding** of the principles…or **a simple reluctance to apply** those principles, its effect on the juror's inability to give the defendant a fair trial remained the same. State v. Cunningham, 333 N.C. 744, 754-756, 429 S.E.2d 718 (1993).

Hold-Out Jurors During Deliberations: Generally, questions designed to determine how well a prospective juror would stand up to other jurors in the event of a split decision amounts to impermissible "stake-out" questions. State v. Call, 353 N.C. 400, 409-410, 545 S.E.2d 190, 197 (2001).

It is permissible, however, to ask jurors *"if they understand that, while the law requires them to deliberate with other jurors in order to try to reach a unanimous verdict, they have the right to stand by their beliefs in the case."* (Note that, if this permissible question is followed by the question, *"And would you do that?,"* this crosses the line into an impermissible stake-out question.) State v. Elliott, 344 N.C. 242, 262-63, 475 S.E.2d 202, 210 (1997); see also, State v. Maness, 363 N.C. 261 (2009).

Where defense counsel had already inquired into whether jurors could follow the law as specified in N.C.G.S. 15A-1235 by asking if they could *"independently weigh the evidence, respect the opinion of other jurors, and be strong enough to ask other jurors to to respect his opinion,"* the trial judge properly limited a redundant question that was based on an Allen jury instruction. (N.C.P.I.-Crim. 101-40). State v. Maness, 363 N.C. 261 (2009).

Identifying Family Members: Not error to allow the prosecutor during jury selection to identify members of the murder victim's family who are in the courtroom. State v Reaves, 337 N.C. 700 (1994).

Intoxication: Proper for Prosecutor to ask prospective jurors whether they would be sympathetic toward a defendant who was intoxicated at the time of the offense. *"If it is shown to you from the evidence and beyond a reasonable doubt that the defendant was intoxicated at the time of the alleged shooting, would this cause you to have sympathy for him and allow that sympathy to affect your verdict."* State v McKoy, 323 N.C. 1 (1988).

Law Enforcement Witness Credibility: If a juror would automatically give enhanced credibility or weight to the testimony of a law enforcement witness (or any particular class of witness), he would be excused for cause. State v. Cummings, 361 N.C. 438, 457-58 (2007); State v. McKinnon, 328 N.C. 668, 675-76, 403 S.E.2d 474 (1991).

Legal Principles: Defense counsel may question jurors to determine whether they completely understood the principles of **reasonable doubt** and **burden of proof**. Once counsel has fully explored an area, however, the judge may limit further inquiry. Parks, 324 N.C. 420, 378 S.E.2d 785 (1989).

"The right to an impartial jury contemplates that each side will be allowed to make ***inquiry into the ability of prospective jurors to follow the law***. Questions designed to measure a prospective juror's ability to follow the law are proper within the context of jury selection." State v. Jones, 347 N.C. 193, 203 (1997), *citing* State v. Price, 326 N.C. 56, 66-67, 388 S.E.2d 84, 89, *vacated on other grounds*, 498 U.S. 802 (1990).

Defendant Not Testifying: It is proper for defense counsel to ask questions concerning a defendant's failure to testify in his own defense. A court, however, may disallow questioning about the defendant's failure to offer evidence in his defense. State v. Blankenship, 337 N.C. 543, 447 S.E.2d 727 (1994).

Court erred in denying the defendant's challenge for cause of juror who

repeatedly said that the defendant's failure to testify would stick in the back of my mind while he was deliberating (in response to question "*whether the defendant's failure to testify would affect his ability to give him a fair trial"*). State v Hightower, 331 N.C. 636 (1992).

Presumption of Innocence and Burden of Proof: A juror gave conflicting and ambiguous answers about whether she could presume the defendant innocent and whether she would require him to prove his innocence. The Supreme Court awarded the defendant a new trial because the trial judge denied the defendant's challenge for cause. The Supreme Court said that **the juror's answers demonstrated either confusion about, or a fundamental misunderstanding of the principles of the presumption of innocence, or a simple reluctance to apply those principles**. Regardless whether the juror was confused, had a misunderstanding, or was reluctant to apply the law, its effect on her ability to give the defendant a fair trial remained the same. State v. Cunningham, 333 N.C. 744, 754-756, 429 S.E.2d 718 (1993).

Pretrial Publicity: Inquiry should be made regarding the effect of the publicity upon jurors' ability to be impartial or keep an open mind. Mu'min, 500 U.S. 415, 419-421, 425 (1991). Although "Questions about the content of the publicity…might be helpful in assessing whether a juror is impartial," they are not constitutionally required. Id. at 425. The constitutional question is *whether jurors had such fixed opinions that they could not be impartial*, not whether or what they remembered about the publicity. It is not required that jurors be totally ignorant of the facts and issues involved. Id., 500 U.S. at 426 and 430.

It was deemed proper for a prosecutor to describe some of the "uncontested" details of the crime before he asked jurors whether they knew or read anything about the case. State v. Nobles, 350 N.C. 483, 497-498, 515 S.E.2d 885, 894-895 (1999) (ADA noted that defendant was charged with discharging a firearm into a vehicle occupied by his wife and three small children). It was not a "stake-out" question.

Racial/Ethnic Background: Trial courts must allow questions regarding whether any jurors might be prejudiced against the defendant because of his race or ethnic group where the defendant is accused of a violent crime and the defendant and the victim were members of different racial or ethnic groups. (If this criteria is not met, racial and ethnic questions are discretionary.) Rosales-Lopez v. United States, 451 U.S. 182, 189, 101 S.Ct. 1629, 68 L.Ed.2d 22 (1981). Such questions must be allowed in capital cases involving a charge of murder of a white person by a black defendant. Turner v. Murray, 476 U.S. 28, 106 S.Ct. 1783, 90 L.Ed.2d 27 (1986).

Sexual Offense/Medical Evidence: In a sexual offense case, the prosecutor asked, *"To be able to find one guilty beyond a reasonable doubt, are you going to require that there be medical evidence that affirmatively says an incident occurred?"* This was a proper, non-stake-out question. Since the law does not require medical evidence to corroborate a victim's story, the prosecutor's question was a proper attempt to measure prospective jurors' ability to follow the law. State v. Henderson, 155 N.C. App. 719, 724-727 (2003).

Sexual Orientation: Proper for prosecutor to question jurors regarding prejudice against homosexuality for the purpose of determining whether they could impartially consider the evidence knowing that the State's witnesses were homosexual. State v Edwards, 27 N.C. App. 369 (1975).

IV. IMPROPER QUESTIONS OR IMPROPER PURPOSES

Answers to Legal Questions: Counsel should not "fish" for answers to legal questions before the judge has instructed the juror on applicable legal principles by which the juror should be guided. State v. Phillips, 300 N.C. 678, 268 S.E.2d 452 (1980). [Does this mean can counsel get judge to give preliminary instructions before voir dire, and then ask questions about the law?]

Arguments that are Prohibited: A lawyer (even a prosecutor) may not make statements during jury selection that would be improper if they were later argued to the jury. State v. Hines, 286 N.C. 377, 385, 211 S.E.2d 201 (1975) (reversible error for the prosecutor to make improper statements during voir dire about how the death penalty is rarely enforced).

Confusing and Ambiguous Questions: Hypothetical questions so phrased to be ambiguous and confusing are improper. For example, *"Now, everyone on the jury is in favor of capital punishment for this offense…Is there anyone on the jury, because the nature of the offense, feels like you might be a little bit biased or prejudiced, either consciously or unconsciously, because of the type or the nature of the offense involved; is there anyone on the jury who feels that they would be in favor of a sentence other than death for rape?"* (see, Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975)); or, *"Would you be willing to be tried by one in your present state of mind if you were on trial in this case?"* State v. Denny, 294 N.C. 294, 240 S.E.2d 437 (1978).

Inadmissible Evidence: An attorney may not ask prospective jurors about inadmissible evidence. State v. Washington, 283 N.C. 175, 195 S.E.2d 534 (1973).

Incorrect Statements of Law: Questions containing incorrect or inadequate statements of the law are improper. State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975).

Indoctrination of Jurors: Counsel should not engage in efforts to indoctrinate jurors and counsel should not argue the case in any way while questioning jurors. State v. Phillips, 300 N.C. 678, 268 S.E.2d 452 (1980). In order to constitute an attempt to indoctrinate potential jurors, the improper question would be aimed at indoctrinating jurors with views favorable to the [questioning party]…or…advancing a particular position. State v. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 346 (2005). An **example of a non-indoctrinating question** is: *Can you imagine a set of circumstances in which…your personal beliefs conflict with the law? In that situation, what would you do?* See Chapman.

Overbroad and General Questions: *"Would you consider, if you had the opportunity,*

evidence about this defendant, either good or bad, other than that arising from the incident here?" This question was overly broad and general, and not proper for voir dire. State v. Washington, 283 N.C. 175, 195 S.E.2d 534 (1973).

Rapport Building: Counsel should not visit with or establish "rapport" with jurors. State v. Phillips, 300 NC 678, 268 SE2d 452 (1980).

Repetitive Questions: The court may limit repetitious questions. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975). Where defense counsel had already inquired into whether jurors could "*independently weigh the evidence, respect the opinion of other jurors, and be strong enough to ask other jurors to to respect his opinion,"* the trial judge properly limited a redundant question that was based on an Allen jury instruction. State v. Maness, 363 N.C. 261 (2009).

Stake-Out Questions:
"Staking out" jurors is improper. Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 S.E.2d 191, 202 (1995). "Staking out" is seen as an attempt to indoctrinate potential jurors as to the substance of defendant's defense. State v. Parks, 324 N.C. 420, 378 S.E.2d 785 (1989).

"Staking out" defined***: Questions that tend to commit prospective jurors to a specific future course of action in the case***. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 345-346 (2005).

Counsel may not pose hypothetical questions designed to elicit in advance what the jurors' decision will be under a certain state of the evidence or upon a given state of facts...The court should not permit counsel to question prospective jurors as to the kind of verdict they would render, or how they would be inclined to vote, under a given state of facts. State v Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 336-37 (1975), death sentence vacated, 428 U.S. 902 (1976).

Examples of Stake-Out Questions:

1) "*Is there anyone on the jury who feels that because the defendant had a gun in his hand, no matter what the circumstances might be, that if that-if he pulled the trigger to that gun and that person met their death as result of that, that simply on those facts alone that he must be guilty of something?"* Parks, 324 N.C. 420, 378 S.E.2d 785 (1989).

2) Improper "reasonable doubt" questions:
- a) *What would your verdict be if the evidence were evenly balanced?*
- *b) What would your verdict be if you had a reasonable doubt about the defendant's guilt?*
- *c) What would your verdict be if you were convinced beyond a reasonable doubt of the defendant's guilt?* State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975).
- d) The judge will instruct you that *"you have to find each element beyond a reasonable doubt. Mr. [Juror], if you hear the evidence that comes in and find three elements beyond a reasonable doubt, but you don't find on the*

fourth element, what would your verdict be?" State v. Johnson, __ N.C.App. __, 706 S.E.2d. 790, 796 (2011)

3) *Whether you would vote for the death penalty […in a specified hypothetical situation…]?* State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975).

4) *If you find from the evidence a conclusion which is susceptible to two reasonable interpretations; that is, one leading to innocence and one leading to guilt, will you adopt the interpretation which points to innocence and reject that of guilt?* State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975).

5) *If it was shown…that the defendant couldn't control his actions and didn't know what was going on…,would you still be inclined to return a verdict which would cause the imposition of the death penalty?* State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975).

6) *If you are satisfied from the evidence that the defendant was not conscious of his act at the time it allegedly was committed, would you still feel compelled to return a guilty verdict?* State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975).

7) *If you are satisfied beyond a reasonable doubt that the defendant committed the act but you believed that he did not intentionally or willfully commit the crime, would you still return a guilty verdict knowing that there would be a mandatory death sentence?* State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975).

8) Improper Burden of Proof Questions:

a) *If the defendant chose not to put on a defense, would you hold that against him or take it as an indication that he has something to hide?*

b) *Would you feel the need to hear from the defendant in order to return a verdict of not guilty?*

c) *Would the defendant have to prove anything to you before he would be entitled to a not guilty verdict?* State v. Blankenship, 337 N.C. 543, 447 S.E.2d 727 (1994); State v. Phillips, 300 N.C. 678, 268 S.E.2d 452 (1980), or

d) *Would the fact that the defendant called fewer witnesses than the State make a difference in your decision as to her guilt?* State v. Rogers, 316 N.C. 203, 341 S.E.2d 713 (1986).

9) Improper Insanity Questions:

a) *Do you know what a dissociative period is and do you believe that it is possible for a person not to know because some mental disorder where they actually are, and do things that they believe they are doing in another place and under circumstances that are not actually real?*

b) *Are you thinking, well if the defendant says he has PTSD, for that reason alone, I would vote that he is guilty?* State v. Avery, 315 N.C. 1, 337 S.E.2d 786 (1985).

10) Improper "Hold-out" Juror Questions:

a) A question designed to determine how well a prospective juror would stand up

to other jurors in the event of a split decision amounts to an impermissible "stake-out." State v. Call, 353 N.C. 400, 409-410, 545 S.E.2d 190, 197 (2001). For example, *"if you personally do not think that the State has proved something beyond a reasonable doubt and the other 11 jurors have, could you maintain the courage of your convictions and say, they've not proved that?"*

b) It is permissible to ask jurors *"if they understand that, while the law requires them to deliberate with other jurors in order to try to reach a unanimous verdict, they have the rights to stand by their beliefs in the case."* If this permissible question is followed by the question, *"And would you do that?"* this crosses the line into an impermissible stake-out question. State v. Elliott, 344 N.C. 242, 263, 475 S.E.2d 202, 210 (1996).

c) The following hypothetical inquiry was deemed an improper stake-out question: *"If you were convinced that life imprisonment without parole was the appropriate penalty after hearing the facts, the evidence, and the law, could you return a verdict of life imprisonment without parole even if you fellow jurors were of different opinions?"* State v. Maness, 363 N.C. 261, 269-70 (2009).

11) Improper Questions about Witness Credibility:

a) *"What type of facts would you look at to make a determination if someone's telling the truth?"*

b) In determining whether to believe a witness, *"would it be important to you that a person could actually observe or hear what they said [that] they have [seen or heard] from the witness stand?"* State v. Johnson, __ N.C.App. __, 706 S.E.2d. 790, 793-94 (2011).

c) 11) *"Whether you **would** automatically reject the testimony of mental health professionals."* State v. Neal, 346 N.C. 608, 618 (1997).

Examples of NON-Stake Out Questions:

1) Prosecutor asked the jurors *"if they would consider that the defendant voluntarily consumed alcohol in determining whether the defendant was entitled to diminished capacity mitigating factor."* The Supreme Court stated, "This was a proper question. He did not attempt to stake the jury out as to what their answer would be on a hypothetical question." State v. Reeves, 337 N.C. 700 (1994)

2) Prosecutor informed prospective jurors that *"only the three people charged with the crimes know what happened to the victims…and…none of the three would testify against the others and therefore the State had no eyewitness testimony to offer."* He then asked: *Knowing that this is a serious case, a first degree murder case, do you feel like you have to say to yourself, well, the case is just too serious…to decide based upon circumstantial evidence and I would require more than circumstantial evidence to return a verdict of first degree murder?* Court found that these statements properly (1) informed the jury that the state would be relying on circumstantial evidence and (2) inquired as to whether the lack of eyewitnesses would cause them problems. (Also, it was not a stake-out question.) State v. Teague, 134 N.C. App. 702 (1999).

3) *"Do you feel like you will automatically turn off the rest of the case and predicate your verdict of not guilty solely upon the fact that these people were out looking for drugs and involved in the drug environment, and became victims as a result of that?"* State v Teague, 134 N.C. App. 702 (1999).

4) *"If someone is offered as an expert in a particular field such as psychiatry, could you accept him as an expert, his testimony as an expert in that particular field."* According to State v Smith, 328 N.C. 99, 131 (1991), this was NOT an attempt to stake out jurors.

5) Proper "non-stake-out" questions (by the prosecutor) about a **co-defendant/accomplice with a plea arrangement** from State v. Jones, 347 N.C. 193, 201-202, 204, 491 S.E.2d 641, 646 (1997):

a) *There may be a witness who will testify…pursuant to a plea arrangement, plea bargain, or "deal" with the State. Would the mere fact that there is a plea bargain with one of the State's witnesses affect your decision or your verdict in this case?*

b) *Could you listen to the court's instructions of how you are to view accomplice or interested witness testimony, whether it came from the State or the defendant….?*

c) *After having listened to that testimony and the court's instructions as to what the law is, and you found that testimony believable, could you give it the same weight as you would any other uninterested witness?*

6) Proper "non-stake-out" questions asked by prosecutor about views on death penalty from State v. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 344-346 (2005):

a) As you sit here now, do you know how you would vote at the penalty phase…regardless of the facts or circumstances in the case?

b) Do you feel like in any particular case you are more likely to return a verdict of life imprisonment or the death penalty?

c) Can you imagine a set of circumstances in which…your personal beliefs [for or against the death penalty] conflict with the law? In that situation, what would you do?

A federal court in United States v. Johnson, 366 F.Supp. 2d 822 (N.D. Iowa 2005), explained how to avoid improper stakeout questions in framing proper case-specific questions. A proper question should address the juror's ability to consider both life and death instead of seeking to secure a juror's pledge vote for life or death under a certain set of facts. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 842-844. For example, questions about *1) whether a juror* ***could find*** *(instead of would find)* ***that certain facts call for the imposition of life or death****, or 2) whether a juror* ***could fairly consider both life and death in light of particular facts*** are appropriate case-specific inquiries. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 845, 850. Case-specific questions should be prefaced on "if the evidence shows," or some other reminder that an ultimate determination must be based on the evidence at trial and the court's instructions. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 850.

7) The prosecutor's question, *"Would you feel sympathy towards the defendant simply because you would see him here in court each day…?"* was NOT a stake-out attempt to get jurors to not consider defendant's appearance and humanity in capital sentencing hearing. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 346-347 (2005).

8) Prosecutor properly asked "non-stake-out" questions about jurors' abilities to follow the law regarding acting in concert, aiding and abetting, and the felony murder rule in State v. Cheek, 351 N.C. 48, 65-68, 520 S.E.2d 545, 555-557 (1999):

a) *"[I]f you were convinced, beyond a reasonable doubt, of the defendant's guilt, even though he didn't actually pull the trigger or strike the match or strike the blow in the murder, but that he was guilty of aiding and abetting and shared the intent that the victim be killed—could you return a verdict of guilty on that?"*

b) *"[T]he fact that one person may not have actually struck the blow or pulled the trigger or lit the match, but yet he could be guilty under the felony murder rule if he was jointly acting together with someone else in the kidnapping or committing an armed robbery?"*

c) *"[C]ould you follow the law…under the felony murder rule and find someone guilty of first-degree murder, if you were convinced, beyond a reasonable doubt, that they had engaged in the underlying felony of either kidnapping or armed robbery, and find them guilty, even though they didn't actually strike the blow or pull the trigger or light the match…that caused [the victim's] death…?"*

9) In a sexual offense case, the prosecutor asked, *"To be able to find one guilty beyond a reasonable doubt, are you going to require that there be medical evidence that affirmatively says an incident occurred?"* This was NOT a stake-out question. Since the law does not require medical evidence to corroborate a victim's story, the prosecutor's question was a proper attempt to measure prospective jurors' ability to follow the law. State v. Henderson, 155 N.C. App. 719, 724-727 (2003) (The court said that the following question would have been a stake-out if the ADA had asked it, *"If there is medical evidence stating that some incident has occurred, will you find the defendant guilty beyond a reasonable doubt*).

10) In a case involving eyewitness identification, the prosecutor asked: *"Does anyone have a per se problem with eyewitness identification? Meaning, it is in and of itself going to be insufficient to deem a conviction in your mind, no matter what the judge instructs you as to the law?"* The Court said that this question did NOT cause the jurors to commit to a future course of action. The prosecutor was "simply trying to ensure that the jurors could follow the law with respect to eyewitness testimony…that is treat it no differently that circumstantial evidence." State v. Roberts, 135 N.C. App. 690, 697, 522 S.E.2d 130 (1999).

11) In a child homicide case, the prosecutor was allowed to ask a prospective juror *"if he could look beyond evidence of the child's poor living conditions and lack of motherly care and focus on the issue of whether the defendant was guilty of killing the child."* The

Supreme Court found that this was not a stake-out question. State v. Burr, 341 N.C. 263, 285-86 (1995).

JURY SELECTION IN DEATH PENALTY CASES

I. GENERAL PRINCIPLES

Both the defendant and the state have the right to question prospective jurors about their views on capital punishment…The extent and manner of the inquiry by counsel lies within the trial court's discretion and will not be overturned absent an abuse of discretion. State v. Brogden, 334 N.C. 39, 430 S.E.2d 905, 908 (1993).

A defendant on trial for his life should be given great latitude in examining potential jurors. State v Conner, 335 N.C. 618 (1995).

[C]ounsel may seek to identify whether a prospective juror harbors a general preference for a life or death sentence or is resigned to vote automatically for either sentence….A juror who is predisposed to recommend a particular sentence without regard for the unique facts of a case or a trial judge's instruction on the law is not fair and impartial. State v. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 345 (2005) (citation omitted).

"Part of the Sixth Amendment's guarantee of a defendant's right to an impartial jury is an adequate voir dire to identify unqualified jurors…Voir dire plays a critical function in assuring the criminal defendant that his constitutional right to an impartial jury will be honored." Morgan v Illinois, 504 U.S. 719, 729, 733 (1992)

Voir dire must be available ***"to lay bare the foundation"*** of a challenge for cause against a prospective juror. Were voir dire not available to lay bare the foundation of petitioner's challenge for cause against those prospective jurors who would always impose death following conviction, his right not to be tried by such jurors would be rendered as nugatory and meaningless as the State's right, in the absence of questioning, to strike those who would never do so. . Morgan, 504 U.S. at 733-34.

In voir dire, "what matters is how…[the questions regarding capital punishment] might be understood-or misunderstood-by prospective jurors." For example, "a general question as to the presence of reservations [against the death penalty] is far from the inquiry which separates those who would never vote for the ultimate penalty from those who would reserve it for the direst cases." One cannot assume the position of a venireman regarding this issue absent his own unambiguous statement of his beliefs. Witherspoon, 391 U.S. at 515, n. 9.

The trial court **must allow a defendant to go beyond the standard "fair and impartial" question**: "As to general questions of fairness and impartiality, such jurors could in all truth and candor respond affirmatively, personally confident that such dogmatic views are fair and impartial, while leaving the specific concern unprobed...It

may be that a juror could, in good conscience, swear to uphold the law and yet be unaware that maintaining such dogmatic beliefs about the death penalty would prevent him or her from doing so. A defendant on trial for his life must be permitted on voir dire to ascertain whether his prospective jurors function under such misconception." Morgan, 504 U.S. at 735-36.

It is not necessary for the trial court to explain or **for a juror to understand the process of a capital sentencing proceeding before the juror can be successfully challenged for his answers to questions.** An **understanding of the process should not affect one's beliefs regarding the death penalty**. Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 SE2d 191, 202, 206 (1995).

II. Death Qualification: General Opposition to Death Penalty Not Enough

Under the "impartial jury" guarantee of the Sixth Amendment, death penalty jurors may not be excused "for cause simply because they voiced general objections to the death penalty or expressed conscientious or religious scruples against its infliction"…, or "that there are some kinds of cases in which they would refuse to recommend capital punishment. Witherspoon, 391 U.S. at 522, 512-13.

The Supreme Court recognized that "A man who opposes the death penalty…can make the discretionary judgment entrusted to him by the state and can thus obey the oath he takes as a juror." Id., 391 U.S. at 519.

"Not all [jurors] who oppose the death penalty are subject to removal for cause in capital cases; those who firmly believe that the death penalty is unjust may nevertheless serve as jurors…so long as they state clearly that they are willing to temporarily set aside their own beliefs in deference to the rule of law." Lockhart v. McCree, 476 U.S. 162, 176, 106 S.Ct. 1758, 1766, 90 L.Ed.2d 137, 149 (1986). [Note that the Court in Lockhart reaffirmed its position that death-qualified juries are not conviction-prone, and it is constitutional for a death-qualified jury to decide the guilt/innocence phase. The Court rejected the "fair-cross-section" argument against death-qualified juries deciding guilt.]

"[A] ***juror is not automatically excluded from jury service merely because that juror may have an opinion*** about the propriety of the death penalty." State v. Elliott, 360 N.C. 400, 410 (2006). General opposition to the death penalty will not support a challenge for cause for a potential juror who will "conscientiously apply the law to the facts adduced at trial." Such a **juror may be properly excluded "if he refuses to follow the statutory scheme and truthfully answer the questions** put by the trial judge." State v. Brogden, 430 S.E.2d at 907-08 (1993)(citing Witt, Adams v. Texas, and Lockhart).

III. Death Qualification Rules: Witherspoon and Witt Standards

The State may excuse jurors who make it **"unmistakably clear" that (1) they**

would "automatically vote against the death penalty" no matter what the facts of the case were, or (2) "their attitude about the death penalty would prevent them from making an impartial decision" regarding the defendant's guilt. Witherspoon, 391 U.S. at 522, n. 21 (1968).

A . . . prospective juror cannot be expected to say in advance of trial whether he would in fact vote for the extreme penalty in the case before him. The most that can be demanded of a venireman in this regard is that he be **willing to consider all of the penalties** provided by state law, and that he **not be irrevocably committed against the penalty of death regardless of the facts and circumstances**..." that might emerge during the trial. Witherspoon v Illinois, 391 U.S. 510, 523 n.21 (1968).

The proper standard for excusing a prospective juror for cause because of his views on capital punishment is: **"Whether the juror's views would prevent or substantially impair the performance of his duties as a juror in accordance with his instruction or his oath."** Wainwright v. Witt, 469 U.S. at 424.

Note that **considerable confusion regarding the law** on the part of the juror could amount to **"substantial impairment."** Uttecht v. Brown, 551 U.S. 1, 127. S.Ct. 2218, 167 L.Ed.2d 1014, 1029 (2007).

Prospective jurors may not be excused for cause simply because of the possibility "of the **death penalty may affect** what their **honest judgment of the facts** will be or **what they may deem to be a reasonable doubt**." The fact that the possible imposition of the death penalty would **"affect" their deliberations by causing them to be more emotionally involved or to view their task with greater seriousness** is not grounds for excusal. The same rule against exclusion for cause applies to **jurors who could not confirm or deny** that their **deliberations would be affected** by their views about the death penalty or by the possible imposition of the death penalty. Adams v. Texas, 448 U.S. 38, 49-50 (1980).

The State may excuse for cause a juror if he affirmatively answers the following question: **"Is your conviction [against the death penalty] so strong that you cannot take an oath [to fairly try this case and follow the law], knowing that a possibility exists in regard to capital punishment."** Lockett v. Ohio, 438 U.S. 586, 595-96 (1978). This ruling was based on the impartiality prong of the Witherspoon standard (i.e., their attitudes toward the death penalty would prevent them from making an **impartial decision as to the defendant's guilt**.)

The N.C. Supreme Court has upheld the removal of potential jurors **who equivocate** or who state that although they believe generally in the death penalty, they indicate that they personally **would be unable or would find it difficult to vote for the death penalty**. Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 S.E.2d 191, 206 (1995); State v. Gibbs, 335 NC 1, 436 SE2d 321 (1993), cert. denied, 129 L.Ed.2d 881 (1994).

The following questions **by the prosecutor** were found to be proper:

1) [Mr. Juror…], *how do you feel about the death penalty, sir, are you opposed to it or [do] you feel like it is a necessary law?*

2) *Do you feel that you could be part of the legal machinery which might bring it about in this particular case?* State v Willis, 332 N.C. 151, 180-81 (1992).

IV. Rehabilitation of Death Challenged Juror

It is not an abuse of for the trial court to deny the defendant the chance to rehabilitate a juror **who has expressed clear and unequivocal** opposition to the death penalty in response to questions asked by the prosecutor and judge **when further questioning by defendant would not have likely produced different answers**. Brogden, 334 N.C. 39, 430 SE2d 905, 908-09 (1993); see also State v. Taylor, 332 N.C. 372, 420 S.E.2d 414 (1992). [In Brogden, a juror said that he could consider the evidence, was not predisposed either way, and could vote for death in an appropriate case. The same juror also said his feelings about the death penalty would "partially" or "to some extent" affect his performance as a juror. The trial court **erroneously** denied the defendant the opportunity to rehabilitate this juror.]

It is **error** for a trial court to enter "**a general ruling, as a matter of law," a defendant will never be allowed to rehabilitate** a juror when the juror's answers…have indicated that the **juror may be unable to follow the law** and fairly consider the possibility of recommending a sentence of death. State v. Green, 336 N.C. 142, 161 (1994) (based on Brogdon).

V. Life Qualifying Questions: Morgan v. Illinois

"If you found [the defendant] guilty, would you automatically vote to impose the death penalty no matter what the facts were?" Morgan, 504 U.S. at 723. A juror who will automatically vote for the death penalty in every case will fail to follow the law about considering aggravating and mitigating evidence, and has already formed an opinion on the merits of the case. Id. at 504 U.S. at 729, 738.

"Clearly, the extremes must be eliminated-i.e., those who, in spite of the evidence, would automatically vote to convict or impose the death penalty or automatically vote to acquit or impose a life sentence." Morgan, 504 U.S. at 734, n. 7.

"General fairness and follow the law questions" are not sufficient. **A capital defendant is entitled to inquire and ascertain a potential juror's predeterminations regarding the imposition of the death penalty.** Morgan, 504 U.S. at 507; State v. Conner, 335 N.C. 618, 440 S.E.2d 826, 840 (1994).

[For a good summary of Morgan, see U.S. v. Johnson, 366 F.Supp. 2d 822, 826-831 (N.D. Iowa 2005).]

Proper Questions:

1) ***As you sit here now, do you know how you would vote at the penalty phase…regardless of the facts or circumstances in the case?*** Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 344-345 (2005).

2) ***Do you feel like in any particular case you are more likely to return a verdict of life imprisonment or the death penalty?***

[According to the Supreme Court, these general questions (asked by the prosecutor, i.e., #1 and #2 herein) did not tend to commit jurors to a specific future course of action. Instead, the questions helped to clarify whether the jurors' personal beliefs would substantially impair their ability to follow the law. Such inquiry is not only permissible, it is desirable to safeguard the integrity of a fair and impartial jury" for both parties. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 344-345 (2005).]

3) ***Can you imagine a set of circumstances in which…your personal beliefs*** *[…for or against the death penalty…]* ***conflict with the law? In that situation, what would you do?***

[While a party may not ask questions that tend to "stake out" the verdict a prospective juror would render on a particular set of facts…, **counsel may seek to identify whether a prospective juror harbors a general preference for a life or death sentence or is resigned to vote automatically for either sentence**….A juror who is predisposed to recommend a particular sentence without regard for the unique facts of a case or a trial judge's instruction on the law is not fair and impartial. State v. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 345 (2005) (citation omitted)…..The Supreme Court said that, although the prosecutor's questions (numbered 1-3 above) were hypothetical, they did not tend to commit jurors to a specific future course of action in this case, nor were they aimed at indoctrinating jurors with views favorable to the State. These questions do not advance any particular position. In fact, the questions address a key criterion of juror competency, i.e., ability to apply the law despite of their personal views. In addition, the questions were simple and clear. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 345-346 (2005).]

4) ***Is your support for the death penalty such that you would find it difficult to consider voting for life imprisonment for a person convicted of first-degree murder?*** Approved in State v Conner, 335 N.C. 618 (1994)

5) ***Would your belief in the death penalty make it difficult for you to follow the law and consider life imprisonment for first-degree murder?*** Approved in State v Conner, 335 N.C. 618 (1994). [The gist of the above two questions (numbered 4 and 5) was to determine whether the juror was willing to consider a life sentence in the appropriate circumstances or would automatically vote for death upon conviction. Conner, 440 SE2d at 841.]

6) ***If at the first stage of the trial you voted guilty for first-degree murder, do you think that you could at sentencing consider a life sentence or would your feelings about the death penalty be so strong that you could not consider a life sentence?*** State v Conner, 335 N.C. 618, 643-45 (1994) (referring to State v Taylor).

7) ***If you had sat on the jury and had returned a verdict of guilty, would you then presume that the penalty should be death?*** State v Conner, 335 N.C. 618, 643-45 (1994). [Referring to questions used in State v Taylor, 304 N.C. at 265, would now be acceptable). Also approved in State v. Ward, 354 N.C. 231, 254, 555 S.E.2d 251, 266 (2001) when asked by the prosecutor.]

8) ***If the State convinced you beyond a reasonable doubt that the defendant was guilty of premeditated murder and you had returned a verdict of guilty, do you think then that you would feel that the death penalty was the only appropriate punishment?*** State v Conner, 335 N.C. 618, 643-45 (1994). [The Court recognized that questions (numbered here as 6-8) that were deemed inappropriate in State v Taylor, 304 N.C. at 265, would now be acceptable.]

9) A capital defendant **must be allowed** to ask, ***"whether prospective jurors would automatically vote to impose the death penalty in the event of a conviction."*** State v. Wiley, 355 N.C. 592, 612 (2002) (citing Morgan 504 U.S. 719, 733-736).

Improper Questions:

1) Improper questions due to "**form**" (according to Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 S.E.2d 191, 203 (1995)):

a) *Do you think that a sentence to life imprisonment is a sufficiently harsh punishment for someone who has committed cold-blooded, premeditated murder?*

b) *Do you think that before you would be willing to consider a death sentence for someone who has committed cold-blooded, premeditated murder, that they would have to show you something that justified that sentence?*

2) Questions that were **argumentative, incomplete statement of the law, and "stake-outs"** are improper. Simpson, 341 N.C. at 339-340.

3) The following question was properly disallowed under Morgan because it was **overly broad and called for a legislative/policy decision**: *Do you feel that the death penalty is the appropriate penalty for someone convicted of first-degree murder?* Conner, 335 N.C. at 643.

4) Defense counsel was not allowed to ask the following questions because they were **hypothetical stake-out questions** designed to pin down jurors regarding the kind of fact scenarios they would deem worthy of LWOP or the death penalty:

a) *Have you ever heard of a case where you thought that LWOP should be the appropriate punishment?*

b) *Have you ever heard of a case where you thought that the death penalty should be the punishment?*

c) *Whether you could conceive of a case where LWOP ought to be the punishment? What type of case is that?* State v. Wiley, 355 N.C. 592, 610-613 (2002).

Case-Specific Questions under Morgan:

The court in United States v. Johnson, 366 F.Supp. 2d 822 (N.D. Iowa 2005) addressed the issue of whether Morgan allows for case-specific questions (i.e., questions that ask whether jurors can consider life or death in a case involving stated facts). The court decided that Morgan did not preclude (or even address) case-specific questions. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 844-845. ***The essence of the Supreme Court's decision in Morgan was that, in order to empanel a fair and impartial jury, a defendant must be afforded the opportunity to question jurors about their ability to consider life and death sentences based on the facts and law in a particular case rather than automatically imposing a particular sentence no matter what the facts were.*** Therefore, the court in

Johnson found that case-specific questions (other than stake-out questions) are appropriate under Morgan. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 845-846.

In fact case-specific questions may be constitutionally required since a prohibition on such questions could impede a party's ability to determine whether jurors are unwaveringly biased for or against a death sentence. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 848.

The Johnson court explained how to avoid improper stakeout questions in framing proper case-specific questions. A proper question should address the juror's ability to consider both life and death instead of seeking to secure a juror's pledge vote for life or death under a certain set of facts. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 842-844. For example, questions about *1) whether a juror **could find** (instead of would find) **that certain facts call for the imposition of life or death**, or 2) whether a juror **could fairly consider both life and death in light of particular facts*** are appropriate case-specific inquiries. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 845, 850. Case-specific questions should be prefaced on "if the evidence shows," or some other reminder that an ultimate determination must be based on the evidence at trial and the court's instructions. 366 F.Supp. 2d at 850.

VI. Consideration of MITIGATION Evidence

General Principles:

Pursuant to Morgan v. Illinois, capital jurors must be able to consider and give weight to mitigating circumstances. "Any juror who states that he or she will automatically **vote for the death penalty without regard to the mitigating evidence is announcing an intention not to follow the instructions to consider mitigating evidence** and to decide if it is sufficient to preclude imposition of the death penalty." Morgan, 504 U.S. at 738, 119 L.Ed.2d at 508. Such jurors "not only refuse to give such evidence any weight but are also plainly saying that mitigating evidence is not worth their consideration and that they will not consider it." Morgan, 504 U.S. at 736, 119 L.Ed.2d at 507. **"Any juror to whom mitigating factors are likewise irrelevant should be disqualified for cause**, for that juror has formed an opinion concerning the merits of the case without basis in the evidence developed at trial." Morgan, 504 U.S. at 739, 119 L.Ed.2d at 509.

Not only must the defendant be allowed to offer all relevant mitigating circumstance, "the sentencer [must] listen-that is **the sentencer must consider the mitigating circumstances when deciding the appropriate sentence.** Eddings v Oklahoma, 455 U.S. 104, 115 n.10 (1982)

[Jurors] may determine the weight to be given relevant mitigating evidence...[b]ut **they may not give it no weight by excluding such evidence from their consideration**. Eddings v Oklahoma, 455 U.S. 104, 114 (1982)

[The] decision to impose the death penalty is a reasoned moral response to the

defendant's background, character and crime…Jurors make individualized assessments of the appropriateness of the death penalty. Penry v. Lynaugh, 109 S.Ct. 2934, 2948-9 (1988)

Procedure must require the sentencing body **to consider the character and record of the individual offender and the circumstances of the particular offense**. Woodsen v North Carolina, 428 U.S. 280, 304 (1976)

In a capital sentencing proceeding before a jury, the jury is called upon to make a highly subjective, unique individualized judgment regarding the punishment that a particular person deserves. Turner v Murray, 476 U.S. 23, 33-34 (1985) (quoting Caldwell v Mississippi, 472 U.S. 320, 340 n.7 (1985).

Potential Inquiries into Mitigation Evidence:

[The N.C. Supreme Court] conclude[d] that, in permitting defendant to inquire generally into jurors' feelings about mental illness and retardation and other mitigating circumstances, he was given an adequate opportunity to discover any bias on the part of the juror…[That, combined with questions] asking jurors if they would automatically vote for the death penalty…and if they could consider mitigating circumstances.., satisfies the constitutional requirements of Morgan.
State v. Skipper, 337 N.C. 1, 21-22 (1994). [Note that the only restriction…was whether a juror could "consider" a specific mitigating circumstance in reaching a decision. State v. Skipper, 337 N.C. 1, 21 (1994)]

The Supreme Court had the following to say about the following question (and two other questions) originally asked by a prosecutor: "***Can you imagine a set of circumstances in which…your personal beliefs*** *[about __?]* ***conflict with the law? In that situation, what would you do?"*** Although the prosecutor's questions were hypothetical, they did not tend to commit jurors to a specific future course of action in this case, nor were they aimed at indoctrinating jurors with views favorable to the State. These questions do not advance any particular position. In fact, the questions address a key criterion of juror competency, i.e., ability to apply the law despite of their personal views. In addition, the questions were simple and clear. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 345-346 (2005).

Note, however, the following questions were deemed improper because 1) they "fished" for answers to legal questions before the judge instructed the jury about the applicable law, and 2) the questions "staked-out" jurors about what kind of verdict they would render under certain named circumstances:

a) "*If the State is able to prove that the defendant premeditatedly and deliberately killed three people…, would you be able to fairly consider things like sociological background, the way he grew up, if he had an alcohol problem, things like that in weighing whether he should get death or LWOP?"*;

b) "*Assuming the State proves three cold-blooded P&D murders, can you conceive in your own mind the mitigating factors that would let you find your ability for a*

penalty less than death?" State v. Mitchell, 353 N.C. 309, 318-319 543 S.E.2d 830, 836-837 (2001).

The following question was allowed by the trial court: ***"Do you feel like whatever we propose to you as a potential mitigating factor that you can give that fair consideration and not already start out dismissing those and saying those don't count because of the severity of the crime."*** State v Jones, 336 N.C. 229, 241 (1994).

An inquiry into jurors' **latent bias against any type of mitigation evidence** may be appropriate. In Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 340-341, 462 S.E.2d 191, 205 (1995), the "majority" of the following questions **were deemed improper** questions about whether jurors could consider certain mitigating circumstances due to "form" or "staking out":

a) "*Do you think that the punishment that should be imposed for anyone in a criminal case in general should be effected [sic] by their mental or emotional state at the time that the crime was committed?"*

b) *"If you were instructed by the Court that certain things are mitigating, that is they are a basis for rendering or returning a verdict of life imprisonment as opposed to death and were those circumstances established you must give them some weight or consideration, could you do that?"*

c) *"Mr. [Juror], in this case if there was evidence to support, evidence to show that the defendant was under the influence of a mental or emotional disturbance at the time of the commission of the murder and if the Court instructed you that was a mitigating circumstance, if proven, that must be given some weight, could you follow that instruction?"*

d) *"If the Court advises you that by the preponderance of the evidence that if you are shown that the capability of the defendant to conform his conduct to the requirements of the law was impaired at the time of the murder, and the Court instructed you that was a circumstance to which you must give some consideration, could you follow that instruction?"*

e) *"Do you believe that a psychologist or a psychiatrist can be successful in treating people with mental or emotional disturbances?"*

f) *"Do you personally believe, and I am talking about your personal beliefs, that if by the preponderance of evidence, that is evidence that is established, that a person who committed premeditated murder was under the influence of a mental or emotional disturbance at the time that the crime was committed, do you personally consider that as mitigating, that is as far as supporting a sentence of less than the death penalty?"*

g) *"Now if instructed by the Court and if it is supported by the evidence, could you take into account the defendant's age at the time of the commission of the crime?"*

h) *"Do you believe that you could fairly and impartially listen to the evidence and consider whether any mitigating circumstances the judge instructs you on are found in the jury consideration at the end of the case?"*

In finding "most" of the above-cited questions improper, it was important to the Supreme Court that the trial court had allowed the defense lawyers to asked jurors about their experiences with mental problems, mental health professions, and foster care. **Such questions allowed the defendant to explore whether jurors had any latent bias**

against any type of mitigation evidence. Simpson, 341 N.C. at 341-342.

See discussion of U.S. v. Johnson, 366 F.Supp. 822 (N.D. Iowa 2005) above for authority or argument that case-specific inquiry about mitigation should be allowed under Morgan.

*For more mitigation questions, see below for "specific areas of inquiry."

VII. Specific Areas of Inquiry

Accomplice Liability: It was proper for prosecutor to ask prospective juror if he would be able to recommend the death penalty for someone who did not actually pull the trigger since it was uncontroverted that the defendant was an accessory. The State could inquire about the jurors' ability to impose the death penalty for an accessory to first-degree murder. State v Bond, 345 N.C. 1, 14-17, 478 S.E.2d 163 (1996):

a) *"The evidence will show [the defendant] did not actually pull the trigger. Would any of you feel like simply because he did not pull the trigger, you could not consider the death penalty and follow the law concerning the death penalty."*

b) *"Regardless of the facts and circumstances concerning the case, you could not recommend the death penalty for anyone unless it was the person who pulled the trigger."*

Age of Defendant:

The following question was asked by defense counsel: *"[T]he defendant will introduce things that he contends are mitigating circumstances, things like his age at the time of the crime...Do you feel like you can consider the defendant's age at the time the crime was committed ...and give it fair consideration?"* The Supreme Court assumed it was error for the trial court to sustain the State's objection to this question. In finding it harmless, however, the Court stated, "[i]n the context that this question was propounded, the juror is bound to have known the circumstance to which the defendant referred was the age of the defendant." State v Jones, 336 N.C. 229, 241 (1994)

Note, however, the question *"Would you consider the age of the defendant to be of any importance in this case [in deciding whether the death penalty is appropriate]?"* was found to be a "stake-out" question in State v. Womble, 343 N.C. 667, 682 473 S.E.2d 291, 299 (1996).

Aggravating Circumstances:

The Supreme Court has held that **questions about a specific aggravating circumstance that will arise in the case amounts to a stake–out question**. State v. Richmond, 347 N.C. 412, 424, 495 S.E.2d 677 (1998)(*"could you still consider mitigating circumstances knowing that the defendant had a prior first-degree murder conviction"*); State v. Fletcher, 354 N.C. 455, 465-66 (2001)(in a re-sentencing in which

the first-degree murder conviction was accompanied by a burglary conviction, counsel asked, the State has *"to prove at least one aggravating factor, that is…the fact that the murder was part of a burglary. That's true in this case because [the defendant] was also convicted of burglary. Knowing that about this case, could you still consider a life sentence…?"*)

Cost of Life Sentence vs. Death Sentence

In State v. Elliott, 360 N.C. 400, 409-10 (2006), the Supreme Court held that "we cannot say that the trial court clearly abused its discretion" when it did not allow defense counsel to ask, *"Do you have any preconceived notions about the costs of executing someone compared to the cost of keeping him in prison for the rest of his life."* The Supreme Court admitted that the question was "relevant" but, in light of the inquiry the trial court allowed, it was not a clear abuse of discretion to disallow the question. See also, State v. Cummings, 361 N.C. 438, 465 (2007). On the other hand, a trial court may reverse its previous denial and allow the "costs" question. State v. Polke, 361 N.C. 65, 68 (2006).

Course of Conduct Aggravator (or Multiple Murders):

Prosecutor was not staking out juror when asking: *"If the State satisfied you... that the aggravating circumstances were sufficiently substantial to call for the imposition of the death penalty, then I take it you could give the defendant the death penalty for beating two humans to death with a hammer, is that correct?"* State v Laws, 325 N.C. 81 (1989).

Felony Murder Defined:

Prosecutor properly defined felony murder as *"a killing which occurs during the commission of a violent felony, such as _____"* (the felony in this case was discharging a firearm into an occupied vehicle). State v. Nobles, 350 N.C. 483, 498, 515 S.E.2d 885, 895 (1999).

Forecast of Aggravating or Mitigating Circumstance(s):

In State v Payne, 328 N.C. 377, 391 (1991), the defendant argued it was improper for the prosecutor to forecast to the jury during voir dire that they might consider HAC as an aggravating factor. The Court found no error and stated: **[I]t is permissible for a prosecutor during voir dire to state briefly what he or she anticipates the evidence may show,** provided the statements are made in good faith and are reasonably grounded in the evidence available to the prosecutor.

A defendant is not entitled to put on a mini-trial of his evidence during voir dire by using hypothetical situations to determine whether a juror would cast his vote for his theory. The trial court in Cummings **allowed defense counsel to question prospective jurors about whether they had been personally involved** in any of those situations [such as domestic violence, child abuse, and alcohol and drug abuse], however, the judge **properly refused to allow defense counsel to ask hypothetical and speculative questions** that were being used to try the mitigation evidence during jury selection. State v. Cummings, 361 N.C. 438, 464-65 (2007).

Foster Care:

It was proper to ask, *Whether any jurors have had any experience with foster care?* Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 S.E.2d 191, 205 (1995).

Gender of Defendant [or Victim?]:

The prosecutor properly asked, *"Would the fact that the Defendant is a female in any way affect your deliberations with regard to the death penalty?"* This was not a stake-out question. It was appropriate to inquire into the possible sensitivities of prospective jurors toward a female defendant facing the death penalty in an effort to ferret out any prejudice arising out of defendant's gender. State v. Anderson, 350 N.C. 152, 170-171, 513 S.E.2d 296, 307-308 (1999).

HAC Aggravator:

In State v Payne, 328 N.C. 377, 391 (1991), the defendant argued it was improper for the prosecutor to forecast to the jury during voir dire that they might consider HAC as an aggravating factor. The Court found no error and stated: [I]t is permissible for a prosecutor during voir dire to state briefly what he or she anticipates the evidence may show, provided the statements are made in good faith and are reasonably grounded in the evidence available to the prosecutor.

Impaired Capacity (f)(6):

Could the juror consider impaired capacity due to intoxication by drugs or alcohol as a mitigating circumstance and give the evidence such weight as you believe it is due ? Would your feelings about drugs or alcohol prevent you from considering the evidence ? State v Smith, 328 N.C. 99, 127 (1991). (See, where Court found that the following was a stake-out question: *"How many of you think that drug abuse is irrevelant to punishment in this case."* State v. Ball, 344 N.C. 290, 304, 474 S.E.2d 345, 353 (1996).

Prosecuting attorney asked the jurors, *"If they would consider that the defendant voluntarily consumed alcohol in determining whether the defendant was entitled to diminished capacity mitigating factor.* The Supreme Court stated: "This was a proper question. He did not attempt to stake the jury out as to what their answer would be on a hypothetical question." State v. Reeves, 337 N.C. 700 (1994).

It was proper for prosecutor to ask prospective jurors whether they would be sympathetic toward a defendant who was intoxicated at the time of the offense. (*If it is shown to you from the evidence and beyond a reasonable doubt that the defendant was intoxicated at the time of the alleged shooting, would this cause you to have sympathy for him and allow that sympathy to affect your verdict.*) State v McKoy, 323 N.C. 1 (1988).

Lessened Juror Responsibility:

In closing argument and during jury selection, **it is improper for a prosecutor to make statements that lessens the jury's role or responsibility** in imposing a potential death penalty **or lessens the seriousness or reality of a death sentence**. State v. Hines, 286 N.C. 377, 381-86, 211 S.E.2d 201 (1975) (reversible error for the prosecutor to tell a

prospective juror, *"to ease your feelings [about imposing the death penalty], I might say…that one [person] has been put to death in N.C. since 1961"*; State v. White, 286 N.C. 395, 211 S.E.2d 445 (1975), State v. Jones, 296 N.C. 495, 497-502 (1979) (it is error for *a prosecutor to suggest that the appellate process or executive clemency will correct any errors in a jury's verdict*); State v. Jones, 296 N.C. at 501-502 (prosecutor improperly discussed how *15A-2000(d) provides for an automatic appeal and how the Supreme Court must overturn a death sentence if it makes certain findings*. This had the effect of minimizing in the jurors' minds their role in recommending a death sentence).

Life Sentence (Without Parole):

During jury selection, a prospective juror indicated that he did not feel that a life sentence actually meant life (prior to LWOP statute). The trial court then instructed the jury that they should consider a life sentence to mean that defendant would be imprisoned for life and that they should not take the possibility of parole into account in reaching a verdict. The juror indicated that he would have trouble following that instruction and was excused for cause. Defense counsel requested that he be allowed to ask the other prospective jurors whether they could follow the court's instructions on parole. The trial court erroneously refused to allow the question. The Supreme Court held that **the defendant has a right to inquire as to whether a prospective juror will follow the court's instruction (i.e., life means life).** State v Jones, 336 N.C. 229, 239-40 (1994).

In several cases, the Supreme Court has upheld the refusal to allow defense counsel to ask about jurors' *"understanding of the meaning of a sentence of life without parole", "conceptions of the parole eligibility of a defendant serving a life sentence", or their feelings about whether the death penalty is more or less harsh that life in prison without parole."* State v. Neal, 346 N.C. 608, 617-18 (1997); State v. Jones, 358 N.C. 330 (2004); State v. Garcell, 363 N.C. 10, 30-32 (2009). These decisions were based on the principle that a defendant does not have the constitutional right to question the venire about parole. State v. Neal, 346 N.C. at 617.

In light of this, a safe inquiry might avoid the topic of "parole" and simply ask jurors about "their views of a life sentence for first-degree murder."

Another safe inquiry might be based on 15A-2002 which provides that "the judge shall instruct the jury…that a sentence of life imprisonment means a sentence of life without parole." There is no doubt that the jury will hear this instruction and, generally, the parties should be allowed to inquire whether jurors hold misconceptions that will affect their ability to "follow the law." **"Questions designed to measure a prospective juror's ability to follow the law are proper within the context of jury selection voir dire."** See, State v. Jones, 347 N.C. 193, 203 (1997), *citing* State v. Price, 326 N.C. 56, 66-67, 388 S.E.2d 84, 89, *vacated on other grounds*, 498 U.S. 802 (1990); State v. Henderson, 155 N.C.App. 719, 727 (2003)

A juror's misperception about a life sentence with no possibility of parole may substantially impair his or her ability to follow the law. Uttecht v. Brown, 551 U.S. 1, 127 S.Ct. 2218, 167 L.Ed.2d 1014 (2007). In Uttecht, despite a juror being informed four

or five times that a life sentence meant "life imprisonment without the possibility of parole," the juror continued to say that he would support the death penalty if the defendant would be released to re-offend. That juror was properly removed for cause. 167 L.E.d2d at 1025-30.

In a pre-LWOP case, the prosecutor improperly argued that the defendant could be paroled in 20 years if the jury awarded him a life sentence. The Supreme Court stated that, **"The jury's sentence recommendation should be based solely on their balancing the aggravating and mitigating factors before them. The possibility of parole is not such a factor, and it has no place in the jury's recommendation of their sentence to be imposed."** State v. Jones, 296 N.C. 495, 502-503 (1979). This principle might provide authority for inquiring into jurors' erroneous beliefs about parole to determine if they can follow the law.

Mental or Emotional Disturbance:

If the court instructs you that you should consider whether or not a person is suffering from mental or emotional disturbance in deciding whether or not to give someone the death penalty, do you feel like you could follow the instruction? State v Skipper, 337 N.C. 1, 20 (1994)).

The following were proper mental health related questions as found in Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 S.E.2d 191, 205 (1995):

1) *Whether the jurors had any background or experience with mental problems in their families ?*

2) *Whether the jurors have any bias against or problem with any mental health professionals ?*

Murder During Felony Aggravator (e)(5):

Prosecutor informed jury about aggravating factors and indicated that the State *is relying upon...the capital felony was committed while the defendant was engaged, or was an aider and abettor in the commission of, or attempt to commit...any homicide, robbery, rape....* Supreme Court said that the prosecutor during jury voir dire should limit reference to aggravating factors, including the underlying felonies listed in G.S. 15A-2000(e)(5), to those of which there will be evidence and upon which the prosecutor intends to rely. Payne, 328 N.C. 377 (1991)

No Significant Criminal Record:

The following question was deemed improper as hypothetical and an impermissible attempt to indoctrinate a juror: *"Would the fact that the defendant had no significant history of any criminal record, would that be something that you would consider important in determining whether or not to impose the death penalty?"* State v. Davis, 325 N.C. 607, 386 S.E.2d 418 (1989).

Personal Strength to Vote for Death:

Prosecutor asked: *"Are you strong enough to recommend the death penalty ?"*

State v Smith, 328 N.C. 99, 128 (1991). This repeated inquiry by prosecutor is not an attempt to see how jurors would be inclined to vote on a given state of facts. State v. Fleming, 350 N.C. 109, 125, 512 S.E.2d 720, 732 (1999).

Prosecutors were allowed to ask jurors *"whether they possessed the intestinal fortitude [or "courage", or "backbone"] to vote for a sentence of death."* When jurors equivocated on the imposition of the death penalty, prosecutors were allowed to ask these questions to determine whether they could comply with the law. State v. Murrell, 362 N.C. 375, 389-91 (2008); State v. Oliver, 309 N.C. 326, 355 (1983); State v. Flippen, 349 N.C. 264, 275 (1998); State v. Hinson, 310 N.C. 245, 252 (1984).

Religious Beliefs:

The defendant's "right of inquiry" includes "the right to make appropriate inquiry concerning a prospective juror's moral or religious scruples, morals, beliefs and attitudes toward capital punishment." State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 337, 215 S.E.2d 60, 69 (1975), death sentence vacated, 428 U.S. 902, 49 L.Ed.2d 1206 (1976). The issue is whether the prospective juror's religious views would impair his ability to follow the law. State v. Fletcher, 354 N.C. 455, 467 (2001). This right of inquiry does not extend to all aspects of the jurors' private lives or of their religious beliefs. State v. Laws, 325 N.C. 81, 109, 381 S.E.2d 609, 625 (1989).

General questions about the effect of a juror's religious views on his ability to follow the law are favored over detailed questions about Biblical concepts or doctrines. It was held improper to ask about a juror's *"understanding of the Bible's teachings on the death penalty."* State v. Mitchell, 353 N.C. 309, 318, 543 S.E.2d 830, 836 (2001). The Defendant, however, was allowed to ask the juror about her religious affiliation and whether any teachings of her church would interfere with her ability to perform her duties as a juror. In State v. Laws, 325 N.C. 81, 109, 381 S.E.2d 609, 625-626 (1989), sentence vacated on other grounds, 494 U.S. 1022, 110 S.Ct. 1465, 108 L.Ed.2d 603 (1990), the trial court did not abuse its discretion by not allowing defense counsel to ask a juror *"whether she believed in a literal interpretation of the Bible."*

In State v. Fletcher, 354 N.C. 455, 467, 555 S.E.2d 534, 542 (2001), defense counsel was allowed to inquire into a juror's religious affiliation and his activities with a Bible distributing group, but the trial court properly disallowed the question, whether the juror is a person *"who believes in the Biblical concept of an eye for an eye."* On the other hand, another trial court did not allow counsel to ask questions about jurors' *"church affiliations and the beliefs espoused by others [about the death penalty] representing their churches."* State v. Anderson, 350 N.C. 152, 171-172, 513 S.E.2d 296, 308 (1999).

Sympathy for the Defendant [or the Victim?]:

An inquiry into the sympathies of prospective jurors is part of the exercise of (the prosecutor's) right to secure an unbiased jury. State v. Anderson, 350 N.C. 152, 170-171, 513 S.E.2d 296, 307-308 (1999). (Arguably, the same right applies to the defendant.)

Prosecutor properly asked, "*Would you feel sympathy towards the defendant simply because you would see him here in court each day…?"* Jurors may consider a defendant's demeanor in recommending a sentence. The question did not "stake out" jurors so that they could not consider the defendant's appearance and humanity. The question did not address definable qualities of the defendant's appearance and demeanor. It addressed jurors' feelings toward the defendant, notwithstanding his courtroom appearance or behavior. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328, 346-347.

LIST OF CASES

Federal Courts

Adams v. Texas, 448 U.S. 38, 100 S.Ct. 2521, 65 L.Ed.2d 581 (1980)
Eddings v Oklahoma, 455 U.S. 104 (1982)
Lockett v. Ohio, 438 U.S. 586, 98 S.Ct. 2954, 57 L.Ed.2d 973 (1978)
Lockhart v. McCree, 476 U.S. 162, 106 S.Ct. 1758, 90 L.Ed.2d 137 (1986)
Morgan v. Illinois, 504 U.S. 719, 112 S.Ct. 2222, 119 L.Ed.2d 492 (1992)
Mu'min v. Virginia, 500 U.S. 415, 111 U.S. 1899, 114 L.Ed.2d 493 (1991)
Penry v. Lynaugh, 109 S.Ct. 2934 (1988)
Rosales-Lopez v. United States, 451 U.S. 182, 101 S.Ct. 1629, 68 L.Ed.2d 22 (1981)
Turner v. Murray, 476 U.S. 28, 106 S.Ct. 1783, 90 L.Ed.2d 27 (1986)
Wainwright v. Witt, 469 U.S. 412, 105 S.Ct. 844, 83 L.Ed.2d 841 (1985)
Witherspoon v. Illinois, 391 U.S. 510, 88 S.Ct. 1770, 20 L.Ed.2d 776 (1968)
Woodsen v North Carolina, 428 U.S. 280 (1976)
United States v. Jackson, 542 F.2d 403 (7th Cir. 1976)
United States v. Robinson, 475 F.2d 376 (D.C. Cir. 1973)
United States v. Johnson, 366 F.Supp. 2d 822 (N.D. Iowa 2005)
Uttecht v. Brown, 551 U.S. 1, 127. S.Ct. 2218, 167 L.Ed.2d 1014 (2007)

North Carolina Courts

State v. Anderson, 350 N.C. 152, 513 S.E.2d 296 (1999)
State v. Avery, 315 N.C. 1, 337 S.E.2d 786 (1985) (note 6-7)
State v. Ball, 344 N.C. 290, 474 S.E.2d 345 (1996)
State v. Blankenship, 337 N.C. 543, 447 S.E.2d 727 (1994) (note 2)
State v Bond, 345 N.C. 1, 478 S.E.2d 163 (1996)
State v. Brogden, 334 N.C. 39, 430 S.E.2d 905 (1993) (notes 1-2)
State v. Burr, 341 N.C. 263, 285-86 (1995)
State v. Call, 353 N.C. 400, 545 S.E.2d 190 (2001)
State v. Chapman, 359 N.C. 328 (2005) (note 2)
State v. Cheek, 351 N.C. 48, 520 S.E.2d 545 (1999)
State v Clark, 319 N.C. 215 (1987)
State v. Conner, 335 N.C. 618, 440 S.E.2d 826 (1994) (notes 1-4, 7-9, 19-21)
State v. Cummings, 361 N.C. 438, 457-58 (2007)
State v. Cunningham, 333 N.C. 744, 429 S.E.2d 718 (1993)
State v. Davis, 325 N.C. 607, 386 S.E.2d 418 (1989) (notes 5, 8)
State v. Denny, 294 N.C. 294, 240 S.E.2d 437 (1978) (note 1)

State v Edwards, 27 N.C. App. 369 (1975)
State v. Elliott, 344 N.C. 242, 475 S.E.2d 202 (1996)
State v. Elliott, 360 N.C. 400, 628 S.E.2d 735 (2006)
State v. Fleming, 350 N.C. 109, 512 S.E.2d 720 (1999)
State v. Fletcher, 354 N.C. 455, 555 S.E.2d 534 (2001)
State v. Garcell, 363 N.C. 10 (2009)
State v. Gell, 351 N.C. 192 (2000)
State v. Gibbs, 335 NC 1, 436 SE2d 321 (1993), cert. denied, 129 L.Ed.2d 881 (1994)
State v. Green, 336 N.C. 142, 161 (1994)
State v Hatfeld, 128 N.C. App. 294 (1998)
State v Hedgepath, 66 N.C. App. 390 (1984)
State v. Henderson, 155 N.C. App. 719, 724-727 (2003)
State v Hightower, 331 N.C. 636 (1992)
State v. Hines, 286 N.C. 377, 381-86, 211 S.E.2d 201 (1975)
State v. Johnson, __ N.C.App. __, 706 S.E.2d. 790 (2011)
State v. Jones, 296 N.C. 495, 497-502 (1979)
State v Jones, 336 N.C. 229 (1994)
State v. Jones, 347 N.C. 193, 491 S.E.2d 641 (1997)
State v. Jones, 358 N.C. 330 (2004)
State v. Laws, 325 N.C. 81, 381 S.E.2d 609 (1989), sentence vacated on other grounds, 494 U.S. 1022, 110 S.Ct. 1465, 108 L.Ed.2d 603 (1990)
State v Leonard, 295 N.C. 58 (1978)
State v. Maness, 363 N.C. 261 (2009)
State v. McKinnon, 328 N.C. 668, 675-76, 403 S.E.2d 474 (1991)
State v McKoy, 323 N.C. 1 (1988)
State v. Mitchell, 353 N.C. 309, 543 S.E.2d 830 (2001)
State v. Murrell, 362 N.C. 375 (1008)
State v. Neal, 346 N.C. 608, 487 S.E.2d 734 (1998)
State v. Nobles, 350 N.C. 483, 515 S.E.2d 885 (1999)
State v. Parks, 324 N.C. 420, 378 S.E.2d 785 (1989) (notes 1-2)
State v. Payne, 328 N.C. 377 (1991)
State v. Phillips, 300 N.C. 678, 268 S.E.2d 452 (1980) (note 1)
State v. Polke, 361 N.C. 65 (2006)
State v Reaves, 337 N.C. 700 (1994)
State v. Richmond, 347 N.C. 412, 424, 495 S.E.2d 677 (1998)
State v. Roberts, 135 N.C. App. 690, 522 S.E.2d 130 (1999)
State v Robinson, 339 N.C. 263 (1994)
State v. Rogers, 316 N.C. 203, 341 S.E.2d 713 (1986) (note 12)
State v Skipper, 337 N.C. 1 (1994)
State v. Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 426 S.E.2d 191 (1995) (notes 1-10)
State v Smith, 328 N.C. 99 (1991)
State v. Taylor, 332 N.C. 372, 420 S.E.2d 414 (1992) (note 10)
State v. Teague, 134 N.C. App. 702 (1999)
State v Thomas, 294 N.C. 105 (1978)
State v. Vinson, 287 N.C. 326, 215 S.E.2d 60 (1975), death penalty vacated, 428 U.S. 902, 49 L.Ed.2d 1206 (1976) (notes 2-10)

State v. Ward, 354 N.C. 231, 555 S.E.2d 251 (2001)
State v. Washington, 283 N.C. 175, 195 S.E.2d 534 (1973) (note 7)
State v. White, 286 N.C. 395, 211 S.E.2d 445 (1975)
State v. Wiley, 355 N.C. 592 (2002)
State v Williams, 41 N.C. App. 287, disc. rev. denied, 297 N.C. 699 (1979)
State v Willis, 332 N.C. 151 (1992)
State v. Womble, 343 N.C. 667, 473 S.E.2d 291 (1996)

It Starts With You:
Combatting Biases in the Courtroom

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

1

The Unspeakable

We all have at least one of the following two unspeakable flaws:

- You are racist
- You are classist

*Let's sit with that hard truth for a second

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

2

Good News...

The unspeakables DO NOT have to dictate how you practice law if you practice the following exercises every single day.

- **Acceptance**
- **Be intentional and deliberate**
- **Be self aware**

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

3

Remember Your Inner Atticus Finch

- Write down why you became a lawyer.
- Remember what you wrote.
- Read it…often

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

4

Everybody is somebody's BABY

- Talk to your clients like they are YOUR family member.
- Represent your clients like Big Mama/Nana is watching.
- See your client in the best possible light.

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

5

Invest in Building Trust

- Ground yourself in their world
- Listen more than you talk
- Don't judge their life
- Get to know them
- Believe them
- Learn street code
- Be honest.

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

6

Shake Off Courthouse Culture

- Put 12 in the box
- Request bond reductions
- Don't abandon them
- Communicate with family
- Translate
- Cops lie

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

7

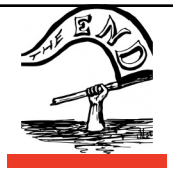
Advice From a DA

- Know the facts and the law
- Demand discovery
- Develop mitigation in every case

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

8

Parting Thoughts



- When you stop being outraged by injustice...leave.
- Advocates can say and do what you cannot.
- SELF CARE is necessary.

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

9

Contact:
Dawn Blagrove, Executive Director
dawn@cjpcenter.org
919-607-3217
Emancipatenc.org

Questions???????

EMANCIPATE
A Carolina Justice Policy Center Project

10

GUIDE TO WORKING WITH EXPERTS

- **PRELIMINARY CONSIDERATIONS**

    - Review your case, client's records (medical, educational, etc.), and discovery prior to contacting experts. This will help you determine exactly what type of expert assistance is needed and have a more productive conversation with an expert.
    - Do not engage a mental health expert before obtaining substantial social history records unless the client is floridly psychotic upon you entry into the case. See IDS Policy on the Effective Use of Mental Health Experts in Potentially Capital Cases.
    - Educate yourself on the issues. Consult the IDS Forensics website for information on topics of forensic science, such as DNA, firearms, fingerprints, death investigation, etc. Scholarly articles are available such as Google Scholar and PubMed.
    - Do you need an expert?
        - Is the forensic evidence adverse to the defense theory of the case?
        - Do you need evidence re-tested?
        - Are you critiquing the state's testing of the evidence?
        - Even if the State is not using an expert, consider whether there are affirmative uses of experts that would support your theory of the case, such as crime scene experts, use of force experts, or mental health experts.

- **FINDING AN EXPERT:**

    - Don't wait until the last minute – your desired expert may not be available. Any expert will need time to review your case prior to forming an opinion.
    - Consider consulting with Sarah Olson, Forensic Resource Counsel or the Elaine Gordon, Trial Resource Counsel for additional ideas about what type of expert to use.
    - Know what particular expertise you need before you start making phone calls: i.e., rather than looking for a "DNA expert," consider whether you need an expert on DNA mixtures, an expert who can challenge contamination, or an expert who can challenge the statistical computation.
    - Consider the role of the expert: Do you need an expert to assist in evaluating the quality of the evidence? To explain the science to you or to the jury? Do you need an expert to develop mitigation evidence or to establish a defense such as self-defense or diminished capacity? Will assistance require access to a laboratory? Can a professor or academic fulfill the role or do you need a practicing analyst or scientist? Is the expert willing to testify?

- **RESEARCH THE EXPERT:**

    - You should research your potential expert as thoroughly as you would research a State's witness that you are preparing to cross-examine.
    - Review their CV. Do not assume that just because the expert has been used frequently that he/she has been properly vetted.
    - Utilize disciplinary boards if available. If an expert lists a particular license or certification, see if that organization posts disciplinary information online.
    - Ask the expert about any certifications or professional qualifications attempted—has the expert taken any certification exams or other professional exams that he/she has not passed? This website can be used to check to see whether an MD is certified in a particular specialty.
    - Seek references on listserves, with the IDS Forensic Resource Counsel, NACDL Resource Center, American Academy of Forensic Sciences (AAFS), other lawyers, other experts and competitors, universities, and publicly-funded laboratories.
    - Search LexisNexis and/or Westlaw for cases in which the expert testified.
    - Additional information on how to research an expert online is available here.

- **GUIDE TO YOUR FIRST CONVERSATION WITH EXPERT**

    - Be able to explain to the expert what work you need performed, including specific referral questions you would like addressed if working with a mental health expert. Never ask a mental health expert simply to "evaluate" your client without providing specific guidance. Do not assume that the expert already knows what constitutes a potential defense or mitigating factor. Sometimes an expert who has not received proper guidance will tell an attorney that his or her evaluation has turned up nothing useful, when in fact the expert simply does not have the legal expertise to know what is useful and what is not.
    - Get the expert to provide you with a copy of his/her CV.
    - Discuss with the expert anticipated hours of work needed, any re-testing needed, any travel required in order to prepare a request for adequate funding. Discuss AOC's rate schedule (see p. 2) and prepare justification if the expert requires a deviation from the rate schedule.
    - Discuss any potential conflicts with the expert due to co-defendants, scheduling, or any other professional or personal matter that would adversely affect the expert's work/testimony in the case.
    - Verify that your expert will be able to testify. Do not assume that testimony will not be needed or promise your expert that testimony will not be needed.
    - Your expert will need lab reports and the underlying data in order to analyze the evidence.
    - Communication

- Can they explain their conclusions clearly and understandably?
- Consider non-verbal communication: arrogance, bias, appearing defensive, organized, prepared, etc.

- Considerations to discuss with expert(s)
  - Position currently held.
  - Description of the subject matter of the expert's specialty.
  - Specializations within that field.
  - What academic degrees are held and from where and when obtained.
  - Specialized degrees and training.
  - Licensing in field, and in which state(s).
  - Length of time licensed.
  - Length of time practicing in this field.
  - Board certified as a specialist in this field.
  - Length of time certified as a specialist.
  - If certifications/proficiency tests/etc have been attempted, history of results.
  - Positions held since completion of formal education, and length of time in each position.
  - Duties and function of current position.
  - Length of time at current position.
  - Specific employment, duties, and experiences (optional).
  - Teaching or lecturing in the relevant field, dates and location of teaching.
  - Publications in this field and titles.
  - Membership in professional societies/associations/organizations, and special positions in them.
  - Requirements for membership and advancement within each of these organizations.
  - Honors, acknowledgments, and awards received by expert in the field.
  - Who is considered "the best" in the field?
  - Number of times testimony has been given in court as an expert witness in this field. (Case names and transcripts, if available.)
  - How has the expert's testimony been treated in the past? Did the expert appear balanced, knowledgeable, and credible? Has the expert ever not been qualified as an expert? Why?
  - Availability for consulting to any party, state agencies, law enforcement agencies, defense attorneys.

BY SARAH RACKLEY OLSON | OCTOBER 14, 2014 · 9:22 AM | EDIT

What is in a State Crime Laboratory Lab Report?

Many attorneys have asked me what should be included in a lab report from the State Crime Lab. Often in District Court DWI cases or through discovery, defense attorneys receive only a 1-2 page report called a Lab Report. For each case that is analyzed by the State Crime Laboratory, the lab produces a Case Record in Forensic Advantage (FA), the lab's electronic information management system. The Case Record contains many items, including the lab report, chain of custody information, analyst CV, and information about tests performed. Under N.C. Gen. Stat. 15A-903, the lab provides this Case Record to the prosecution for disclosure to the defendant through discovery. If attorneys do not receive complete lab reports, they should request the items described below through discovery. This information is also available on the IDS Forensic website.

How are reports accessed by the District Attorney's Office?

When the lab has completed its analysis and finalized its report, an email is automatically sent to the District Attorney's office and the law enforcement agency that requested the analysis, notifying them that the Case Record is available. These offices can access the Case Record using a web-based program called FA Web. There are legal assistants or victim-witness coordinators in each DA's office who are trained to use FA Web. They can access the Case Records using the emailed link (which remains active for seven days after the email is sent), or they can search for the report within FA Web even after the email link has expired. Some ADAs and DAs may also be trained in using FA Web, but typically it is a legal assistant who accesses the FA Web and downloads the Case Records.

Many defense attorneys are surprised to learn that a full Case Record is produced by the lab and sent to the DA's office for each case that is worked, including District Court cases. Depending on whether they have been trained in the use of FA Web, ADAs may or may not know that the lab provides complete Case Records for each case worked, but the legal assistant in their office who is trained to use FA Web can access these full reports.

How long has this system been in place?

FA was adopted by the lab in 2008 as the lab's electronic information management system. Since 2011, the lab has been providing Case Records to DA's offices through FA Web. Since June 2013, DA's offices have had the option to download and print partial "Ad Hoc" lab reports instead of printing the full Case Record.

What is included in a Case Record Full Packet?

The "Case Record Full Packet" may be downloaded as one zip file or portions of the Case Record may be

downloaded separately. **The Table of Contents is the most important page for a defense attorney to review in order to determine if the complete packet has been provided through discovery.** If items of evidence were analyzed in more than one section of the lab, each lab section will complete a separate Case Record for its analysis and Case Records will be numbered consecutively (for example, Record #1 may be from Trace Evidence, Record #2 may be from Forensic Biology and DNA, etc.) Some Case Records may not be needed once created, such as when an examination is redundant with another Case Record. These will be listed as "Terminated."

The main PDF in the zip file Case Record Full Packet contains the Table of Contents. The Table of Contents will specify if it is a Case Record (Full), Ad Hoc or Officer. If an attorney sees on the Table of Contents that the packet is an Ad Hoc or Officer packet, the attorney will know that there were additional items provided by the lab that have not been provided to the defense. If the DA's office downloads the Case Record Full Packet the entire packet will be paginated consecutively and state the total number of pages, such as Page 1 of 200. If only a partial Ad Hoc packet is downloaded, the portion that is downloaded will be paginated, such as Page 1 of 10.

The Case Record Full Packet will include the following items (though not necessarily in this order):

- **Table of Contents** – lists all items included in the main PDF file of the "Case Record Full Packet" as well as additional items that are sent as separate files. Every packet (including partial Ad Hoc packets) that is downloaded from FA Web will have a Table of Contents. This Table of Contents has been annotated to describe its various parts. These links show sample Table of Contents for Digital Evidence (Audio Video and Computer), Drug Chemistry, Firearms, Toolmarks, Forensic Biology (Blood, DNA, and Semen) Latent Evidence (Footwear-Tire and Latent), Toxicology, and Trace Evidence (Arson,Explosives, Fiber, Glass, GSR, Hair, Paint, and Trace). Beneath each item listed in the Table of Contents will be an indented description of this item. Often the "description" just repeats the name of the document. Attorneys should know that indented description is not a separate or duplicate item, but is intended to describe the item listed above. The lab plans to remove the descriptions when it upgrades the FA Web program as they are mainly duplicative of the document name.
- **Lab Report** – a 1-2 page document that states the analyst's conclusions. It will not identify what test was performed or how the analyst reached her conclusions. This is the notarized document that is found in the court file in District Court DWI cases. Many attorneys think this is the only report that the lab produces, but it is just one part of the entire Case Record that the lab produces for each case.
- **Case Report** – several pages that list the names of the analysts who performed the analysis and reviewed the case. If any problem is found when the case is reviewed by another analyst, the problem will be briefly described in this section in a written dialogue between the analysts.
- **Chain of Custody** – shows the chain of custody of the item of evidence within the lab.
- **Request for Examination of Physical Evidence** – a copy of the form that law enforcement submits to request that an item be analyzed by the lab.
- **Worksheets** – as the analyst works, she records which test is performed and her observations, measurements, and results using an electronic form on her computer. The Lab Worksheets are printouts of these electronic forms. The Lab Worksheets are one place to look to see what tests were performed.
- **Quality Control/Quality Assurance and sample preparation documentation** – this documentation will vary depending on the type of analysis completed, but many analyses will have documentation of calibration curves, positive and negative controls, instrument set-up, sample

preparation, instrument results, etc. Attorneys can consult with Sarah Olson, their own expert, or the lab analyst for an explanation of these case-specific items.

- **Communication Log** – includes details of case-related phone conversations, including communications from law enforcement, prosecutors, and defense attorneys, if any such communications occurred. If communication has occurred by e-mail or memo, the e-mail or memo will be provided as part of the main PDF file in the Case Record Full Packet.
- **CV of Analyst(s)**
- **Messages Report** – these are messages that can be sent from external users to the State Crime Lab via the FA system, such as rush requests or stop work orders. Analysts can also send messages to each other through the FA system that will be recorded here.
- **Publish History and Packet History** – if this is the first publication of the packet, it will be noted here. If this is a subsequent publication of the packet, any information on previous publications, including downloads by FA Web users, will be listed.

Several additional items also make up the Case Record Full Packet. These items are listed in the Table of Contents but are not paginated with the previous documents.

- **Prior Versions of Worksheets and Lab Reports** – various versions of one Worksheet may be saved during analysis as the analyst progresses through her work. If an analyst has to go back and amend something in a completed Worksheet, the previous and new versions will be saved. If an analyst changes something in a Lab Report, the previous and new versions will be saved. These worksheets and reports are paginated separately from the Case Record Full Packet.
- **Worksheet Resources** – a list of all instruments, equipment, chemicals, reagents, kits, and other standards used in the analysis. The document also contains the maintenance history for the equipment and instruments used. This document is paginated.
- **All other items that cannot be made into PDFs, including images and some data files** – images may be printed by the DA's office, but attorneys should request them on a disc for better image quality. Raw data files cannot be printed and require proprietary software to open. Currently raw data files are being provided only in cases where DNA analysis was performed. These files can be opened by an expert who has the appropriate software to read this data.

How do I know if I received all documents that the lab has produced?

There are a number of steps that defense attorneys can take to ensure that they are receiving compete discovery:

1. **Review the Table of Contents** – Attorneys should look for the Table of Contents in the Case Record Full Packet and check to ensure that the type of Case Record that the DA's office downloaded was Full (rather than Ad Hoc) and that all documents listed in the Table of Contents are provided.
2. **Check pagination** – The FA Web system paginates everything that is downloaded. If, for example, only pages 4 and 5 of 200 are provided, the defense attorney will know that she doesn't have a copy of everything that the DA's office downloaded. However, if the DA's office chooses to only download a portion of the packet (Ad Hoc packet) rather than the Case Record Full Packet, only those downloaded pages will be paginated. For example, if the Case Record Full Packet has 200 pages but the DA's office

only downloads the Lab Report which is 2 pages, those pages will be paginated, 1 and 2 of 2.

3. **Request Forensic Advantage notification emails from the DA's office** – Whenever the lab updates a Case Record that has already been sent to the DA's office, FA will send an email notifying the DA's office that there has been a change and specifying which portion of the record is changed. Defense attorneys should request these emails from the DA's office through discovery. The updated Case Record may appear to be a duplicate of the original Case Record that was provided (and may be hundreds of pages long). These emails can help identify which document was changed.
4. **Meet with the ADA** – Defense attorneys may request to meet with the ADA assigned to the case to view all of the documents available on FA Web to ensure that everything has been downloaded and shared through discovery.
5. **Consult with the lab** – After reviewing the discovery and checking that the DA's office has provided everything available in the FA Web program to the defense, defense attorneys may consider scheduling a pre-trial meeting with the lab analyst if questions remain about reports. State Crime Lab analysts are available to meet with defense attorneys prior to trial and will answer questions about the analysis that was performed and what reports/documents were produced in the case. Defense attorneys may contact Lab Legal Counsel Assistant Attorney General Joy Strickland if there are issues with lab discovery that cannot be resolved with the ADA.

Related

Draft Policy Recommendations by the National Commission on Forensic Science
In "Crime Labs"

Meeting with lab analysts and forensic pathologists prior to trial

Where's my lab report?

In "Crime Labs"

Rule 702 – Testimony by Experts

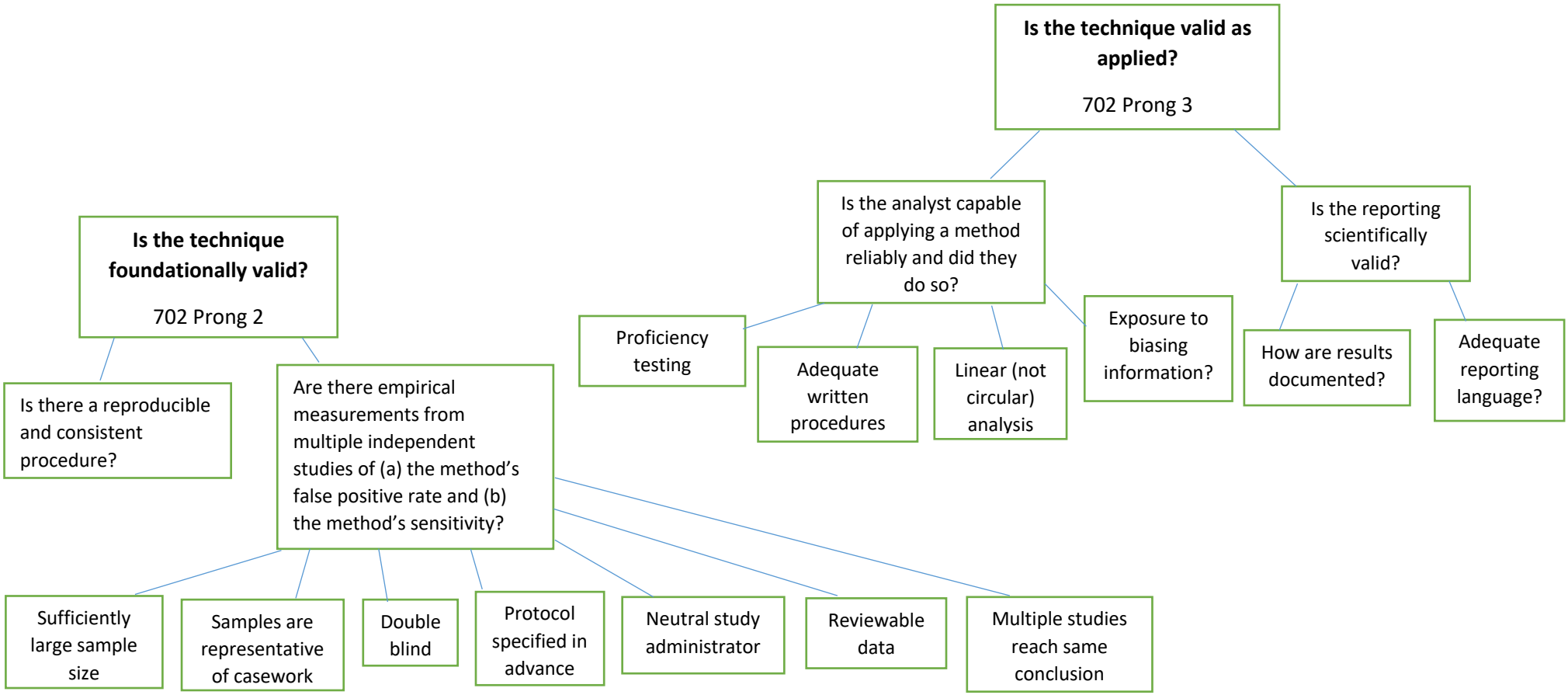
(a) If scientific, technical or other specialized knowledge will assist the trier of fact to understand the evidence or to determine a fact in issue, a witness qualified as an expert by knowledge, skill, experience, training, or education, may testify thereto in the form of an opinion, or otherwise, if all of the following apply:

(1) The testimony is based upon sufficient facts or data.

(2) The testimony is the product of reliable principles and methods.

(3) The witness has applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case.

Roadmap for scientific validity under Rule 702 (prongs 2 and 3)/PCAST Report



CRIMINAL EVIDENCE: EXPERT TESTIMONY

Jessica Smith, UNC School of Government (August 2017)

Table of Contents

I. Introduction. This chapter discusses the admissibility of expert testimony under North Carolina's amended Evidence Rule 702. The 2011 amendments to subsection (a) of the rule adopted the federal standard for the admission of expert testimony, as articulated in *Daubert v. Merrell Dow Pharmaceuticals, Inc.*, 509 U.S. 579 (1993), *General Electric Co. v. Joiner*, 522 U.S. 136 (1997), and *Kumho Tire Co. v. Carmichael*, 526 U.S. 137 (1999). State v. McGrady, 368 N.C. 880, 884 (2016). Before the rule was amended, making North Carolina a "*Daubert* state," the standard for admissibility of expert testimony came from a case called *Howerton v. Arai Helmet, Ltd.*, 358 N.C. 440 (2004). Under both the *Daubert* and *Howerton* tests, the trial court determines admissibility of expert testimony by examining relevancy, qualifications, and reliability. *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 892. However, under the *Daubert* standard the trial court applies a more rigorous reliability analysis. *Id.*; *see also* State v. Turbyfill, ___ N.C. App. ___, 776 S.E.2d 249, 257 (2015) (*Daubert* is a "heightened" standard). In its discussion of the reliability prong of the analysis, this chapter focuses on the new *Daubert* standard.

For discussion of the proper scope of expert testimony in sexual assault cases, see *Evidence Issues in Criminal Cases Involving Child Victims and Child Witnesses* in this Benchbook.

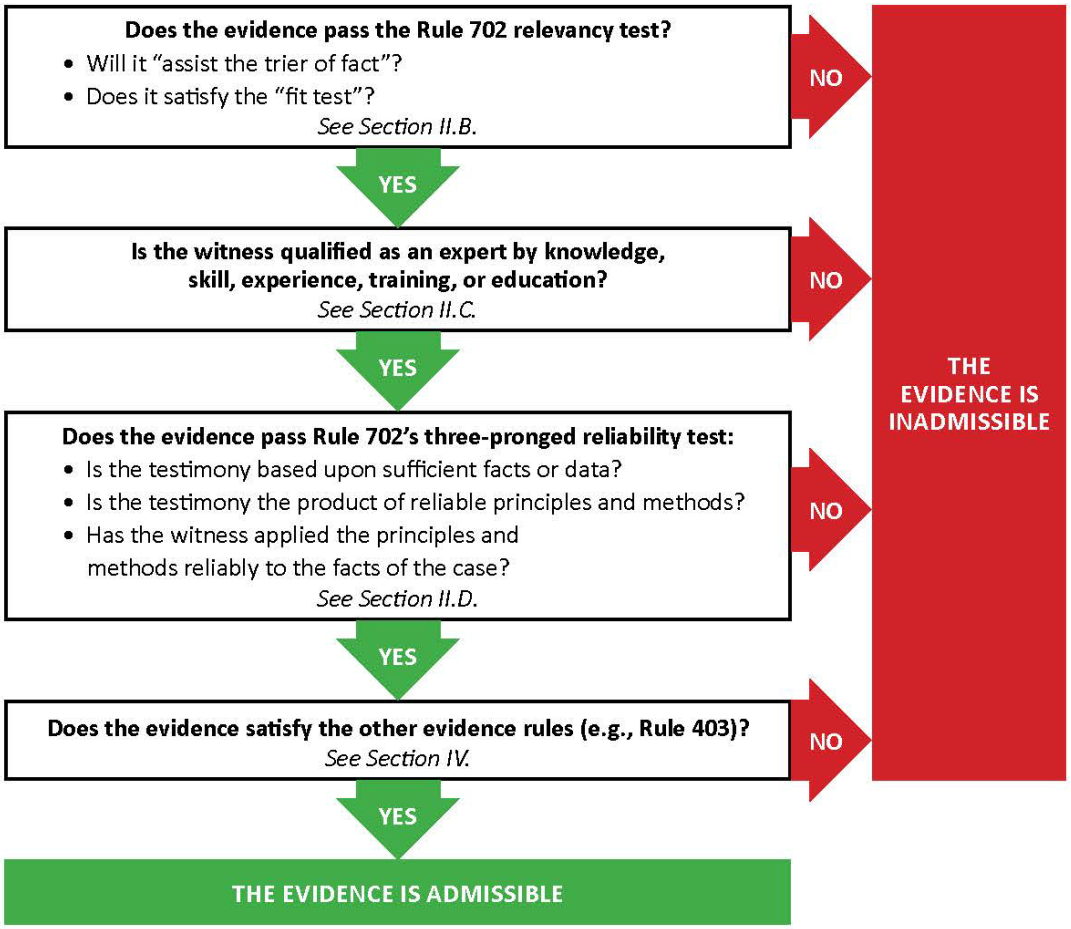
For a discussion of Confrontation Clause issues that can arise with respect to expert testimony, see *Guide to Crawford and the Confrontation Clause* in this Benchbook.

For a discussion of what discovery must be provided in connection with expert witnesses, see *Discovery in Criminal Cases* in this Benchbook.

The text of Rule 702 is set out immediately below.

> Rule 702. Testimony by experts
>
> (a) If scientific, technical or other specialized knowledge will assist the trier of fact to understand the evidence or to determine a fact in issue, a witness qualified as an expert by knowledge, skill, experience, training, or education, may testify thereto in the form of an opinion, or otherwise, if all of the following apply:
>
> (1) The testimony is based upon sufficient facts or data.
>
> (2) The testimony is the product of reliable principles and methods.
>
> (3) The witness has applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case.
>
> (a1) A witness, qualified under subsection (a) of this section and with proper foundation, may give expert testimony solely on the issue of impairment and not on the issue of specific alcohol concentration level relating to the following:
>
> (1) The results of a Horizontal Gaze Nystagmus (HGN) Test when the test is administered by a person who has successfully completed training in HGN.
>
> (2) Whether a person was under the influence of one or more impairing substances, and the category of such impairing substance or substances. A witness who has received training and holds a current certification as a Drug Recognition Expert, issued by the State Department of Health and Human Services, shall be qualified to give the testimony under this subdivision.
>
> *[subsections (b)-(f), dealing with medical malpractice cases, are not reproduced here]*
>
> (g) This section does not limit the power of the trial court to disqualify an expert witness on grounds other than the qualifications set forth in this section.
>
> *[subsection (h), which deals with medical malpractice cases, is not reproduced here]*
>
> (i) A witness qualified as an expert in accident reconstruction who has performed a reconstruction of a crash, or has reviewed the report of investigation, with proper foundation may give an opinion as to the speed of a vehicle even if the witness did not observe the vehicle moving.

Figure 1. Analysis for Determining Admissibility of Expert Testimony



II. Standard for Admissibility under Rule 702(a).

A. Generally. As illustrated in Figure 1 above, Evidence Rule 702(a) sets forth a three-step framework for determining the admissibility of expert testimony: relevance, qualifications, and reliability, where reliability is assessed under the stricter *Daubert* standard rather than the old *Howerton* standard. *See supra* Section I.

1. *Daubert*, *Joiner* & *Kumho Tire*. The "*Daubert* standard" refers to a standard of admissibility laid out by the United States Supreme Court in a trio of cases: *Daubert v. Merrell Dow Pharmaceuticals, Inc.*, 509 U.S. 579 (1993), *General Electric Co. v. Joiner*, 522 U.S. 136 (1997), and *Kumho Tire Co. v. Carmichael*, 526 U.S. 137 (1999). Those three foundational cases are summarized here.

Daubert was a civil case in which children and their parents sued to recover for birth defects allegedly sustained because the mothers had taken Bendectin, a drug marketed by the defendant pharmaceutical company. The defendant moved for summary judgment, arguing that the

drug does not cause birth defects in humans and that the plaintiffs could not present admissible evidence establishing otherwise. The defendant supported its motion with an expert's affidavit concluding that Bendectin has not been shown to be a risk factor for human birth defects. The plaintiffs countered with eight experts; each of whom concluded that Bendectin can cause birth defects. The experts' conclusions were based on animal studies; pharmacological studies purporting to show that Bendectin's chemical structure was similar to that of other substances known to cause birth defects; and the "reanalysis" of previously published human statistical studies. Relying on the "general acceptance" test for admission of scientific evidence formulated in *Frye v. United States*, 293 F. 1013 (1923), the trial court found that because it was not generally accepted as reliable in the relevant scientific community the plaintiffs' expert evidence was inadmissible and granted the defendant's motion for summary judgment. After the Ninth Circuit affirmed, the United States Supreme Court agreed to hear the case, to resolve a split among the courts regarding whether the "general acceptance" test was the proper standard for admission of expert testimony.

The Court began by holding that the *Frye* "general acceptance" test for admission of expert testimony was superseded by the adoption of the Federal Rules of Evidence. Addressing the standard for admissibility under Rule 702, the Court stated that to qualify as "scientific knowledge," an inference or assertion must be derived by the scientific method. 509 U.S. at 590. It explained: "[T]he requirement that an expert's testimony pertain to 'scientific knowledge' establishes a standard of evidentiary reliability." *Id.* The Court continued, noting that Rule 702 "further requires that the evidence or testimony 'assist the trier of fact to understand the evidence or to determine a fact in issue,'" a condition going primarily to relevance. *Id.* at 591. It clarified: "Expert testimony which does not relate to any issue with the case is not relevant and, ergo, non-helpful." *Id.* (quotation omitted). This prong of the admissibility analysis, it noted, has been described as one of "fit." *Id.* It continued:

> Faced with a proffer of expert scientific testimony . . . , the trial judge must determine at the outset, pursuant to Rule 104(a), whether the expert is proposing to testify to (1) scientific knowledge that (2) will assist the trier of fact to understand or determine a fact in issue. This entails a preliminary assessment of whether the reasoning or methodology underlying the testimony is scientifically valid and of whether that reasoning or methodology properly can be applied to the facts in issue.

Id. at 592–93 (footnotes omitted). The Court noted that many factors will bear on the inquiry and that it would not "presume to set out a definitive checklist or test." *Id.* at 593. However, it went on to offer five "general observations" relevant to the analysis:

1. A "key question" is whether the theory or technique can be (and has been) tested. *Id.* ("Scientific methodology . . . is based on generating hypotheses and testing them to see if they can be

falsified; indeed, this methodology is what distinguishes science from other fields of human inquiry" (quotation omitted)).

2. Whether the theory or technique has been subjected to peer review and publication. *Id.* The Court noted that publication (one element of peer review) is not a "sine qua non of admissibility;" publication does not necessarily correlate with reliability, and in some cases well-grounded but innovative theories will not have been published. *Id.* It explained: "Some propositions . . . are too particular, too new, or of too limited interest to be published. But submission to the scrutiny of the scientific community is a component of 'good science,' in part because it increases the likelihood that substantive flaws in methodology will be detected." *Id.* Thus, "[t]he fact of publication (or lack thereof) in a peer reviewed journal . . . will be a relevant, though not dispositive, consideration in assessing the scientific validity of a particular technique or methodology on which an opinion is premised." *Id.* at 594.
3. The theory or technique's known or potential rate of error. *Id.* at 594.
4. The existence and maintenance of standards controlling the technique's operation. *Id.*
5. The "general acceptance" of the theory or technique. *Id.* at 594. The Court explained:

> "A reliability assessment does not require, although it does permit, explicit identification of a relevant scientific community and an express determination of a particular degree of acceptance within that community. Widespread acceptance can be an important factor in ruling particular evidence admissible, and a known technique which has been able to attract only minimal support within the community may properly be viewed with skepticism."

Id. (quotations and citations omitted).

The Court was careful to note that the inquiry to be applied by the trial court in its "gatekeeping role," *id.* at 597, is "a flexible one" in which the focus "must be solely on principles and methodology, not on the conclusions that they generate." *Id.* at 594-95. In the end, the Court remanded for further proceedings consistent with the new test for admissibility. *Id.* at 597-98.

The second case in the *Daubert* trilogy was *Joiner,* another civil case. *Joiner,* 522 U.S. 136. Its main contribution to the trilogy is to establish that a trial court's decision to admit or exclude expert testimony under Federal Rule 702 is reviewed under an abuse of discretion standard and to illustrate application of that standard to a trial court's exclusion of expert testimony. In *Joiner*, an electrician who had lung cancer sued the manufacturer of PCBs and the manufacturers of electrical transformers and dielectric fluid for damages. The plaintiff, who

was a smoker and had a family history of lung cancer, claimed that his exposure on the job to PCBs and their derivatives promoted his cancer. In deposition testimony, the plaintiff's experts opined that his exposure to PCBs was likely responsible for his cancer. The district court found the testimony from these experts to be inadmissible and granted the defendants' motion for summary judgment. The Eleventh Circuit reversed and the Supreme Court granted certiorari.

The Court held that a trial court's decision to admit or exclude expert testimony will be reviewed under an abuse of discretion standard and that here, no abuse of discretion occurred. *Id.* at 143. The plaintiff proffered the deposition testimony of two expert witnesses: (1) Dr. Arnold Schecter, who testified that he believed it "more likely than not that [the plaintiff's] lung cancer was causally linked to cigarette smoking and PCB exposure;" and (2) Dr. Daniel Teitlebaum, who testified that the plaintiff's "lung cancer was caused by or contributed to in a significant degree by the materials with which he worked." *Id.* The defendants asserted that the experts' statements regarding causation were speculation, unsupported by epidemiological studies and based exclusively on isolated studies of laboratory animals. *Id.* The plaintiff responded, claiming that his experts had identified animal studies to support their opinions and directing the court to four epidemiological studies relied upon by his experts. *Id.* at 143-44. The district court had agreed with the defendants that the animal studies did not support the plaintiff's contention that PCB exposure contributed to his cancer. *Id* at 144. The studies involved infant mice that developed cancer after being exposed to massive doses of concentrated PCBs injected directly into their bodies. *Id.* The plaintiff, by contrast, was an adult human whose alleged exposure was far less and in lower concentrations. *Id.* Also, the cancer that the mice developed was different than the plaintiff's cancer, no study demonstrated that adult mice developed cancer after being exposed to PCBs, and no study demonstrated that PCBs lead to cancer in other species. *Id.* The Court concluded: "[t]he studies were so dissimilar to the facts presented in this litigation that it was not an abuse of discretion for the District Court to have rejected the experts' reliance on them." *Id.* at 144-45.

The trial court also had concluded that the epidemiological studies were not a sufficient basis for the experts' opinions. After reviewing the studies, the Court found that they did not sufficiently suggest a link between the increase in lung cancer deaths and exposure to PCBs. *Id.* at 145-46. The Court went on to disagree with the plaintiff's assertion that *Daubert* requires a focus "solely on principles and methodology," not the conclusions that they generate, and that the trial court erred by focusing on the experts' conclusions, stating:

> [C]onclusions and methodology are not entirely distinct from one another. Trained experts commonly extrapolate from existing data. But nothing in either *Daubert* or the Federal Rules of Evidence requires a district court to admit opinion evidence that is connected to existing data only by the ipse dixit of the expert. A court may conclude that there is simply too great an analytical gap between the data and the opinion proffered.

Id. at 146. The Court went on to hold that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by concluding that the studies on which the experts relied were not sufficient to support their conclusions that the plaintiff's exposure to PCBs contributed to his cancer. *Id.* at 146-47.

The final case in the trio was *Kumho Tire,* 526 U.S. 137. It answered a question left open by *Daubert:* Does the *Daubert* standard apply only to "scientific" expert testimony or to all expert testimony, including testimony based on technical or other specialized knowledge? The Court held that the test applies to *all* expert testimony. In *Kumho Tire* the Court also clarified the nature of the *Daubert* inquiry.

In *Kumho Tire,* the plaintiffs brought a products liability action against a tire manufacturer and distributor for injuries sustained when a vehicle tire failed. The plaintiffs rested their case on deposition testimony provided by an expert in tire failure analysis, Dennis Carlson. Carlson's testimony accepted certain background facts about the tire in question, including that it had traveled far; that the tire's tread depth had been worn down to depths that ranged from 3/32 of an inch to zero; and that the tire tread had at least two inadequately repaired punctures. Despite the tire's age and history, Carlson concluded that a defect in the tire's manufacture or design caused the blowout. His conclusion rested on several undisputed premises, including that the tread had separated from the inner carcass and that this "separation" caused the blowout. *Id.* at 143-44. However, his conclusion also rested on several disputed propositions. First, Carlson said that if a separation is not caused by a kind of misuse called "overdeflection" then ordinarily its cause is a tire defect. Second, that if a tire has been subject to sufficient overdeflection to cause a separation, it should reveal certain symptoms, which he identified. Third, that where he does not find at least two such symptoms, he concludes that a manufacturing or design defect caused the separation. Carlson conceded that the tire showed a number of symptoms, but in each instance he found them to be not significant and he explained why he believed they did not reveal overdeflection. He thus concluded that a defect must have caused the blowout.

The defendant moved to exclude Carlson's testimony on the ground his methodology failed Rule 702's reliability requirement. The trial court conducted a *Daubert* reliability analysis and granted the motion to exclude. The Eleventh Circuit reversed, holding that the *Daubert* analysis only applied to scientific evidence. The United States Supreme Court granted certiorari to resolve the question of whether or how *Daubert* applies to expert testimony based not on "scientific" knowledge but on "technical" or "other specialized" knowledge.

The Supreme Court began by holding that the *Daubert* standard applies to all expert testimony, not just scientific testimony. *Id.* at 147-49. It went on to hold that when determining the admissibility of the expert testimony at issue--engineering testimony--the trial court *may* consider the five *Daubert* factors: whether the theory or technique can and has been tested; whether it has been subjected to peer review and publication; the theory or technique's known or potential rate of error; whether there are standards controlling its operation; and whether the theory or technique enjoys general acceptance within the relevant

scientific community. *Id.* at 149-50. Emphasizing the word "may" in this holding, the Court explained:

> Engineering testimony rests upon scientific foundations, the reliability of which will be at issue in some cases. In other cases, the relevant reliability concerns may focus upon personal knowledge or experience. . . . [T]here are many different kinds of experts, and many different kinds of expertise. . . . We agree . . . that "[t]he factors identified in *Daubert* may or may not be pertinent in assessing reliability, depending on the nature of the issue, the expert's particular expertise, and the subject of his testimony." The conclusion, in our view, is that we can neither rule out, nor rule in, for all cases and for all time the applicability of the factors mentioned in *Daubert*, nor can we now do so for subsets of cases categorized by category of expert or by kind of evidence. Too much depends upon the particular circumstances of the particular case at issue.

Id. at 150 (quotations and citations omitted). It continued:

> *Daubert* . . . made clear that its list of factors was meant to be helpful, not definitive. Indeed, those factors do not all necessarily apply even in every instance in which the reliability of scientific testimony is challenged. It might not be surprising in a particular case, for example, that a claim made by a scientific witness has never been the subject of peer review, for the particular application at issue may never previously have interested any scientist. Nor, on the other hand, does the presence of *Daubert*'s general acceptance factor help show that an expert's testimony is reliable where the discipline itself lacks reliability, as, for example, do theories grounded in any so-called generally accepted principles of astrology or necromancy.
>
> At the same time . . . some of *Daubert*'s questions can help to evaluate the reliability even of experience-based testimony. In certain cases, it will be appropriate for the trial judge to ask, for example, how often an engineering expert's experience-based methodology has produced erroneous results, or whether such a method is generally accepted in the relevant engineering community. Likewise, it will at times be useful to ask even of a witness whose expertise is based purely on experience, say, a perfume tester able to distinguish among 140 odors at a sniff, whether his preparation is of a kind that others in the field would recognize as acceptable.

Id. at 151. The Court emphasized that the purpose of *Daubert*'s gatekeeping requirement "is to make certain that an expert, whether basing testimony upon professional studies or personal experience, employs in the courtroom the same level of intellectual rigor that

characterizes the practice of an expert in the relevant field." *Id.* at 152. It further emphasized the considerable leeway that must be afforded to the trial court in determining whether particular expert testimony is reliable. *Id.* It clarified that when assessing reliability, the trial court must have flexibility in determining whether special briefing or other proceedings are necessary, and that, as it held in *Joiner,* the court's decision will be reviewed under an abuse of discretion standard. *Id.*

Turning to the case at hand, the Court held that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding the testimony. The district court had found unreliable the methodology employed by the expert in analyzing the data obtained through his inspection of the tire, and the scientific basis, if any, for his analysis. The Court noted that, among other things, the trial court could reasonably have wondered whether the expert's method of visual and tactile inspection was sufficiently precise, and these concerns might have been amplified by Carlson's repeated reliance on the subjectiveness of his analysis and the fact that he had inspected the tire for the first time the morning of his deposition, and only for a few hours, having based his initial conclusions on photographs. *Id.* at 155. Additionally, the trial court found that none of the *Daubert* factors, including that of general acceptance, indicated that Carlson's testimony was reliable. *Id.* at 156. With respect to Carlson's claim that his method was accurate, the court noted that, as stated in *Joiner*, "nothing . . . requires a district court to admit opinion evidence that it is connected to existing data only by the ipse dixit of the expert." *Id.* at 157. For these and other reasons, the Court concluded that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding the expert testimony. *Id.* at 158.

Stated broadly, these three cases hold that when assessing *any* type of expert testimony under Rule 702, the *Daubert* standard applies; the inquiry is a flexible one; and the trial court will be reversed only for an abuse of discretion.

2. Effective Date of Amendments to Rule 702(a). As noted above, the 2011 amendments to Rule 702(a) incorporate the *Daubert* standard. The amendments to section 702(a) apply to "actions commenced" on or after October 1, 2011. *See* S.L. 2011-283, secs. 1.3, 4.2. "[T]he trigger date" for applying the amended version of the rule is the date that the bill of indictment is filed. State v. Walston, 229 N.C. App. 141, 152 (2013), *rev'd on other grounds*, 367 N.C. 721 (2014); State v. McLaughlin, ___ N.C. App. ___, 786 S.E.2d 269, 286 (2016); State v. Gamez, 228 N.C. App. 329, 332-33 (2013). If a second indictment is filed on or after October 1, 2011 and is joined for trial with an indictment filed before the statute's effective date, the proceeding is deemed to have commenced on the date the first indictment was filed. *Gamez,* 228 N.C. App. at 333. However, in a case involving one indictment in which a superseding indictment is filed, the date of the superseding indictment controls. *Walston*, 229 N.C. App. at 152.

3. Effect of Pre-Amendment Case Law.
The North Carolina Supreme Court has stated that the 2011 amendments did not abrogate all North Carolina precedents interpreting that rule. Specifically, it has stated: "Our previous cases are still good law if they do not conflict with the *Daubert* standard." State v. McGrady, 368 N.C. 880,

at 888 (2016). It is not entirely clear what that statement means. The 2011 amendments adopting the *Daubert* standard changed only the reliability prong of the Rule 702 analysis; the relevancy and qualifications prongs were not changed. Thus, this Chapter assumes that this statement means: (1) that cases applying the relevancy and qualifications prongs of the analysis remain good law; and (2) that cases applying the more lenient pre-*Daubert* standard to the reliability prong are inconsistent with the analysis under the new *Daubert* rule. However, cases applying the pre-*Daubert* standard to the reliability prong to hold that evidence is inadmissible are likely to be consistent with a result that obtains from application of the *Daubert* standard (after all, evidence that could not pass muster under the earlier standard is unlikely to do so under the new stricter standard). By contrast, cases applying the more lenient pre-*Daubert* standard to the reliability prong to hold that evidence is admissible may not be consistent with a result that obtains under the stricter *Daubert* test, and perhaps should be viewed with some skepticism.

B. Relevancy.

1. Generally. Rule 702 requires that the testimony "will assist the trier of fact to understand the evidence or to determine a fact in issue." This prong of the analysis is referred to as the "relevancy test." *Daubert,* 509 U.S. at 591 ("This condition goes primarily to relevance. Expert testimony which does not relate to any issue in the case is not relevant and, ergo, non-helpful." (quotation omitted)); *see also McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 889. As with any evidence, the expert testimony must meet the minimum standard for logical relevance under Rule 401. *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 889. "In other words, the testimony must 'relate to [an] issue in the case.'" *Id. (*quoting *Daubert*)*; see also* State v. Oakes, 209 N.C. App. 18, 28-29 (2011) (the defendant was not prejudiced by the trial court's decision to exclude testimony by the defendant's use of force expert on the issue of the defendant's intent to kill where intent to kill was irrelevant to the charge of felony-murder); *see generally* Relevancy in this Benchbook (discussing relevancy under Rule 401).

2. "Assist the Trier of Fact." As used in this prong of the inquiry, the term relevance means something more than standard relevancy under Rule 401. *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 889. As the North Carolina Supreme Court has explained, "In order to 'assist the trier of fact,' expert testimony must provide insight beyond the conclusions that jurors can readily draw from their ordinary experience." *Id.* (going on to note: "An area of inquiry need not be completely incomprehensible to lay jurors without expert assistance before expert testimony becomes admissible. To be helpful, though, that testimony must do more than invite the jury to substitute the expert's judgment of the meaning of the facts of the case for its own" (citation and quotation omitted)). Thus, in *McGrady*, the court held that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding a defense expert proffered to testify to "pre-attack cues" and "use of force variables" to support the defense of self-defense and defense of others. 368 N.C. at 894-95. According to the expert, pre-attack cues are actions "exhibited by an aggressor as a possible precursor to an actual attack" including "actions consistent with an assault, actions consistent with retrieving a

weapon, threats, display of a weapon, employment of a weapon, profanity and innumerable others." *Id*. at 894. He said that "use of force variables" refer to circumstances and events that influence a person's decision about the type and degree of force necessary to repel a perceived threat, such as the age, gender, size, and number of individuals involved; the number and type of weapons present; and environmental factors. *Id*. at 895. The court held that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by concluding that the expert's testimony about pre-attack cues and use of force variables would not assist the jury because these matters were within the jurors' common knowledge. The court noted: the factors the expert "cited and relied on to conclude that defendant reasonably responded to an imminent, deadly threat are the same kinds of things that lay jurors would be aware of, and would naturally consider, as they drew their own conclusions." *Id*.

3. **"Fit" Test.** Another aspect of relevancy is the "fit" of the expert testimony to the facts of the case. *Daubert*, 509 U.S. at 591-92. As referred to in this way, the fit test ensures that proffered "'expert testimony . . . is sufficiently tied to the facts of the case that it will aid the jury in resolving a factual dispute.'" State v. Babich, ___ N.C. App. ___, 797 S.E.2d. 359, 362 (2017) (quoting *Daubert*). Thus for example, the North Carolina Court of Appeals held that expert testimony on retrograde extrapolation that assumed, with no evidence, that the defendant was in a post-absorptive state failed the fit test and was inadmissible. *Id.* Issues of "fit" overlap with the third-prong of the reliability analysis, that the witness has applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case, as discussed below in Section II.D.

4. **Illustrative Cases.** Illustrative cases addressing this prong of the test are annotated below. Because this prong of the Rule 702(a) admissibility inquiry was not altered by the 2011 amendments to the rule, the cases listed below include those decided both before and after the 2011 amendments.

> *State v. McGrady*, 368 N.C. 880, 894–95 (2016). In this murder case, the trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding a defense expert proffered to testify to "pre-attack cues" and "use of force variables" to support the defense of self-defense and defense of others. The expert's report stated that pre-attack cues are actions "exhibited by an aggressor as a possible precursor to an actual attack" including "actions consistent with an assault, actions consistent with retrieving a weapon, threats, display of a weapon, employment of a weapon, profanity and innumerable others." He indicated that "use of force variables" refer to additional circumstances and events that influence a person's decision about the type and degree of force necessary to repel a perceived threat, such as age, gender, size, and number of individuals involved; the number and type of weapons present; and environmental factors. The trial court did not abuse its discretion by concluding that the expert's testimony about pre-attack cues and use of force variables would not assist the jury because these matters were within the jurors' common

knowledge. The court noted: the factors the expert "cited and relied on to conclude that defendant reasonably responded to an imminent, deadly threat are the same kinds of things that lay jurors would be aware of, and would naturally consider, as they drew their own conclusions." In fact, the expert's own report stated that, even without formal training, individuals recognize and respond to these cues and variables when assessing a potential threat.

State v. Babich, ___ N.C. App. ___, 797 S.E.2d. 359, 361-64 (2017). Holding that an expert's retrograde extrapolation testimony that assumed, with no evidence, that the defendant was in a post-absorptive state failed the "fit" test and was inadmissible. The court held:

> [W]hen an expert witness offers a retrograde extrapolation opinion based on an assumption that the defendant is in a post-absorptive or post-peak state, that assumption must be based on at least some underlying facts to support that assumption. This might come from the defendant's own statements during the initial stop, from the arresting officer's observations, from other witnesses, or from circumstantial evidence that offers a plausible timeline for the defendant's consumption of alcohol.
>
> When there are at least some facts that can support the expert's assumption that the defendant is post-peak or post-absorptive, the issue then becomes one of weight and credibility, which is the proper subject for cross-examination or competing expert witness testimony. But where, as here, the expert concedes that her opinion is based entirely on a speculative assumption about the defendant—one not based on any actual facts—that testimony does not satisfy the *Daubert* "fit" test because the expert's otherwise reliable analysis is not properly tied to the facts of the case.

State v. Daughtridge, ___ N.C. App. ___, 789 S.E.2d 667, 675-76 (2016). The trial court improperly allowed a medical examiner to testify, as an expert in forensic pathology, that the victim's death was a homicide when that opinion was based not on medical evidence but rather on non-medical information provided to the expert by law enforcement officers involved in the investigation of the victim's death. The State failed to adequately explain how the medical examiner was in a better position than the jurors to evaluate whether the information provided by the officers was more suggestive of a homicide than a suicide.

State v. Martin, 222 N.C. App. 213, 216–18 (2012). The trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding testimony by a defense

> proffered "forensic scientist and criminal profiler." During voir dire the witness identified what he considered to be inconsistencies in the victim's version of events leading up to and during the alleged sexual assaults and evidence consistent with what he described as "investigative red flags." The witness's testimony, which would have discredited the victim's account of the defendant's action on the night in question and commented on the manner in which the criminal investigation was conducted "appears to invade the province of the jury."
>
> *State v. Fox*, 58 N.C. App. 231, 233 (1982). The trial court did not err by refusing to allow a psychiatrist testifying as an expert witness to give his opinion that the defendant believed he was acting in self-defense. The court held: "we do not find error in the trial court's conclusion that it was for the jury to ascertain defendant's motive for the killing." The court concluded that the expert
>
> > certainly was qualified to give an opinion as to [the defendant's] mental capacity and any mental disorders he may have identified, and the record shows he was permitted to do so. Indeed, the psychiatrist was permitted to testify that defendant had told him he had acted in the belief that the victim was going to kill him and that he had been frightened. We find nothing in the record to indicate that the witness was better qualified than the jury to judge the defendant's veracity based on all the evidence.

C. Qualifications.

1. Generally. The second requirement for admissibility of expert testimony is that the witness must be "qualified as an expert by knowledge, skill, experience, training, or education." N.C. R. EVID. 702(a). "This portion of the rule focuses on the witness's competence to testify as an expert in the field of his or her proposed testimony." *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 889. It asks: "Does the witness have enough expertise to be in a better position than the trier of fact to have an opinion on the subject?" *Id.*

The North Carolina Supreme Court has noted that "[e]xpertise can come from practical experience as much as from academic training" and that:

> The rule does not mandate that the witness always have a particular degree or certification, or practice a particular profession. But this does not mean that the trial court cannot screen the evidence based on the expert's qualifications. In some cases, degrees or certifications may play a role in determining the witness's qualifications, depending on the content of the witness's testimony and the field of the witness's purported expertise.

Id. at 889-90. It also has noted that "[d]ifferent fields require different 'knowledge, skill, experience, training, or education,'" id. at 896, explaining:

> For example, a witness with a Ph.D. in organic chemistry may be able to describe in detail how flour, eggs, and sugar react on a molecular level when heated to 350 degrees, but would likely be less qualified to testify about the proper way to bake a cake than a career baker with no formal education.

Id.

Once a witness is found to be qualified to testify as an expert, issues sometimes arise about whether the expert is being asked to testify outside of his or her area of expertise. For a discussion of that issue, see Section III.E. below.

2. Illustrative Cases. Examples of North Carolina cases addressing this prong of the test are provided below. This list is meant to be illustrative, not exhaustive. Because this prong of the Rule 702(a) admissibility inquiry was not altered by the 2011 amendments to the rule, the cases below include those decided both before and after the 2011 amendments to the Rule.

> *State v. McGrady*, 368 N.C. 880, 895–96 (2016). In this murder case, the trial court did not abuse its discretion by concluding that a defense expert, Mr. Cloutier, was not qualified to offer expert testimony on the stress responses of the sympathetic nervous system. Cloutier's report stated that an instinctive survival response to fear "can activate the body's sympathetic nervous system" and the "'fight or flight' response." He indicated that the defendant's perception of an impending attack would cause an adrenalin surge "activat[ing] instinctive, powerful and uncontrollable survival responses." He maintained that this nervous system response causes "perceptual narrowing," focusing a person's attention on the threat and leading to a loss of peripheral vision and other changes in visual perception. According to Cloutier, this nervous system response also can cause "fragmented memory," or an inability to recall events. The expert, a former police officer, testified that he was not a medical doctor but had studied "the basics" of the brain in general college psychology courses. He also testified that he had read articles and been trained by medical doctors on how adrenalin affects the body, had personally experienced perceptual narrowing, and had trained numerous police officers and civilians on how to deal with these stress responses. Noting that Rule 702(a) "does not create an across-the-board requirement for academic training or credentials," the court held that it was not an abuse of discretion to require a witness who intended to testify about the

functions of an organ system to have some formal medical training.

State v. Morgan, 359 N.C. 131, 159–61 (2004). The trial court did not abuse its discretion by holding that the State's witness was qualified to testify as an expert in the field of bloodstain pattern interpretation where the witness completed two training sessions on bloodstain pattern interpretation, had analyzed bloodstain patterns in dozens of cases, had previously testified in a homicide case as a bloodstain pattern interpretation expert, and described in detail to the judge and jury the difference between blood spatter and transfer stains and produced visual aids to illustrate his testimony. The witness's "qualifications are not diminished, as defendant suggests, by the fact that he has never written an article, lectured, or taken a college-level course on bloodstain or blood spatter analysis."

State v. Cooper, 229 N.C. App. 442, 461-63 (2013). In this murder case where files recovered from the defendant's computer linked the defendant to the crime, the trial court abused its discretion by concluding that a defense expert proffered to testify that the defendant's computer had been tampered with was not qualified to give expert testimony. The witness had worked for many years in the computer field, specializing in computer network security. However, the witness had no training and experience as a forensic computer analyst. The trial court erred by concluding that because the digital data in question was recovered using forensic tools and methods, only an expert forensic computer analyst was qualified to interpret and form opinions based on the data recovered. It concluded: "Nothing in evidence supports a finding that [the expert] was not qualified to testify using the data recovered by the State. [The expert], based upon expertise acquired through practical experience, was certainly better qualified than the jury to form an opinion as to the subject matter to which his testimony applie[d]." (quotation and citation omitted).

State v. Dew, 225 N.C. App. 750, 760-61 (2013). In this child sex case, the trial court did not err by qualifying as an expert a family therapist who provided counseling to the victims. Among other things, the witness had a master's degree in Christian counseling and completed additional professional training relating to the trauma experienced by children who have been sexually abused; she engaged in private practice as a therapist and was a licensed family therapist and professional counselor; and over half of her clients had been subjected to some sort of trauma, with a significant number having suffered sexual abuse.

State v. Britt, 217 N.C. App. 309, 314-15 (2011). SBI agents were properly qualified to give expert testimony regarding firearm tool mark identification.

State v. Norman, 213 N.C. App. 114, 122-24 (2011). The trial court did not abuse its discretion by qualifying the State's witness, Mr. Glover, as an expert in the fields of forensic blood alcohol physiology and pharmacology, breath and blood alcohol testing, and the effects of drugs on human performance and behavior. Glover was the head of NC Department of Health and Human Services Forensic Test for Alcohol branch. He oversaw training of officers on the operation of alcohol breath test instruments and of drug recognition experts, who observed the effects of drugs in individuals. Glover had a bachelor of science and a master's degree in biology and was certified as a chemical analyst on breath test instruments used in North Carolina. He attended courses at Indiana University regarding the effects of alcohol on the human body, the various methods for determining alcohol concentrations, and on the effects of drugs on human psychomotor performance. Glover published several works and previously had been qualified as an expert in forensic blood alcohol physiology and pharmacology, breath and blood alcohol testing, and the effects of drugs on human performance and behavior over 230 times in North Carolina. The court concluded that despite Glover's lack of a formal degree or certification in the fields of physiology and pharmacology, his extensive practical experience qualified him to testify as an expert. *See also* State v. Green, 209 N.C. App. 669, 672-75 (2011) (holding that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by finding that Glover was qualified to testify as an expert in the areas of pharmacology and physiology).

State v. Norton, 213 N.C. App. 75, 80-81 (2011). The trial court did not abuse its discretion by finding that a forensic toxicologist was qualified to testify about the effects of cocaine on the body. The court concluded: "As a trained expert in forensic toxicology with degrees in biology and chemistry, the witness . . . was plainly in a better position to have an opinion on the physiological effects of cocaine than the jury."

State v. Hargrave, 198 N.C. App. 579, 584-85 (2009). The court rejected the defendant's argument that the trial court erred by admitting testimony from the State lab technician (who testified that the substances found by law enforcement contained cocaine) because the expert did not have an advanced degree. The witness had a Bachelor's degree in chemistry, completed basic law

enforcement training and in-house training to be a forensic drug chemist and testified as an expert in that field on approximately forty previous occasions.

D. Reliability.

1. Generally. The third requirement of Rule 702(a) is the three-pronged reliability test that is new to the amended rule:

(1) the testimony must be based upon sufficient facts or data;
(2) the testimony must be the product of reliable principles and methods; and
(3) the witness must have applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case.

N.C. R. EVID. 702(a). These three prongs together constitute the reliability inquiry discussed in the *Daubert* line of cases, *McGrady,* 368 N.C. at 890, discussed in Section II.A.1. above. Citing extensively from those cases, the North Carolina Supreme Court has noted that:

- Although the primary focus of this inquiry is the reliability of the witness's principles and methodology, not the conclusions that they generate, conclusions and methodology are not entirely distinct. Thus, when a trial court concludes that there is simply too great an analytical gap between the data and the opinion proffered, "the court is not required to admit opinion evidence that is connected to existing data only by the *ipse dixit* of the expert." *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 890 (quotations and citations omitted).
- "The precise nature of the reliability inquiry will vary from case to case depending on the nature of the proposed testimony" and the trial court has discretion in determining how to address the reliability analysis. *Id*.
- The five factors identified in *Daubert* (whether the theory or technique can and has been tested; whether it has been subjected to peer review and publication; the theory or technique's known or potential rate of error; whether there are standards controlling its operation; and whether the theory or technique enjoys general acceptance within the relevant scientific community) bear on the reliability of the evidence, but the trial court should use whatever factors it thinks most appropriate for the inquiry. *Id.*
- Other factors considered by courts in the reliability inquiry include whether:

  (1) the expert is testifying based on research conducted independent of the litigation;
  (2) the expert has unjustifiably extrapolated from an accepted premise to an unfounded conclusion;
  (3) the expert has adequately accounted for obvious alternative explanations;

(4) the expert has employed the same care in reaching litigation-related opinions as the expert employs in performing the expert's regular professional work; and
(5) the field of expertise claimed by the expert is known to reach reliable results for the type of opinion the expert would give.

McGrady, 368 N.C. at 891.

- The inquiry remains a flexible one; neither *Daubert*'s five factors nor this additional list of factors constitute a checklist; the trial court is free to consider other factors, depending on the type of testimony at issue. *Id.* at 891-92.

Cases decided since *McGrady* have reiterated these points. *See, e.g.,* State v. Hunt, ___ N.C. App. ___, 790 S.E.2d 874, 881 (2016); State v. Turbyfill, ___ N.C. App. ___, 776 S.E.2d 249, 258 (2015).

Note that the third-part of the reliability analysis—that the witness has applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case—overlaps, in some respect, with issues of "fit" with respect to the relevancy prong of the analysis, discussed above in Section II.B.3.

2. Illustrative Cases. Examples of North Carolina cases applying *Daubert* to this prong of the analysis include:

State v. McGrady, 368 N.C. 880, 897–99 (2016). In this murder case, the trial court did not abuse its discretion by concluding that a defense expert's testimony regarding reaction times was unreliable. The testimony was offered to rebut any assumption in the jurors' minds that the defendant could not have acted defensively if he shot the victim in the back. Because the expert testified on voir dire that he interviewed the defendant and other witnesses; reviewed interviews of the defendant and a witness, the case file, and physical evidence collected by the Sherriff's Department; and visited the crime scene, the expert's testimony satisfied the "sufficient facts or data" requirement in Rule 702(a)(1). However, the expert based his testimony about average reaction times on statistics from two studies, but did not know whether or not those studies reported error rates and, if so, what those error rates were. Thus, a trial judge could reasonably conclude that the expert's degree of unfamiliarity with the studies rendered unreliable his testimony about them and the conclusions about the case that he drew from them. Also, while the expert established that a disability could affect reaction time, he failed to account for the defendant's back injury in his analysis. This failure relates both to the sufficiency of the facts and data relied upon and to whether the expert applied his own methodology reliably in this case.

State v. Hunt, 790 N.C. App. 874, 877, 880-81 (2016). In this drug case, the trial court properly allowed the State's witness, a special

agent and forensic chemist with the State Crime Lab, to testify as an expert in forensic chemistry. The expert testified that following Crime Lab administrative procedure, he applied a testing procedure called the "administrative sample selection" to the pharmaceutically manufactured pills in question. This involves visually inspecting the shape, color, texture, and manufacturer's markings or imprints of all units and comparing them to an online database to determine whether the pills are pharmaceutically prepared. After the chemist determines that the units are similar and not counterfeit, the protocol requires the chemist to weigh the samples, randomly select one, and chemically analyze that tablet, using gas chromatography and a mass spectrometer. The expert testified that upon receiving the pills, he divided them into four categories based on their physical characteristics. Using administrative sample selection, he tested one pill from the first three groups. Each tested positive for oxycodone. The combined weight of the pills in these categories exceeded the trafficking amount. Upon inspecting the pills that he did not chemically analyze according to their physical characteristics, he found them consistent with a pharmaceutical preparation containing oxycodone. The court held that, based on the expert's detailed explanation of his use of lab procedures, his testimony was the "product of reliable principles and methods." The court rejected the defendant's argument that the expert's testimony regarding the pills that were not chemically analyzed was not "based upon sufficient facts or data" and did not reflect application of "the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case." Specifically, the defendant pointed to lab rules and regulations stating that under administrative sampling selection, no inferences about unanalyzed materials are to be made. The expert testified however that the lab rules and regulations regarding no inferences for unanalyzed substances does not apply to pharmaceutically prepared substances. For other cases involving sampling in drug testing, see Section II.F.14. below.

State v. Abrams, ___ N.C. App. ___, 789 S.E.2d 863, 864-65 (2016). In this drug case, the trial court did not abuse its discretion by admitting expert testimony identifying the substance at issue as marijuana. At trial, Agent Baxter, a forensic scientist with the State Crime Lab, testified that she examined the substance, conducted relevant tests, and found that the substance was marijuana. The court rejected the defendant's argument that the expert's testimony was not "the product of reliable principles and methods" and that the evidence failed to show that she applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case. Baxter's testimony established that she analyzed the substance in accordance with State Lab procedures, providing detailed testimony regarding each step in her process. Specifically, identifying the substance as marijuana involves the following steps: separating weighable materials from packaging; recording the weight; conducting a preliminary analysis, such as a color test;

conducting a microscopic examination, looking for identified characteristics of marijuana (e.g., unique characteristics of the leaves); and conducting the Duquenois–Levine color test. The court concluded: "Based on her detailed explanation of the systematic procedure she employed to identify the substance . . ., a procedure adopted by the NC Lab specifically to analyze and identify marijuana, her testimony was clearly the 'product of reliable principles and methods' sufficient to satisfy . . . Rule 702(a)." The court went on to reject the defendant's argument that Baxter's testimony did not establish that she applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case. Based on Baxter's testimony regarding her handling of the sample at issue, the court held that Baxter's testimony established that the principles and methods were applied reliably the substance at issue.

E. Procedural Issues.

1. Preliminary Question of Fact. The admissibility of expert testimony is determined by the trial court pursuant to Rule 104(a). *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 892. *See generally* N.C. R. EVID. 104(a). In determining admissibility, the trial judge is not bound by the rules of evidence, except those with respect to privileges. *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 892 (quoting N.C. R. EVID. 104(a)).

To the extent that factual findings are necessary to determine admissibility, the trial judge acts as the trier of fact. *Id.* at 892 (citing Commentary to N.C. R. EVID. 104(a)). The standard for factual findings is the greater weight of the evidence *Id.* at 892–93.

2. Burden of Proof. The proponent of the evidence bears the burden of establishing that the evidence is admissible. State v. Ward, 364 N.C. 133, 140 (2010) (pre-amendment expert witness case).

3. Flexible Inquiry. Because Rule 702(a) does not mandate any particular procedure for the court to determine the admissibility of expert testimony, the trial court has the discretion to determine how to best handle the matter*. Kumho Tire,* 526 U.S. at 152 ("The trial court must have the same kind of latitude in deciding *how* to test an expert's reliability, and to decide whether or when special briefing or other proceedings are needed to investigate reliability, as it enjoys when it decides *whether or not* that expert's relevant testimony is reliable."); *see also McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 892; State v. Walston, ___ N.C. ___, 798 S.E.2d 741, 747 (2017) (citing *McGrady* and noting that "Rule 702 does not mandate any particular procedural requirements for evaluating expert testimony"); State v. Abrams, ___ N.C. App. ___, 789 S.E.2d 863, 866 (2016) (quoting *McGrady*). In simple cases, an appropriate foundation may be laid on direct examination. *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 893. In more complex cases, the trial court may opt for special briefings, submission of affidavits, voir dire testimony, or an *in limine* hearing. *Id*. Whatever the case, the trial court "should use a procedure that, given the circumstances of the case, will secure fairness in administration, elimination of unjustifiable expense and delay, and promotion of growth and development of the law of evidence to the end that the truth may be ascertained and proceedings justly determined." *Id.* (quotation omitted).

Noting the difficulty a silent record creates for purposes of appeal, a concurring opinion in one post-*McGrady* cases suggests:

> [B]est practice dictates parties should challenge an expert's admissibility through a motion *in limine*. In the event a trial court delays its ruling on the matter, or in the event a party fails to raise the challenge until the expert is called upon at trial, our trial courts should afford parties a *voir dire* hearing to examine the witness and submit evidence into the record, which this Court can review on appeal.

Abrams, ___ N.C. App. at ___, 789 S.E.2d at 869 (Hunter, J., concurring).

4. **Findings of Fact & Conclusion of Law.** In *McGrady,* the North Carolina Supreme Court stated that the trial court must find the relevant facts pertaining to admissibility and then, based on these findings, determine whether the proffered expert testimony meets the rule's requirements of qualification, relevance, and reliability. *McGrady*, 368 N.C. at 892–93. Although some language in at least one subsequent court of appeals case suggests that the trial courts are not required to make findings of fact or conclusions of law regarding the admissibility of expert testimony, *Abrams*, ___ N.C. App. at ___, 789 S.E.2d at 868 (Hunter, J., concurring) ("At the present, trial courts are not required to make findings of fact or conclusions of law when they accept or reject an expert witness."), that same case suggests that the better practice in light of *McGrady* is to make such findings and conclusions on the record. *Id.* at 869 ("[T]he trial court should identify the *Daubert* factors and make findings of fact and conclusions of law, either orally or in writing, as to the expert's admissibility.").

5. **Informing the Jury of Witness's Expert Status.** Some commentators and authority from other jurisdictions suggest that it is preferable for the trial court not to advise the jury that it has found a witness to be an expert, to avoid undue influence that the jury might place on the witness's testimony. *See e.g.,* Advisory Committee Notes to FED. R. EVID. 702 ("[T]here is much to be said for a practice that prohibits the use of the term 'expert' by both the parties and the court at trial. Such a practice ensures that trial courts do not inadvertently put their stamp of authority on a witness's opinion, and protects against the jury's being overwhelmed by the so-called 'experts.'" (quotation omitted)); National Commission on Forensic Science, Views of the Commission Regarding Judicial Vouching (June 21, 2016) ("The Commission is of the view that it is improper and misleading for a trial judge to declare a witness to be an expert in the presence of the jury."), https://www.justice.gov/ncfs/file/880246/download; United States v. Johnson, 488 F.3d 690, 697-98 (6th Cir. 2007) (agreeing with decisions that have articulated "good reasons" for not informing the jury that a witness has been qualified as an expert); Michael H. Graham, *Expert Witness Testimony: Fed. R. Evid. 702-705 Primer; Hypothetical Question Discretionary Use*, 52 No. 5 CRIM. L. BULL Art. 8 (2016) ("It is preferable that the court not advise the jury of its determination if it decides that the witness is in fact qualified as an expert as to a particular subject matter."). However, several older North Carolina criminal cases

found no error when a trial court determined that a witness was an expert in the presence of the jury. State v. Frazier, 280 N.C. 181, 197, *vacated on other grounds*, 409 U.S. 1004 (1972) (the trial court determined, in the presence of the jury, that two witnesses were qualified to testify as experts; stating: "It has never been the general practice in the courts of this State for the trial judge to excuse the jury from the courtroom when ruling upon the qualification of a witness to testify as an expert."); State v. Edwards, 24 N.C. App. 303, 305 (1974) (citing *Frazier* and holding that the trial court did not err by stating, in the presence of the jury, that it found a medical doctor to be expert witness). Additionally, N.C. Pattern Instruction – Crim 104.94 (Testimony of Expert Witness) expressly informs the jury of the witness's status as an expert and at least one unpublished case indicates that the better practice is to give this instruction. State v. Dunn, 220 N.C. App. 524, *9 (2012) (unpublished) (holding that no error occurred when the trial court failed to give the pattern instruction but noting: "the better practice is for the trial court to specifically instruct the jury on expert testimony when an expert has testified at trial"); *see generally* State v. Prevatte, 356 N.C. 178, 224 (2002) (noting that the court has approved of the pattern instruction).

F. Particular Types of Experts. Several common types of expertise are explored in the sections immediately below. This Chapter does not attempt to present an exhaustive evaluation of these areas of expert testimony. Rather, it provides the trial judge with an overview of the current state of North Carolina law with respect to each category and alerts the trial court to potential issues. As science and technology evolve, new tests and analyses may be developed providing a better understanding as to the strengths and weakness of tests and analyses currently being done and resulting in new tests and analyses. Either or both developments may impact existing law.

When discussing certain forensic science disciplines, this Chapter cites the following report: PRESIDENT'S COUNCIL OF ADVISORS ON SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY, FORENSIC SCIENCE IN CRIMINAL COURTS: ENSURING SCIENTIFIC VALIDITY OF FEATURE-COMPARISON METHODS (2016) [hereinafter PCAST REPORT], https://obamawhitehouse.archives.gov/sites/default/files/microsites/ostp/PCAST/pcast_forensic_science_report_final.pdf. This report is cited because it is the most recent comprehensive evaluation of the relevant forensic science disciplines. Although some, such as the National Association of Criminal Defense Lawyers, have applauded that report, it was not adopted by the Department of Justice and others, including the National District Attorneys Association, have been critical of it or have challenged it. Jack D. Roady*, The PCAST Report: A Review and Moving Forward−A Prosecutor's Perspective*, CRIMINAL JUSTICE, Summer 2017, at 9 (discussing the reaction to the report by prosecutors, defense attorneys, and the forensic science community).

For discussion of the proper scope of expert testimony in sexual assault cases, see *Evidence Issues Criminal Cases Involving Child Victims and Child Witnesses* in this Benchbook.

1. Use of Force & Self-Defense Experts. Although use of force and self-defense experts are used in North Carolina criminal trials, *see, e.g.,* State v. McDowell, 215 N.C. App. 184, 189 (2011) (noting that Mr. Cloutier testified as an expert in "use-of-force science" and self-defense tactics),

few published cases directly address the admissibility of such evidence. One case that does is *State v. McGrady*, 368 N.C. 880 (2016), decided under amended Rule 702(a) and the *Daubert* standard. In *McGrady*, the North Carolina Supreme Court held that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding testimony by a defense proffered expert. At trial the defendant sought to call Dave Cloutier as an expert in "the science of the use of force" *Id.* at 883. Cloutier was proffered to testify on three topics:

> (1) that, based on the "pre-attack cues" and "use of force variables" present in the interaction between defendant and the victim, the defendant's use of force was a reasonable response to an imminent, deadly assault that the defendant perceived;
> (2) that defendant's actions and testimony are consistent with those of someone experiencing the sympathetic nervous system's "fight or flight" response; and
> (3) that reaction times can explain why some of defendant's defensive shots hit the victim in the back.

Id. at 894. The Supreme Court held that the trial court did not abuse its discretion in excluding the expert's testimony about "pre-attack cues" and "use of force variables" on grounds that it was not relevant. *Id.* Cloutier's report indicated that pre-attack cues are actions "exhibited by an aggressor as a possible precursor to an actual attack," and include "actions consistent with an assault, actions consistent with retrieving a weapon, threats, display of a weapon, employment of a weapon, profanity and innumerable others." *Id.* According to Cloutier, "use of force variables" include additional circumstances and events that influence a person's decision about the type and degree of force necessary to repel a threat, such as age, gender, size, and number of individuals involved; the number and type of weapons present; and environmental factors. *Id.* at 895. The court found this this testimony would not assist the jury because these matters were within the juror's common knowledge. *Id.*

Next, the *McGrady* court found that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by concluding that Cloutier was not qualified to offer expert testimony on the stress responses of the sympathetic nervous system. *Id.* Cloutier's report stated that an instinctive survival response to fear "can activate the body's sympathetic nervous system" and the "'fight or flight' response." *Id.* He indicated that the defendant's perception of an impending attack would cause an adrenalin surge "activat[ing] instinctive, powerful and uncontrollable survival responses." *Id.* He further maintained that this nervous system response causes "perceptual narrowing," focusing a person's attention on the threat and leading to a loss of peripheral vision and other changes in visual perception. *Id.* According to Cloutier, this nervous system response also can cause "fragmented memory," or an inability to recall specific events related to the threatening encounter. *Id.* at 895-96. The court held that it was not an abuse of discretion to require "a witness who intended to testify about the functions of an organ system to have some formal medical training." *Id.* at 896.

Finally, the court held that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by finding that the expert's testimony regarding reaction times

was unreliable. *Id.* at 897. This testimony was offered to rebut any assumption in the jurors' minds that the defendant could not have acted defensively if he shot the victim in the back. *Id.* Because the expert testified on voir dire that he interviewed the defendant and other witnesses; reviewed interviews of the defendant and a witness, the case file, and physical evidence collected by the Sherriff's Department; and visited the location of the incident, the expert's testimony satisfied the "sufficient facts or data" requirement in Rule 702(a)(1). *Id.* However, the expert based his testimony about average reaction times on statistics from two studies, but did not know whether or not those studies reported error rates and, if so, what those error rates were. Thus, a trial judge could reasonably conclude that the expert's degree of unfamiliarity with the studies rendered unreliable his testimony about them and the conclusions about the case that he drew from them. *Id.* at 898-99. Also, while the expert established that a disability could affect reaction time, he failed to account for the defendant's back injury in his analysis. The court found that this failure relates both to the sufficiency of the facts and data relied upon and to whether the expert applied his own methodology reliably in this case. *Id.*at 899.

2. DNA Identification Evidence. "Deoxyribonucleic acid, or DNA, is a molecule that encodes the genetic information in all living organisms." FEDERAL JUDICIAL CENTER & NATIONAL RESEARCH COUNCIL OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMIES, REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE 131 (3d ed. 2011) [hereinafter REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE], https://www.fjc.gov/sites/default/files/2015/SciMan3D01.pdf. "DNA analysis involves comparing DNA profiles from different samples to see if a known sample may have been the source of an evidentiary sample." PCAST REPORT at 69. It is important to understand, however, that the term "DNA testing" encompasses different kinds of testing methods, different sources of bodily material, and differing statistical means of assessing the significance of a match, all of which has changed and likely will continue to change as science and technology advance. 4 DAVID L. FAIGMAN ET AL., MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE: THE LAW AND SCIENCE OF EXPERT TESTIMONY 157 (2016-17 ed.) [hereinafter MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE]. Although some forms of DNA evidence are now admissible in all jurisdictions, there are many types of forensic DNA analysis, and more are being developed. REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 131. Questions of admissibility will continue to arise as advancing methods of analysis and novel applications of established methods are introduced. *Id.*

This Chapter does not attempt to explain the wide variety of DNA testing that has been and currently is being done in forensic labs and potential issues regarding that testing. For a discussion of the history of DNA evidence, the types of scientific expertise that go into the analysis of DNA samples, the scientific principles behind DNA typing, issues regarding sample quantity and quality and laboratory performance, issues in the interpretation of laboratory results, special issues in human DNA testing for identification, and forensic analysis of nonhuman DNA, see REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 131-210. For the PCAST REPORT's assessment of DNA testing using single source samples,

simple mixture samples, and complex mixture samples, see PCAST REPORT at 69-83.

Although expert testimony regarding DNA analysis repeatedly has been found to be admissible in North Carolina prior to the 2011 amendments to Rule 702, *see, e.g.,* State v. Pennington, 327 N.C. 89, 98-101 (1990), there do not appear to be any published North Carolina cases directly assessing any form of DNA testing under the new *Daubert* standard. Courts in other jurisdictions have allowed expert testimony regarding the polymerase chain reaction and short tandem repeats method of DNA typing under the *Daubert* standard. *See generally* 33A FED. PROC., L. ED. § 80:226 ("Applying the *Daubert* test, expert DNA evidence has generally been found to be admissible. More specifically, based on overwhelming scientific and forensic acceptance, as well as acceptance by the vast majority of courts, the polymerase chain reaction and short tandem repeats (PCR/STR) method of DNA typing has been held reliable and admissible under the rule governing expert opinion and *Daubert*.").

Separate from *Daubert* standard issues, expert testimony that amounts to a "prosecutor's fallacy" is improper. "The prosecutor's fallacy is the assumption that the random match probability is the same as the probability that the defendant was not the source of the DNA sample." McDaniel v. Brown, 558 U.S. 120, 128 (2010). The U.S. Supreme Court has explained:

> In other words, if a juror is told the probability a member of the general population would share the same DNA is 1 in 10,000 (random match probability), and he takes that to mean there is only a 1 in 10,000 chance that someone other than the defendant is the source of the DNA found at the crime scene (source probability), then he has succumbed to the prosecutor's fallacy. It is . . . error to equate source probability with probability of guilt, unless there is no explanation other than guilt for a person to be the source of crime-scene DNA. This faulty reasoning may result in an erroneous statement that, based on a random match probability of 1 in 10,000, there is a .01% chance the defendant is innocent or a 99.99% chance the defendant is guilty.

Id.; see also State v. Ragland, 226 N.C. App. 547, 558-60 (2013) (the State's expert improperly relied on the prosecutor's fallacy, erroneously assuming that the random match probability was the same as the probability that the defendant was not the source of the DNA sample; this testimony was inadmissible).

3. Bite Mark Identification Evidence. Bite mark analysis "typically involves examining marks left on a victim or an object . . . and comparing those marks with dental impressions taken from a suspect." PCAST REPORT at 83. For a discussion of the technique involved with this type of analysis, see REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 103-08.

North Carolina cases decided prior to the 2011 amendment to Rule 702 have held that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by

admitting expert bite mark identification testimony. *See, e.g.,* State v. Temple, 302 N.C. 1, 10-13 (1981) (deciding an issue of first impression, the court held that the trial court properly admitted expert testimony that bite marks appearing on the victim's body were made by the defendant's teeth); State v. Green, 305 N.C. 463, 470-72 (1982) (citing *Temple,* the court held that the trial court properly allowed an expert to testify that a bite mark on the victim's arm had been made by the defendant). However, there do not appear to be any published North Carolina cases analyzing bite mark identification analysis under the new *Daubert* standard. Research revealed only one North Carolina bite mark case decided under amended Rule 702(a), but that case did not deal with bite mark *identification* evidence. *See* State v. Ford, ___ N.C. App. ___, 782 S.E.2d 98, 107-08 (2016) (trial court did not commit plain error by allowing the State's forensic pathology expert to opine that victim's death was due to bites from a dog).

Although questions have been raised about the validity of bite mark analysis, *see, e.g.,* PCAST REPORT at 83-87 ("[B]itemark analysis does not meet the scientific standards for foundational validity, and is far from meeting such standards. To the contrary, available scientific evidence strongly suggests that examiners cannot consistently agree on whether an injury is a human bitemark and cannot identify the source of bite mark with reasonable accuracy."), courts in other jurisdictions have continued to admit the evidence. REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 112.

4. Fingerprint Identification Evidence. Fingerprint identification evidence refers to the use of fingerprints as a means of personal identification, e.g., that fingerprints found at the murder scene match fingerprints on file for the defendant. For a discussion of the methodology used in fingerprint identification analysis, see REFERENCE MANUAL OF SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 73-76, and PCAST REPORT at 88-91.

Expert testimony regarding fingerprint analysis has been admissible in North Carolina for many years under the state's pre-*Daubert* standards. State v. Irick, 291 N.C. 480, 488-89 (1977); *see also* State v. Hoff, 224 N.C. App. 155, 163 (2012) (citing *Irick* and noting "our Supreme Court's long-standing acceptance of the reliability of fingerprint evidence"); State v. Parks, 147 N.C. App. 485, 490-91 (2001) (no abuse of discretion in admitting officer's expert testimony in fingerprint analysis given that the state Supreme Court has "recognized that fingerprinting is an established and scientifically reliable method of identification"). There do not appear to be any published North Carolina criminal cases evaluating fingerprint analysis under the *Daubert* standard. Courts in other jurisdictions have—for the most part—held such testimony to be sufficiently reliable expertise under *Daubert*. *See* REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 82-83. The Fourth Circuit is among the courts to have found fingerprint evidence sufficiently reliable under *Daubert*. United States v. Crisp, 324 F.3d 261, 266-69 (4th Cir. 2003) (citing other circuit courts that have held similarly).

For a discussion of the empirical record regarding this type of identification, see REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 76-81, and PCAST REPORT at 91-100. For an assessment as to the foundational validity and validity as applied of fingerprint evidence, see PCAST

REPORT at 101-103 (finding that "latent fingerprint analysis is a foundationally valid subjective methodology" and that "[c]onclusions of a proposed identification may be scientifically valid, provided that they are accompanied by accurate information about limitations on the reliability of the conclusion"; going on to identify a number of issues regarding validity as applied).

5. **Firearm Identification.** In firearms identification analysis, sometimes called "ballistics," "examiners attempt to determine whether ammunition is or is not associated with a specific firearm based on marks produced by guns on the ammunition." PCAST REPORT at 104. For a discussion of the methodology of this this analysis, see REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 91-97, and PCAST REPORT at 104.

Pre-*Daubert* North Carolina cases had allowed this type of expert testimony. *See, e.g.,* State v. Britt, 217 N.C. App. 309, 314 (2011) ("Courts in North Carolina have upheld the admission of expert testimony on firearm toolmark identification for decades."). There do not appear to be any published North Carolina cases applying the new *Daubert* standard to this type of evidence.

Although testimony by firearms experts is widely admitted nationwide with little judicial scrutiny, provided the expert is qualified, 3 BARBARA E. BERGMAN ET AL., WHARTON'S CRIMINAL EVIDENCE § 13:59 (15th ed.) [hereinafter WHARTON'S CRIMINAL EVIDENCE] (but noting: "Little justification appears to warrant such a cavalier attitude toward this testimony."), some post-*Daubert* decisions have excluded or limited expert firearms analysis testimony. *See* REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 101-02 (discussing cases). Questions have been raised about the foundational validity of firearms analysis. *See* PCAST REPORT at 112 ("PCAST finds that firearms analysis currently falls short of the criteria for foundational validity, because there is only a single appropriately designed study to measure validity and estimate reliability. The scientific criteria for foundational validity require more than one such study, to demonstrate reproducibility."); REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 97-100 (discussing the empirical record on this type of evidence and noting, in part: "The issue of the adequacy of the empirical basis of firearms identification expertise remains in dispute . . . ."). Additionally, it has been suggested that if firearms analysis is allowed in court, validity as applied requires that the expert has undergone rigorous proficiency testing and that certain disclosures be made. PCAST REPORT at 113.

6. **Blood Alcohol Extrapolation.** "Retrograde extrapolation is a mathematical analysis in which a known blood alcohol test result is used to determine what an individual's blood alcohol level would have been at a specified earlier time." State v. Cook, 362 N.C. 285, 288 (2008).The analysis determines the prior blood alcohol level based on (1) the time elapsed between the earlier event, such as a vehicle crash, and the blood test, and (2) the rate of elimination of alcohol from the subject's blood during the time between the event and the test. *Id.*

North Carolina cases decided under both *Howerton* and *Daubert* have held that the trial court does not abuse its discretion by admitting expert testimony regarding blood alcohol extrapolation. *See, e.g.,* State v. Turbyfill, ___ N.C. App.___, 776 S.E.2d 249, 255-58 (2015) (applying

Daubert and holding that testimony by the State's expert "confirmed that blood alcohol extrapolation is a scientifically valid field, which principles have been tested, subjected to peer review and publication, and undisputedly accepted in the scientific community and in our courts"); State v. Green, 209 N.C. App. 669, 677-680 (2011) (same, under earlier *Howerton* standard).

However, for expert testimony on retrograde extrapolation to be admissible it must be based on sufficiently reliable data and a reliable method of proof. Faulty assumptions in the expert's application of retrograde extrapolation analysis can render the expert testimony inadmissible. *Compare* State v. Babich, ___ N.C. App. ___, 797 S.E.2d 359, 361-364 (2017) (the trial court erred by admitting retrograde extrapolation expert testimony where the expert assumed that the defendant was in a post-absorptive state at the time of the stop (meaning that alcohol was no longer entering the defendant's bloodstream and thus her blood alcohol level was declining) but there were no facts to support this assumption; reasoning that such testimony was inadmissible "as a matter of law" because it failed *Daubert's* "fit" test in that the expert's analysis was not properly tied to the facts of the case; going on to hold: "[W]hen an expert witness offers a retrograde extrapolation opinion based on an assumption that the defendant is in a post-absorptive . . . state, that assumption must be based on at least some underlying facts to support that assumption. This might come from the defendant's own statements during the initial stop, from the arresting officer's observations, from other witnesses, or from circumstantial evidence that offers a plausible timeline for the defendant's consumption of alcohol."), *and* State v. Davis, 208 N.C. App. 26, 31-35 (2010) (holding, under the earlier and more lenient *Howerton* standard that the trial court committed reversible error by allowing expert Paul Glover to testify to the defendant's blood-alcohol level based on retrograde extrapolation where the alcohol concentration upon which Glover based the extrapolation was estimated to be .02 based on the fact that an officer smelled alcohol on the defendant's breath more than ten hours after the incident; Glover's "odor analysis" was not a sufficiently reliable method of proof), *with* State v. Green, 209 N.C. App. 669, 677-80 (2011) (holding, under the earlier and more lenient *Howerton* standard that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by allowing expert Paul Glover to testify regarding retrograde extrapolation notwithstanding the defendant's argument that Glover's testimony was based on impermissible factual assumptions regarding the amount of wine in the defendant's glass and when it was consumed).

7. Blood Spatter Analysis. Blood spatter analysis, sometimes called blood spatter interpretation or bloodstain analysis, is a forensic tool in which stains of blood at a crime scene are examined to provide information about the incident, such as where the victim was killed. For the purposes of this discussion, blood spatter analysis includes the process of examining blood that has struck a surface, and applying knowledge regarding the characteristics of blood and the shapes or patterns made by its impact, in order to determine things like the direction, angle, and speed of its flight prior to impact, and, ultimately, to assist in reconstructing events occurring in connection with an alleged crime. *See generally* Danny R. Veilleux, *Admissibility, in Criminal Prosecution, of Expert*

Opinion Evidence as to "Blood Splatter" Interpretation, 9 A.L.R.5th 369 (originally published 1993) (discussing the admissibility of evidence so described). For more information about the history of bloodstain analysis and the biology, physics and mathematics associated with it, see Aaron D. Gopen & Edward J. Imwinkelried, *Bloodstain Pattern Analysis Revisited*, 45 No. 3 CRIM. L. BULL. ART. 7 (2009) [hereinafter *Bloodstain Pattern Analysis Revisited*].

In cases decided under the old *Howerton* standard, North Carolina courts have found bloodstain analysis to be a sufficiently reliable area for expert testimony. *See, e.g.,* State v. Goode, 341 N.C. 513, 530-31 (1995) (rejecting the defendant's argument that bloodstain pattern interpretation has not been established as a scientifically reliable field; also rejecting the defendant's argument that Agent Duane Deaver did not have sufficient qualifications to testify as an expert in the field); *see also* State v. Morgan, 359 N.C. 131, 160 (2004) (citing *Goode* for that proposition, although it was not an issue in that case); State v. Bruton, 165 N.C. App. 801, 809 (2004) (citing *Goode* and holding that the trial court did not err by allowing an expert in forensic serology to testify regarding the nature of blood spatter over the defendant's challenge to her qualifications as an expert).

There do not appear to be any North Carolina cases addressing the admissibility of this evidence under the *Daubert* standard. For a discussion of how this evidence is handled in other jurisdictions, see 9 A.L.R.5th 369 and *Bloodstain Pattern Analysis Revisited*, *supra* p. 28.

8. Fiber Analysis. In criminal cases, expert testimony may be offered to show that certain fibers do or do not "match", typically in the context of proving or disproving that the suspect had contact with a particular person or place. This section refers to this sort of testimony as fiber analysis.

In pre-*Daubert* North Carolina cases, fiber analysis testimony has been found to be admissible. *See, e.g.,* State v. Vestal, 278 N.C. 561, 593–94 (1971) (no error to allow an expert in the field of analyzing and comparing fibers to testify "concerning the similarity of the drapes found in the defendant's warehouse with that found upon the body"). There do not appear to be any North Carolina cases analyzing this evidence under the *Daubert* standard. Some have raised questions about whether fiber analysis satisfies the *Daubert* standard. *See, e.g,* 4 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 114 ("The validity of fiber identification techniques is susceptible of objective testing, although this has not been accomplished on a scale and in such a manner as to satisfy *Daubert*. The error rate of fiber examination is unknown. The validity of the interpretation of the significance of a match in fiber evidence has not been subjected to systematic testing of the sort countenanced by *Daubert*.").

9. Hair Analysis. "Forensic hair examination is a process by which examiners compare microscopic features of hair to determine whether a particular person may be the source of a questioned hair." PCAST REPORT at 118. For a discussion of the technique used in this type of analysis, see REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 113-14.

Several North Carolina cases decided prior to the 2011 amendment to Rule 702 approved of admitting expert testimony regarding hair analysis. *See, e.g.*, State v. Green, 305 N.C. 463, 470 (1982) ("This Court has previously approved of testimony similar to that employed in the case before us and we are not inclined to reverse that holding."

(citation omitted)); State v. Vestal, 278 N.C. 561, 593–94 (1971) (no error to allow an expert in the field of analyzing and comparing hair to testify regarding the similarity of hairs found in a warehouse and trunk of the defendant's automobile with hairs taken from the head of the victim's body); State v. McCord, 140 N.C. App. 634, 659 (2000) (the trial court did not abuse its discretion by admitting expert testimony that a pubic hair taken from the victim was microscopically consistent with a known sample of defendant's pubic hair; "because the comparison of hair samples has been accepted as reliable scientific methodology in this State, the trial court properly allowed [the analyst] to testify regarding the results of his testing"); State v. Suddreth, 105 N.C. App. 122, 132 (1992) ("Our courts have liberally permitted the introduction of expert testimony as to hair analysis when relevant to aid in establishing the identity of the perpetrator.").

However, case law suggests that hair analysis is conclusive, if at all, only as to negative identify—that is, to exclude a suspect. State v. Stallings, 77 N.C. App. 189, 191 (1985). For example, if the hair in question is blonde, straight, and 12 inches long, an individual with black, curly, two inch long hair can be excluded as the source of the sample. 4 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 111. Cases also hold that microscopic hair analysis evidence is insufficient on its own to positively identify a defendant as the perpetrator. *Stallings,* 77 N.C. App. at 191 (hair analysis "must be combined with other substantial evidence to take a case to the jury"); State v. Bridges, 107 N.C. App. 668, 671 (1992) (citing *Stallings* and stating that it "may not be used to positively identify a defendant as the perpetrator of a crime"), *aff'd per curiam*, 333 N.C. 572 (1993); State v. Faircloth, 99 N.C. App. 685, 692 (1990) (same). As the court stated in *Stallings:* "Unlike fingerprint evidence . . . comparative microscopy of hair is not accepted as reliable for positively identifying individuals. Rather, it serves to exclude classes of individuals from consideration and is conclusive, if at all, only to negative identity." *Stallings*, 77 N.C. App. at 191.

Additionally, some pre-*Daubert* cases limit the scope of a hair analysis expert's testimony. *See Bridges*, 107 N.C. App. at 671-75 (the trial court erred by admitting the expert's testimony about the statistical probability of two Caucasians having indistinguishable head hair because there was insufficient foundation for this testimony); *Faircloth*, 99 N.C. App. at 690-92 (the trial court erred by allowing a hair examination and identification expert to testify that it was "improbable" that pubic hairs obtained from the victim's body and from a sheet on the victim's bed came from an individual other than the defendant and that it would be "impossible" for another person whose hair was consistent with the defendant's to have come in contact with the victim's bedsheets).

There do not appear to be any North Carolina cases ruling on the admissibility of this evidence under the *Daubert* standard. It should be noted that in recent years, serious questions have been raised about the validity of forensic hair analysis and associated expert testimony. *See, e.g.*, Spencer S. Hsu, *FBI Admits Flaws in Hair Analysis Over Decades*, THE WASHINGTON POST, April 18, 2015 (reporting that "[t]he Justice Department and FBI have formally acknowledged that nearly every examiner in an elite FBI forensic unit gave flawed testimony in almost all

trials in which they offered evidence against criminal defendants over more than a two-decade period before 2000"); 4 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 112 ("The validity of hair evidence is susceptible of objective testing, although this has not been accomplished on a scale and in such a manner as to satisfy *Daubert*. The error rate of hair examination is unknown."); PCAST REPORT 118-122 (finding that materials provided by the Department of Justice "do not provide a scientific basis for concluding that microscopic hair examination is a valid and reliable process"). Although many cases have continued to admit hair analysis post-*Daubert,* that is not universally true and "growing judicial support" for the view that this type of analysis is unreliable has been noted. REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 119.

10. Shoe Print Analysis. "Footwear analysis is a process that typically involves comparing a known object, such as a shoe, to a complete or partial impression found at a crime scene, to assess whether the object is likely to be the source of the impression." PCAST REPORT at 114.

Although some North Carolina cases state that a non-expert may testify to shoe print comparisons, *see, e.g.,* State v. General, 91 N.C. App. 375, 379 (1988) (citing State v. Jackson, 302 N.C. 101, 107 (1981)); State v. Plowden, 65 N.C. App. 408, 410 (1983) (same), trial courts have admitted expert testimony on this topic. *See, e.g.,* State v. Williams, 308 N.C. 47, 60–61 (1983) (noting that an SBI Agent was accepted as an expert witness and testified extensively concerning the unique characteristics of the tread on the shoes taken from the defendant and the shoe prints found at the scene of the crime). However, there do not appear to be any North Carolina cases examining the admissibility of this evidence under the *Daubert* standard. Although federal courts have admitted expert shoe print testimony under *Daubert*, *see, e.g.,* United States v. Ford, 481 F.3d 215, 217-21 (3d Cir. 2007); United States v. Allen, 390 F.3d 944, 949-50 (7th Cir. 2004); United States v. Mahone, 328 F. Supp. 2d 77, 90-92 (D. Me. 2004), *aff'd*, 453 F.3d 68 (1st Cir. 2006), questions have been raised about the foundational validity of this analysis. *See* PCAST REPORT at 117 (concluding that "there are no appropriate empirical studies to support the foundational validity of footwear analysis to associate shoeprints with particular shoes based on specific identifying marks (sometimes called []randomly acquired characteristics). Such conclusions are unsupported by any meaningful evidence or estimates of their accuracy and thus are not scientifically valid.").

11. Handwriting Analysis. Handwriting analysis seeks to determine the authorship of a piece of writing by examining the way in which the letters are inscribed, shaped and joined and comparing it to samples by a known author. 4 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 561-62. For a discussion of the technique used in this type of analysis and the empirical record regarding its validity, see REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 83-89.

North Carolina civil cases decided before the amendment to Rule 702(a) upheld admission of expert testimony regarding handwriting analysis, *see, e.g.,* Taylor v. Abernethy, 149 N.C. App. 263, 270-74 (2002) (trial court erred by refusing to allow a handwriting expert to give his opinion regarding the validity of a signature on a contract). There do not appear to be any published North Carolina cases on point after North

Carolina became a *Daubert* state. In other jurisdictions, there is a three-way split of authority regarding this type of expert testimony:

> The majority of courts permit examiners to express individuation opinions. As one court noted, "all six circuits that have addressed the admissibility of handwriting expert [testimony] . . . [have] determined that it can satisfy the reliability threshold" for nonscientific expertise. In contrast, several courts have excluded expert testimony, although one involved handprinting and another Japanese handprinting. Many district courts have endorsed a third view. These courts limit the reach of the examiner's opinion, permitting expert testimony about similarities and dissimilarities between exemplars but not an ultimate conclusion that the defendant was the author ("common authorship" opinion) of the questioned document. The expert is allowed to testify about "the specific similarities and idiosyncrasies between the known writings and the questioned writings, as well as testimony regarding, for example, how frequently or infrequently in his experience, [the expert] has seen a particular idiosyncrasy." As the justification for this limitation, these courts often state that the examiners' claimed ability to individuate lacks "empirical support."

REFERENCE MANUAL ON SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 90. The Fourth Circuit is among the courts that have held that expert handwriting testimony passes muster under *Daubert*. *See* United States v. Crisp, 324 F.3d 261, 270-71 & n.5 (4th Cir. 2003) (deciding the issue as a matter of first impression; citing circuit court decisions that have held similarly but noting that some district courts recently had held that handwriting analysis does not meet the *Daubert* standard).

12. Horizontal Gaze Nystagmus (HGN). A leading treatise explains horizontal gaze nystagmus as follows:

> Nystagmus is an involuntary rapid movement of the eyeball, which may be horizontal, vertical or rotary. An inability of the eyes to maintain visual fixation as they are turned from side to side (in other words, jerking or bouncing) is known as horizontal gaze nystagmus, or HGN. Proponents of HGN tests believe that alcohol and drug use increases the frequency and amplitude of HGN and cause it to occur at a smaller angle of deviation from forward. Nystagmus tests are not done in a laboratory, but rather are given by police officers in the field or in a police station subsequent to arrest. The results of an HGN test are frequently introduced as part of the state's case in drunk driving prosecutions and they also may be used when an individual is suspected to be under the influence of some other substance . . . .

5 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 459 (quotation omitted).

Rule 702(a1) provides that a witness qualified under Rule 702(a) "and with proper foundation, may give expert testimony solely on the issue of impairment and not on the issue of specific alcohol concentration level relating to . . . [t]he results of a [HGN] Test when the test is administered by a person who has successfully completed training in HGN." This subsection obviates the State's need to prove that the horizontal gaze nystagmus testing method is sufficiently reliable. State v. Younts, ___ N.C. App. ___, ___ S.E.2d ___ (July 18, 2017) (post-amendment case); State v. Smart, 195 N.C. App. 752, 755-56 (2009) (pre-amendment case); *see also* State v. Godwin, ___ N.C. ___, 800 S.E.2d 47 (2017) ("Furthermore, with the 2006 amendment to Rule 702, our General Assembly clearly signaled that the results of the HGN test are sufficiently reliable to be admitted into the courts of this State."). Whether there are due process limits on the legislature's ability to declare certain expert testimony to be reliable is beyond the scope of this Chapter.

According to the text of the Rule 702(a1) HGN expert testimony is admissible when the witness is qualified under Rule 702(a) and a proper foundation is laid. N.C. R. EVID. 702(a1); *see also* State v. Torrence, ___ N.C. App. ___, 786 S.E.2d 40, 42 (2016) ("[I]f an officer is going to testify on the issue of impairment relating to the results of an HGN test, the officer must be qualified as an expert witness under Rule 702(a) and establish proper foundation."). Although the better practice may be to do so, the court is not required to expressly determine that the witness is so qualified; such a determination can be implied from the record. *Godwin*, ___ N.C. ___, 800 S.E.2d 47, 52-53 (2017) (holding that the trial court implicitly found that the witness was qualified to testify but noting that "the appellate division's ability to review the trial court's oral order would have benefited from the inclusion of additional facts supporting its determination that [the] Officer . . . was qualified to testify as an expert regarding his observations of defendant's performance during the HGN test"). Presumably a proper foundation would include establishing that the test was performed according to accepted protocol.

Once the witness is qualified and a proper foundation is laid, the witness may give expert testimony regarding the HGN test results, subject to the additional limitations in subsection (a1), namely, the witness may testify solely on the issue of impairment and not on the issue of specific alcohol concentration. N.C. R. EVID. 702(a1); *see also Torrence*, ___ N.C. App. ___, 786 S.E.2d at 43 (prejudicial error where officer testified to a specific alcohol concentration); *see also* State v. Turbyfill, ___ N.C. App. ___, 776 S.E.2d 249, 259 (2015) (officer's testimony as to the defendant's BAC appears to have violated Rule 702(a1)) but the error did not have a probable impact on the verdict).

13. Eyewitness Identification Experts. Several North Carolina appellate decisions have found no abuse of discretion where the trial court excluded testimony regarding reliability of eyewitness identification evidence when the expert's testimony did not relate to the facts of the particular case, *see, e.g.,* State v. McLean, 183 N.C. App. 429, 435 (2007) (expert did not interview the witnesses, visit the crime scene, or listen to court testimony), or because its prejudicial value outweighed its

probative value under Rule 403, *see, e.g., McLean*, 183 N.C. App. at 435 (no abuse of discretion where the trial court found that the value of the evidence was "marginally weak" and that it would confuse the jury, unnecessarily delay the proceeding, and would not significantly help the jury); State v. Cotton, 99 N.C. App. 615, 621-22 (1990), *aff'd*, 329 N.C. 764 (1991) (similar). However, a recent decision of the North Carolina Supreme Court suggests that it is not proper to exclude such testimony simply because the expert has not interviewed or examined the witness. State v. Walston, ___ N.C. ___, 798 S.E.2d 741, 747 (2017) (holding that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding testimony from a defense expert regarding repressed memory and the suggestibility of memory; the court clarified that to be admissible, the expert need not have examined or interviewed the witness, noting: "[s]uch a requirement would create a troubling predicament given that defendants do not have the ability to compel the State's witnesses to be evaluated by defense experts").

The United States Supreme Court has noted that "some States . . . permit defendants to present expert testimony on the hazards of eyewitness identification evidence." Perry v. New Hampshire, 565 U.S. 228, 247 (2012) (quoting State v. Clopten, 223 P.3d 1103, 1113 ("We expect … that in cases involving eyewitness identification of strangers or near-strangers, trial courts will routinely admit expert testimony [on the dangers of such evidence].")). Commentators have noted that while eyewitness testimony identifying the perpetrator of the crime is often important evidence for the State in a criminal trial, such testimony has been found to be erroneous in some cases. 2 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 578 (noting that in cases where DNA evidence exonerated defendants, eyewitness evidence identified the defendant as the perpetrator). They argue that expert testimony may help explain why such testimony can be wrong, by, for example, describing the impact of "estimator variables" (factors that might affect the eyewitnesses ability to perceive the events accurately, e.g., lighting conditions, or to describe accurately what was perceived) and "system variables" (factors outside the control of the eyewitness, such as the suggestiveness of a photo array). *Id.*

14. Drug Identification & Quantity.

a. Chemical Analysis Generally Required. In *State v. Ward*, 364 N.C. 133 (2010), a case decided under the more lenient *Howerton* standard, the North Carolina Supreme Court held that "[u]nless the State establishes . . . that another method of identification is sufficient to establish the identity of the controlled substance beyond a reasonable doubt, some form of scientifically valid chemical analysis is required" to identify a substance as a controlled substance. *Id.* at 147.

At least one post-*Ward* North Carolina case applying the *Daubert* standard has found no error when an expert testified to drug identification based on a chemical analysis. *See, e.g.,* State v. Abrams, ___ N.C. App. ___, 789 S.E.2d 863, 865-67 (2016) (expert testified that the substance was marijuana based on a chemical analysis; the expert's testimony was "clearly" the product of reliable principles and methods and her testimony established

that she applied those principles and methods reliability to the facts of the case).

b. **Visual Identification.** In *Ward,* the North Carolina Supreme Court held that the visual inspection methodology proffered by the State's expert was not sufficiently reliable to identify the pills at issue as containing a controlled substance. *Ward*, 364 N.C. at 142-48 (method of proof was not sufficiently reliable); *see also* State v. Brunson, 204 N.C. App. 357, 359-61 (2010) (holding, in a pre-*Ward* case, that it was plain error to allow an expert to opine that the substance at issue was hydrocodone, an opium derivative, based on visual identification and Micromedex Literature). It is unlikely that the court's reasoning would lead it to a different result under the more stringent *Daubert* standard. And in fact, one court of appeals case has applied that rule to a case in which the amended rule applied. State v. Alston, __ N.C. App. ___, ___ S.E.2d ___ (June 20, 2017) (even if officer had been an expert it would have been error to allow him to testify that pills found at the defendant's home were Oxycodone and Alprazolam, where the basis of his identification was a visual inspection and comparison of the pills with a website).

In cases decided after *Ward,* the Court of Appeals has held that visual identification cannot be used to identify a substance as cocaine, State v. Jones, 216 N.C. App. 519, 526 (2011), or pills as a controlled substance. State v. Alston, __ N.C. App. ___, ___ S.E.2d ___ (June 20, 2017). However, it has allowed visual identification to identify a substance as marijuana. State v. Johnson, 225 N.C. App. 440, 455 (2013) (holding that the State was not required to test the substance alleged to be marijuana where the arresting officer testified without objection that based on his training the substance was marijuana); State v. Mitchell, 224 N.C. App. 171, 178-79 (2012) (an officer properly was allowed to identify the substance at issue as marijuana based on his "visual and olfactory assessment"; a chemical analysis of the marijuana was not required); *Jones*, 216 N.C. App. at 526 (visual identification of marijuana was permissible); State v. Garnett, 209 N.C. App. 537, 546 (2011) (Special Agent, who was an expert in forensic chemistry, properly made an in-court visual identification of marijuana).

It is difficult to reconcile the Court of Appeals' post-*Ward* decisions on visual identification with respect to substances that are not controlled substances. *Compare* State v. Hanif, 228 N.C. App. 207, 209-13 (2013) (applying *Ward* in a counterfeit controlled substance case where the defendant was charged with representing tramadol hydrochloride, a substance that is not a controlled substance, as Vicodin, a Schedule III controlled substance; holding that the trial court committed plain error by admitting evidence identifying the substance as tramadol hydrochloride based solely upon an expert's visual inspection (a comparison of the tablets' markings to a Micromedex online database)), *with* State v. Hooks, ___ N.C. App. ___, 777 S.E.2d 133, 140-41 (2015) (in a case involving charges of possession of

the precursor chemical pseudoephedrine with intent to manufacture methamphetamine, the court rejected the defendant's argument that the evidence was insufficient because the substance was not chemically identified as pseudoephedrine; holding that *Ward* was limited to identifying controlled substances, and pseudoephedrine is not listed as such a substance).

c. Narcotics indicator field test kits (NIKs) & "NarTest" Machines. In several cases decided under the more lenient *Howerton* standard, the North Carolina Court of Appeals held that the State failed to establish the reliability of certain narcotics indicator field tests. State v. Meadows, 201 N.C. App. 707, 708-12 (2010) (the trial court committed prejudicial error by admitting expert testimony on the identity of a controlled substance based on the results of a NarTest machine where the State failed to demonstrate the machine's reliability); State v. Jones, 216 N.C. App. 519, 523-25 (2011) (following *Meadows* and holding that the trial court erred by allowing a police captain to testify that the results from a NarTest machine analysis showed that the substance at issue was a controlled substance; also holding that the trial court erred by admitting testimony by the State's expert in forensic chemistry, a NarTest employee, regarding the reliability of the NarTest machine where the machine had not been licensed or certified by any state agency or department, the expert had not done any independent research on the machine outside of his duties as a company employee, the State presented no evidence that the machine had been recognized as a reliable method of testing by other experts in the field, the State presented no publications or research performed by anyone unassociated with NarTest, and although the State offered a visual aid to support the expert's testimony, that aid was a NarTest promotional video); State v. Carter, 237 N.C. App. 274, 281-84 (2014) (following *Meadows* and holding that the State failed to demonstrate the reliability of a NIK—apparently a wipe that turns blue when it comes into contact with cocaine—and that therefore the trial court abused its discretion by admitting an investigator's testimony that the NIK indicated the presence of cocaine). Absent different evidence, it is unlikely that the court's reasoning would lead it to a different result under the stricter *Daubert* standard.

d. Other Methods of Drug Identification. In *Ward,* the Supreme Court held that *"[u]nless the State establishes . . . that another method of identification is sufficient to establish the identity of the controlled substance beyond a reasonable doubt*, some form of scientifically valid chemical analysis is required" to identify a substance as a controlled substance. *Ward,* 364 N.C. at 147 (emphasis added). This language opens the door, in certain circumstances, to the use of methods of drug identification other than chemical testing.

In *State v. Woodard*, 210 N.C. App. 725 (2011), an opium trafficking case arising from a pharmacy break-in, the court rejected the defendant's argument that the evidence was

insufficient to support the conviction because no chemical analysis was done on the pills at issue. *Id.* at 730-31. In so holding the court approved a method of drug identification other than chemical analysis. Citing *Ward*, the court determined that the State is not required to conduct a chemical analysis on a controlled substance, provided it establishes the identity of the controlled substance beyond a reasonable doubt by another method of identification. Here, the State did that through the drug store's pharmacist manager, Mr. Martin, who testified that 2,691 tablets of hydrocodone acetaminophen, an opium derivative, were stolen from the pharmacy. He testified that he kept "a perpetual inventory" of all drug items. Using that inventory, he could account for the type and quantity of every inventory item throughout the day, every day. Accordingly, he was able to identify which pill bottles were stolen from the pharmacy by examining his inventory against the remaining bottles, because each bottle was labeled with an identifying sticker, date of purchase and a partial pharmacy account number. These stickers helped the pharmacist to determine that 2,691 tablets of hydrocodone acetaminophen were stolen. He further testified, based on his experience and knowledge as a pharmacist, that the weight of the stolen pills was approximately 1,472 grams. The court concluded:

> Based on Mr. Martin's thirty-five years of experience dispensing the same drugs that were stolen from the . . . Drugstore, and based on Mr. Martin's unchallenged and uncontroverted testimony regarding his detailed pharmacy inventory tracking process, we are persuaded that Mr. Martin's identification of the stolen drugs as more than 28 grams of opium derivative hydrocodone acetaminophen was sufficient evidence to establish the identity and weight of the stolen drugs and was not analogous to the visual identifications found to be insufficient in *Ward* . . . .

Id. at 732.

e. Sampling. The *Ward* court stated that its ruling regarding visual identification did not mean that every single item at issue must be chemically tested. In that case, the State submitted sixteen batches of items consisting of over four hundred tablets to the SBI laboratory for testing. *Ward,* 364 N.C. at 148. The court held:

> A chemical analysis of each individual tablet is not necessary. The SBI maintains standard operating procedures for chemically analyzing batches of evidence, and the propriety of those procedures is not at issue here. A chemical analysis is required in this context, but its scope may be dictated by whatever sample is sufficient to make a reliable

determination of the chemical composition of the batch of evidence under consideration.

Id. Cases decided since *Ward* finding sampling analysis sufficient include:

State v. Hunt, ___ N.C. App. ___, 790 S.E.2d 874, 881-83 (2016). Testimony from the State's expert sufficiently established a trafficking amount of opium; following lab protocol, the forensic analyst grouped the pharmaceutically manufactured pills into four categories based on their physical characteristics and then chemically analyzed one pill from three categories and determined that they tested positive for oxycodone; he did not test the pill in the final category because the quantity was already over the trafficking amount; the pills that were not chemically analyzed were visually inspected; the analyst was not required to chemically analyze each tablet and his testimony provided sufficient evidence to establish a trafficking amount.

State v. Lewis, ___ N.C. App. ___, 779 S.E.2d 147, 148-49 (2015). In this conspiracy to traffic in opiates case, the evidence was sufficient where the State's expert analyzed only one of 20 pills, determined its weight and that it contained oxycodone, an opium derivative, and confirmed that the remaining pills were visually consistent with the one that was tested, in terms of size, shape, form and imprints; a chemical analysis of each individual pill was not necessary.

State v. James, 240 N.C. App. 456, 459 (2015). In this opium trafficking case, the evidence was sufficient to establish a trafficking amount where the expert chose at random certain pills for chemical testing and each tested positive for oxycodone; the expert visually inspected the remaining, untested pills and concluded that with regard to color, shape, and imprint, they were "consistent with" the pills that tested positive for oxycodone.

State v. Dobbs, 208 N.C. App. 272, 275-76 (2010). The trial court did not err by denying the defendant's motion to dismiss a trafficking charge where the State's expert testified that all eight tablets were similar with respect to color and imprint and that a test on one tablet revealed it to be an opiate derivative.

f. Unlicensed & Unaccredited Labs. In a case decided under the more lenient *Howerton* standard, the North Carolina Court of Appeals held to be inadmissible results from a lab that was neither licensed nor accredited by any agency. State v. Jones, 216 N.C.

> App. 519, 525-26 (2011) (the trial court improperly admitted evidence that an individual tested the substances at issue at a NarTest company laboratory using SBI protocol and determined that the substances were cocaine and marijuana). By comparison, test results from a NarTest lab showing that a substance was cocaine have been found to be admissible where the lab was not accredited but was licensed by the State of North Carolina and the Drug Enforcement Agency to perform analytical testing of controlled substances. State v. McDonald, 216 N.C. App. 161, 163-67 (2011) (note that a NarTest machine was not used in the testing of the substances at issue).

15. Fire Investigation Experts. In arson cases, an expert may be offered to opine on, for example, where or how the fire started and whether the fire was intentionally set. WHARTON'S CRIMINAL EVIDENCE § 13:55. At the outset, it should be noted that "fire and explosion investigation consists of a wide array of distinctive methods, techniques, and principles," 5 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 74, which must be assessed separately.

There do not appear to be any published North Carolina cases applying the *Daubert* standard to this type of expert testimony. Although one recent Court of Appeals case held that if a proper foundation is laid as to expertise, a fire marshal may offer his expert opinion that a fire was intentionally set, State v. Jefferies, ___ N.C. App. ___, 776 S.E.2d 872, 875 (2015), that case did not mention *Daubert* and it is not clear that amended Rule 702 applied to that case. Citing case law decided prior to the 2011 amendments to Rule 702, that court reasoned:

> Generally, the admission of expert opinion testimony is only allowed where "the opinion expressed is ... based on the special expertise of the expert[.]' State v. Wilkerson, 295 N.C. 559, 569, 247 S.E.2d 905, 911 (1978). However, our Supreme Court has held that, with a proper foundation laid as to his expertise, a fire marshal may offer his expert opinion as to whether a fire was intentionally set. State v. Hales, 344 N.C. 419, 424–25, 474 S.E.2d 328, 330–31 (1996).

Id. The only other published criminal case decided after *Daubert* became the law in North Carolina declined to address the defendant's argument that the trial court erred by failing to evaluate, under *Daubert,* testimony by an investigator with the Fire Prevention Bureau of a city fire department that the fire in question was intentionally set. State v. Hunt, ___ N.C. App. ___, 792 S.E.2d 552, 560-61 (2016). Instead, that court concluded that even if error occurred, it did not rise to the level of plain error. *Id.*

It has been noted that after *Daubert* and *Kumho Tire,* some courts have examined this type of expert testimony more critically. 5 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 75, 78; *see also* WHARTON'S CRIMINAL EVIDENCE § 13:55 (noting that "[s]ince *Daubert* the qualifications and conclusions of arson investigators have been questioned with increasing frequency" and stating that scholarship has revealed that some investigators fail to base their conclusions adequately upon the scientific method or scientific tests

and has debunked several theories upon which investigators have historically relied; further indicating that inherent problems in the investigatory process have surfaced, and it has become apparent that some fire investigators over-exaggerate arson occurrence as well as the incidence of fire-related injury and death). For a survey of cases dealing with expert opinions in arson cases, see Jay M. Zitter, *Admissibility of Expert and Opinion Evidence as to Cause or Origin of Fire in Criminal Prosecution for Arson or Related Offense—Modern Case*s, 85 A.L.R.5th 187 (originally published 2001).

16. Accident Reconstruction. In North Carolina, "[a]ccident reconstruction opinion testimony may only be admitted by experts." State v. Maready, 205 N.C. App. 1, 17 (2010) (error to allow officers' opinion testimony concerning their purported accident reconstruction conclusions where the officers were not qualified as experts).

Subsection (i) of Rule 702 provides that "[a] witness qualified as an expert in accident reconstruction who has performed a reconstruction of a crash, or has reviewed the report of investigation, with proper foundation may give an opinion as to the speed of a vehicle even if the witness did not observe the vehicle moving."

There do not appear to be any North Carolina criminal cases evaluating accident reconstruction experts under the *Daubert* standard. However, a number of criminal cases decided prior to the 2011 amendments to Rule 702(a) have admitted such evidence. *See, e.g.,* State v. Brown, 182 N.C. App. 115, 120 (2007); State v. Speight, 166 N.C. App. 106, 116-17 (2005), *vacated on other grounds*, 548 U.S. 923 (2006); State v. Holland, 150 N.C. App. 457, 461-464 (2002); State v. Purdie, 93 N.C. App. 269, 274-76 (1989). Additionally, at least one North Carolina civil case has allowed accident reconstruction testimony under the new *Daubert* standard. Pope v. Bridge Broom, Inc., 240 N.C. App. 365, 369-78 (trial court did not abuse its discretion by admitting expert accident reconstruction testimony), *review denied*, ___ N.C. ___, 775 S.E.2d 861 (2015). For a general discussion of courts' treatment of expert accident reconstruction testimony, *see* 5 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 829-59.

17. Pathologists & Cause of Death. In cases decided both before and after the amendments to Rule 702(a), North Carolina courts have admitted expert pathologist testimony regarding cause of death. Cases decided under the earlier version of Rule 702(a) include, for example: *State v. Johnson*, 343 N.C. 489, 492 (1996) (the trial court did not err in this murder case by allowing a fellow in the Chief Medical Examiner's office to testify as an expert in pathology as to cause of death and the possible range from which the shots were fired where the witness was not yet certified and had not completed formal training as a forensic pathologist but had performed a number of autopsies prior to performing the one in question); *State v. Miller*, 302 N.C. 572, 580 (1981) (the trial court did not err by allowing an expert forensic pathologist to testify regarding the size or gauge of the gun used as the murder weapon); *State v. Morgan*, 299 N.C. 191, 206-07 (1980) (rejecting the defendant's challenge to expert testimony offered by the N.C. Chief Medical Examiner that the cause of death was "a shotgun wound, shotgun blast" and noting: "It has long been the rule in North Carolina that the cause of an individual's death is the

proper subject of expert testimony."); *State v. Borders*, 236 N.C. App. 149, 175-76 (2014) (the trial court did not err by allowing the State's forensic pathologists to testify that the cause of death was asphyxiation, even where no physical evidence supported that conclusion; the experts knew that the victim's home was broken into, that she had been badly bruised, that she had abrasions on her arm and vagina, that her underwear was torn, and that DNA obtained from a vaginal swab containing sperm matched the defendant's DNA samples; the experts' physical examination did not show a cause of death, but both doctors drew upon their experience performing autopsies in stating that suffocation victims often do not show physical signs of asphyxiation and they eliminated all other causes of death before arriving at asphyxiation); *State v. Smith*, 157 N.C. App. 493, 498 (2003) (the trial court did not err by allowing the medical examiner to offer an opinion that the victim was killed when struck by the passenger side of the truck's door frame); *State v. Evans*, 74 N.C. App. 31, 35 (1985) (in this involuntary manslaughter case, the trial properly allowed a pathologist to testify that the child victim's injuries were not self-inflicted, that the child would not have died but for them, and that a subdural hematoma was a significant cause of death; he further testified that the hematoma could have been caused by violent shaking, causing tearing of the blood vessels between the dura and the brain, adding that death could result either from swelling of the brain or from rapid trauma to the brain from alteration of the blood supply), *aff'd*, 317 N.C. 326 (1986).

For a case decided under the amended version of Rule 702(a), see *State v. Ford,* ___ N.C. App. ___, 782 S.E.2d 98, 107-08 (2016) (in this involuntary manslaughter case, where the defendant's pit bull attacked and killed the victim, the trial court did not commit plain error by allowing a forensic pathologist to opine that the victim's cause of death was exsanguination due to dog bites).

For a discussion of expert testimony using the words "homicide" or "homicidal," see Section III.B. below.

18. Polygraphs. In a case decided prior to the amendment to Rule 702(a), the North Carolina Supreme Court held that polygraph evidence is inadmissible at trial because of the inherent unreliability of polygraph tests. State v. Grier, 307 N.C. 628, 642–45 (1983) (polygraph evidence is inadmissible, even if the parties stipulate to its admissibility); *see also* State v. Ward, 364 N.C. 133, 146 (2010) (noting this holding). Absent some change in the relevant technology, there is little reason to think that the court would rule otherwise under the stricter *Daubert* standard.

19. Penile Plethysmography. Penile plethysmography tests a man's level of sexual arousal. Michael C. Harlow & Charles L. Scott, *Penile Plethysmography Testing for Convicted Sex Offenders*, 35 J. OF AM. ACADEMY OF PSYCHIATRY & LAW 536 (2007), http://jaapl.org/content/35/4/536. It "involves placing a pressure-sensitive device around a man's penis, presenting him with an array of sexually stimulating images, in determining his level of sexual attraction by measuring minute changes in his erectile responses." *Id.* at 536 (quotation omitted).

Deciding an issue of first impression in a child sex case decided before the 2011 amendments to Rule 702(a), the North Carolina Court of Appeals held that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding opinion testimony by a defense expert in clinical psychology based on penile plethysmograph testing administered to the defendant. State v. Spencer, 119 N.C. App. 662, 664-68 (1995) (the expert would have testified that the defendant had a normal arousal pattern and that there was no evidence of his being sexually aroused by children; the trial court did not abuse its discretion in finding the defendant's plethysmograph testing data insufficiently reliable to provide a basis for the opinion testimony).

Although there do not appear to be any North Carolina cases deciding this issue under the new, stricter *Daubert* test, the Fourth Circuit has held that a trial court did not abuse its discretion by ruling that a penile plethysmograph test did not meet *Daubert*'s scientific validity prong. United States v. Powers, 59 F.3d 1460, 1471 (4th Cir. 1995) (holding, in a child sex case, that the district court did not err by excluding the testimony of a clinical psychologist who would have testified that the results of a penile plethysmograph test did not indicate that the defendant exhibited pedophilic characteristics).

20. Experts in Crime & Criminal Practices. A number of North Carolina appellate cases decided under the pre-amendment version of Rule 702(a) found no error where the trial court allowed a law enforcement officer to testify as an expert regarding criminal practices and activity. For example, in *State v. Jennings*, 209 N.C. App. 329 (2011), a child sexual assault case, the court noted:

> [T]his Court has held that law enforcement officers may properly testify as experts about the practices criminals use in concealing their identity or criminal activity. *See* State v. Alderson, 173 N.C. App. 344, 350–51, 618 S.E.2d 844, 848–49 (2005) (holding trial court properly permitted SBI agent to "give her opinion as to why the seizure of defendant's police frequency book was important, testifying that finding a police frequency book and a radio scanner can indicate those acting illegally may have a 'jumpstart' if they know which police frequencies to monitor."); State v. White, 154 N.C. App. 598, 604, 572 S.E.2d 825, 830–31 (2002) ("Lieutenant Wood had 'training, and various courses and experience in working certain cases' which led him to conclude that 'there are times that the significance of an object such as a pillow or a cloth being placed over somebody's face can mean in a case that the perpetrator knew the victim and did not want to see their face or have their face appear either before, during, or after the crime.' Since Lieutenant Wood testified in the form of an opinion based on his expertise, and the testimony was likely to assist the jury making an inference from the circumstances of the crime, the trial court properly admitted the testimony.").

Id. at 337–38. *Jennings* went on to hold that a law enforcement officer qualified as an expert in forensic computer examination properly was allowed to testify that those who have proof of criminal activity on a computer will attempt to hide that evidence and that the defendant would have been unlikely to save an electronic conversation that would have implicated him. That testimony was elicited by the State to explain why, despite the victim's testimony that she and the defendant routinely communicated through instant messaging and their MySpace web page and that the defendant took digital photographs of her vaginal area during sex, no evidence of these communications or photographs were recovered from the defendant's electronic devices.

There do not appear to be any published North Carolina criminal cases analyzing this type of expert testimony under the new *Daubert* standard. A number of federal circuit courts have allowed such testimony under that standard. For example, law enforcement officers have been allowed to testify as experts regarding:

- Drug code words. *See, e.g.,* United State v. York, 572 F.3d 415, 422 (7th Cir. 2009) ("[W]e allow officers whose testimony is based on some aspect of that understanding (such as the meaning of drug code words), rather than on first-hand knowledge of the particular investigation in the case, to testify as experts."); United States v. Dukagjini, 326 F.3d 45, 52 (2d Cir. 2003) ("[W]e have consistently upheld the use of expert testimony to explain both the operations of drug dealers and the meaning of coded conversations about drugs. In particular, we have recognized that drug dealers often camouflage their discussions and that expert testimony explaining the meanings of code words may 'assist the trier of fact to understand the evidence or to determine a fact in issue.'" (citation omitted)).
- The use of firearms in the drug trade and common practices of drug dealers. *See, e.g.,* United States v. Garza, 566 F.3d 1194, 1199 (10th Cir. 2009) ("[W]e do not believe that *Daubert* and its progeny . . . provide any ground for us to depart from our pre-*Daubert* precedents recognizing that police officers can acquire specialized knowledge of criminal practices and thus the expertise to opine on such matters as the use of firearms in the drug trade."); United States v. Norwood, 16 F. Supp. 3d 848, 852-54 (E.D. Mich. 2014) (citing cases and holding to be admissible testimony by a DEA agent with fifteen years' experience regarding drug trafficking and use of firearms in drug trafficking).
- Gang practices. *See, e.g.,* United States v. Hankey, 203 F.3d 1160, 1167-70 (9th Cir. 2000) (the trial court did not abuse its discretion in admitting an officer's expert opinion testimony regarding the co-defendants' gang affiliations and the consequences an individual would suffer if he were to testify against the defendant; among other things, the expert had been with the police department for twenty-one years, worked undercover "with gang members in the thousands," received formal training in gang structure and organization, and he

> taught classes about gangs; stating: "The *Daubert* factors (peer review, publication, potential error rate, etc.) simply are not applicable to this kind of testimony, whose reliability depends heavily on the knowledge and experience of the expert, rather than the methodology or theory behind it.").

However, some federal court *Daubert* decisions have excluded such testimony as unreliable, at least in certain circumstances. *See, e.g., Norwood*, 16 F. Supp. 3d at 854-64 (excluding proffered expert testimony concerning gangs where the witness formed his opinions based on his experience in Oklahoma, California, and Connecticut and from a national perspective while in Washington, D.C. but the case in question concerned a gang that operated in Flint, Michigan; the witness never investigated the gang in question or other Michigan gangs; "Simply put, [the witness's] lack of familiarity with the particular gang or locale at issue in this case makes his opinions unreliable to be placed before the jury.").

Other courts, while noting that an officer involved in an investigation may testify as both a fact and expert witness, also have noted the "inherent dangers" associated with this type of "dual testimony." *See, e.g., York,* 572 F.3d at 425; *Dukagjini*, 326 F.3d at 53 ("While expert testimony aimed at revealing the significance of coded communications can aid a jury in evaluating the evidence, particular difficulties, warranting vigilance by the trial court, arise when an expert, who is also the case agent, goes beyond interpreting code words and summarizes his beliefs about the defendant's conduct based upon his knowledge of the case."). Those dangers include that the witness's dual role might confuse the jury, that the jury might be impressed by an expert's "aura of special reliability" and thus give his or her factual testimony undue weight, or that "the jury may unduly credit the opinion testimony of an investigating officer based on a perception that the expert was privy to facts about the defendant not presented at trial." *York,* 572 F.3d at 425 (citing cases); *see also Dukagjini*, 326 F.3d at 53 (noting other dangers as well). Precautions that can mitigate these dangers include ensuring that the jury knows when an officer is testifying as an expert versus as a fact witness, through the use of cautionary instructions or witness examination that is structured to make clear when the witness is testifying to facts and when he or she is offering an expert opinion. *York*, 572 F.3d at 425-26 (discussing other precautions and going on to hold that admission of certain "dual testimony" by the officer in question was improper). And courts have noted that the trial court should be careful to ensure that the law enforcement officer expert does not "stray from his proper expert function" of offering opinions based on expertise and opine about matters based on his or her investigation in the case. *Dukagjini*, 326 F.3d at 54-55 (witness improperly acted "as a summary prosecution witness" when, for example, he testified about the meaning of conversations in general, as opposed to interpretation of drug code words).

Some commentators have been critical of decisions that reflexively allow police officers to testify as expert on criminal practices. *See* 1 MODERN SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE at 101, 104 (although not advocating for a wholesale exclusion of such testimony, stating: "Somewhat disappointing has been the courts' willingness to admit prosecution

> experts who have little research or data to support their opinions. While there is some evidence that this is changing in some areas, such as the forensic sciences, courts continue to permit many prosecution experts with hardly a glance at the methods underlying their testimony. Perhaps the best example is the testimony of police officers testifying as expert witnesses.").

III. Form & Scope of Expert's Opinion. For a discussion of the proper scope of an expert's opinion in sexual assault cases, see *Evidence Issues in Criminal Cases Involving Child Victims and Child Witnesses*, in this Benchbook, and more current cases annotated in Smith's Criminal Case Compendium (under Evidence; Opinions; Experts; Sexual Assault Cases).

A. Form of Testimony. Rule 702(a) allows for flexibility as to the form of the expert's testimony, providing that the expert may testify to "an opinion, or otherwise." Rule 705 provides that "[t]here shall be no requirement that expert testimony be in response to a hypothetical question." *See, e.g.,* State v. Fearing, 304 N.C. 499, 503-04 (1981) (no requirement that testimony of a forensic pathologist be given only in response to a hypothetical question); State v. Morgan, 299 N.C. 191, 205 (1980) ("It is settled law in North Carolina that an expert witness need not be interrogated by means of a hypothetical question . . . .").

B. Opinion on Ultimate Issue & Legal Standards. Although an expert may not testify to an opinion as to the defendant's guilt or innocence, *see, e.g.,* State v. Heath, 316 N.C. 337, 341-42 (1986), Evidence Rule 704 provides that "[t]estimony in the form of an opinion or inference is not objectionable because it embraces an ultimate issue to be decided by the trier of fact." *See also* State v. Hill, 116 N.C. App. 573, 581 (1994) (noting this rule and rejecting the defendant's argument that testimony by the State's DNA expert regarding a DNA match improperly stated an opinion that the defendant had committed the rape in question).

The North Carolina Supreme Court has explained, however:

> In interpreting Rule 704, this Court draws a distinction between testimony about legal standards or conclusions and factual premises. An expert may not testify regarding whether a legal standard or conclusion has been met at least where the standard is a legal term of art which carries a specific legal meaning not readily apparent to the witness. Testimony about a legal conclusion based on certain facts is improper, while opinion testimony regarding underlying factual premises is allowable.

State v. Parker, 354 N.C. 268, 289-90 (2001) (internal citations and quotation marks omitted). Applying this rule, cases have held that it is not error to allow:

- a pathologist to testify that a killing was a "homicide" or "homicidal," *see, e.g.,* State v. Flippen, 344 N.C. 689, 699 (1996) (no error to allow the State's forensic pathologist expert to testify that the victim died as

a result of a "homicidal assault"); State v. Parker, 354 N.C. 268, 290 (2001) (citing *Flippen* and holding that it was not error to allow the State's forensic pathologist expert to testify that the victim's death was a homicide); State v. Hayes, 239 N.C. App. 539, 549-50 (2015) (no error to allow forensic pathology experts to testify that the cause of death was "homicide by unde[te]rmined means" and "homicidal violence");

- an expert in psychiatry and addiction medicine to testify that the defendant lacked the capacity to form the specific intent to kill, *see, e.g.,* State v. Daniel, 333 N.C. 756, 760-64 (1993) (trial court erred by excluding testimony from a defense expert to this effect; noting that although it has held that expert testimony regarding precise legal terms should be excluded, "specific intent to kill" is not one of those precise legal terms that is off limits);
- a mental health expert to testify that the defendant lacked the capacity to plan, think, or reflect, *Daniel,* 333 N.C. at 760-64 (first-degree murder case), that the defendant's capacity to make and carry out plans was impaired, State v. Shank, 322 N.C. 243, 246-251 (1988) (new trial required in first-degree murder case where the trial court excluded this evidence); *see also* State v. Fisher, 336 N.C. 684, 704 (1994) (noting that a defense expert properly was allowed to opine regarding the defendant's ability to formulate and carry out a plan), or that the defendant acted while under the influence of a mental or emotional disturbance, *Shank,* 322 N.C. at 246-51 (new trial required in a first-degree murder case where the trial court excluded this evidence);
- an expert to testify that the defendant acted with an intent to cause death*,* State v. Teague, 134 N.C. App. 702, 708–09 (1999) (proper to allow expert to opine that one of the victim's "gunshot wounds to the head was consistent with an intent to cause death");
- an endocrinologist, in a case involving a defense of automatism, to testify that the defendant's actions were "not caused by automatism due to hypoglycemia" and that he reached this conclusion because the defendant did not experience amnesia, a characteristic feature of automatism caused by hypoglycemia, State v. Coleman, ___ N.C. App. ___, ___ S.E.2d ___ (July 18, 2017);
- a forensic pathologist who performed the autopsy to testify that the victim was "tortured," where the defendant was charged with first-degree murder on the basis of torture, State v. Jennings, 333 N.C. 579, 597-600 (1993);
- a forensic pathologist who conducted the autopsy to testify that the victim experienced a "sexual assault," *Jennings*, 333 N.C. at 600-601; *see also* State v. O'Hanlan, 153 N.C. App. 546, 553-57 (2002) (citing *Jennings* and holding that medical doctors who examined the victim properly testified that she was sexually assaulted);
- a pathologist who did the autopsy to testify that that defendant's account of the shooting was inconsistent with the type of wound suffered by victim and that the wound was not a self-defense type wound, even though self-defense was an ultimate issue in the case, State v. Saunders, 317 N.C. 308, 314 (1986);

- a physician to testify that a sexual assault victim's injuries were caused by a male penis, State v. Smith, 315 N.C. 76, 99-100 (1985) (noting that the witness did not testify that the victim had been raped or that the defendant had raped her);
- a radiologist to testify, in an assault inflicting serious injury case, that based on the victim's CT scan, the "trauma was definitely very serious intracranial trauma with serious brain injury and serious orbital injury with all the bone damage that was suffered," State v. Liggons, 194 N.C. App. 734, 743-44 (2009) (concluding that the expert's opinion was not inadmissible on the basis that it embraced an ultimate issue to be determined by the jury).

However, it is improper to allow:

- an expert in pathology and medicine, in a homicide case, to testify that injuries suffered by the victim were a "proximate cause of [the victim's] death," State v. Ledford, 315 N.C. 599, 617-19 (1986) (error to allow the expert to testify that a legal standard—"proximate cause"—had been met);
- a mental health expert to testify, in a murder case, that a defendant did or did not premeditate or deliberate, State v. Weeks, 322 N.C. 152, 166–67 (1988) (proper to exclude defense proffered expert testimony that the defendant did not act with deliberation); State v. Cabe, 131 N.C. App. 310, 313-14 (improper to allow the State's expert to testify that the defendant acted with premeditation and deliberation, but allowable here where the defendant opened the door), or that the defendant possessed or lacked the capacity to premeditate or deliberate, State v. Rose, 323 N.C. 455, 459-60 (1988) (*Rose* I) (proper to exclude such testimony); State v. Rose, 327 N.C. 599, 601-05 (1990) (*Rose* II) (the trial court committed reversible error by allowing the State's expert to testify that the defendant was capable of "premeditating"); State v. Mash, 328 N.C. 61, 65-66 (1991) (proper to exclude defense proffered expert testimony regarding the defendant's ability to premediate and deliberate);
- a mental health expert to testify, in a murder case, that the defendant did not act in a "cool state of mind," *Weeks*, 322 N.C. at 165–67; State v. Boyd, 343 N.C. 699, 708-10 (1996) (holding that under *Weeks* and Rule 403, the trial court did not err by preventing a forensic psychologist from using the phrase "cool state of mind" to convey his opinion that the defendant lacked the specific intent necessary to commit premeditated and deliberate murder at the time of the shootings), or under a suddenly aroused violent passion, *Weeks,* 322 N.C. at 165-67.
- a mental health expert to testify that the defendant lacked the capacity to conspire, State v. Brown, 335 N.C. 477, 489 (1994) (no error to exclude testimony of defense expert in forensic psychiatry with a specialty in addictive medicine where the term "conspiracy" had a specific legal definition);

- a medical doctor who examined the victim to testify that she had been "raped" and "kidnapped," State v. O'Hanlan, 153 N.C. App. 546, 557-58 (2002);
- a mental health expert to testify about the law of voluntary intoxication and its effect on the defendant's insanity defense, State v. Silvers, 323 N.C. 646, 655-57 (1989) (agreeing with the defendant's argument that a defense expert was erroneously permitted to offer legal conclusions during cross-examination by the State).

C. Opinion on Credibility of Witness. Expert testimony on the credibility of a witness is not admissible. State v. Heath, 316 N.C. 337, 340-43 (1986) (holding that the expert's testimony was improper for this reason); State v. Aguallo, 318 N.C. 590, 598-99 (1986) (citing *Heath* and holding that the trial court erred by allowing a pediatrician to testify that a rape victim was "believable"); State v. Green, 209 N.C. App. 669, 676-77 (2011) (so stating this rule but holding that in this case, the expert's testimony regarding the defendant's blood alcohol level did not constitute impermissible opinion testimony). Thus, it is error to allow an expert to testify that she believed the victim and to the reason for this belief. State v. Teeter, 85 N.C. App. 624, 631-32 (1987) (testimony by a nurse tendered as an expert for the State with respect to sexually abused mentally retarded adults). However, drawing the line between permissible and impermissible expert testimony in this area can be difficult. In *Teeter,* for example, it was not error for a mental health expert to testify that an adult sexual assault victim who suffered certain mental impairments showed no evidence of a disorder that would impair her ability to distinguish reality from fantasy. *Id.* at 628-29. The court rejected the defendant's argument that this testimony amounted to an impermissible expert opinion concerning the victim's credibility. *Id.* Consider by contrast, *Heath,* in which clinical psychologist Deborah Broadwell testified as an expert for the State in a child sexual assault case involving victim Vickie. At trial, defense counsel asked Vickie if her sister thought she was lying about the attack because Vickie "had lied about so many other things," asked Vickie's mother if she had experienced difficulties with Vickie "making up stories," and cross-examined Broadwell about alleged discrepancies in Vickie's statements to hospital emergency room and mental health clinic personnel. *Heath,* 316 N.C. at 339-40. On redirect, the prosecutor asked Broadwell: "do you have an opinion . . . as to whether or not Vickie was suffering from any type of mental condition . . . which could or might have caused her to make up a story about *the* sexual assault?" *Id.* at 340 (emphasis added). Broadwell responded: "There is nothing in the record or current behavior that indicates that she has a record of lying." *Id.* The court held, in part that the question, focusing as it did on "*the* sexual assault," was improper. It explained:

> We would be confronted with an entirely different situation had the assistant district attorney . . . asked the psychologist if she had an opinion as to whether Vickie was afflicted with any mental condition which might cause her to fantasize about sexual assaults in general or even had the witness confined her response to the subject of a "mental condition."

Id. at 341. But because the question focused on *the* specific incident in question, it was improper under Evidence Rules 608 and 405(a), which "together, forbid an

expert's opinion as to the credibility of a witness." *Id.* at 342. *Heath* thus emphasizes how fine the line can be between permissible and impermissible testimony. *See also* State v. O'Hanlan, 153 N.C. App. 546, 555 (2002) ("[T]he cases dealing with the line between discussing one's expert opinion and improperly commenting on a witness' credibility have made it a thin one.").

Issues regarding impermissible expert opinion testimony on the credibility of a witness arise most frequently in child sexual assault cases. For a more detailed discussion of this issue in that context see *Evidence Issues in Criminal Cases Involving Child Victims and Child Witnesses*, in this Benchbook. For more decisions decided after publication of that Benchbook Chapter, see *Smith's Criminal Case Compendium* (under Evidence; Opinions; Experts; Sexual Assault Cases).

D. Basis for Expert's Opinion.

1. Scope & Adequacy. Evidence Rule 703 provides that "[t]he facts or data . . . upon which an expert bases an opinion or inference may be those perceived by or made known to him at or before the hearing." N.C. R. EVID. 703. *See generally* State v. Morgan, 299 N.C. 191, 206 (1980) (testimony of Chief Medical Examiner regarding identification of human remains and cause of death was based on adequate data where the witness examined the remains, measuring, sorting and photographing them); State v. McClary, 157 N.C. App. 70, 79 (2003) (a forensic psychiatrist properly testified as an expert based on his own meetings with the defendant and his review of psychiatric evaluations done by other psychiatrists); State v. McCall, 162 N.C. App. 64, 71-73 (2004) (it was not error for an expert witness to testify that a child victim's behaviors suggested exposure to trauma, probably sexual abuse, where the expert did not personally examine the child; the expert obtained information about the child from a summary of the child's testimony, a DSS report, and the child's statement to the police; rejecting the defendant's argument that the expert's failure to examine the child rendered her expert opinion unreliable).

An opinion based on inadequate facts or data should be excluded. *See* 2 KENNETH S. BROUN, BRANDIS & BROUN ON NORTH CAROLINA EVIDENCE 742 (2011) [hereinafter BRANDIS & BROUN] (citing cases). As noted above, when expert testimony is not sufficiently tied to the facts of the case, it may fail the "fit test" that is part of the relevancy inquiry. *See* Section II.B.3. above.

2. Of a Type Reasonably Relied Upon. Rule 703 provides that the facts or data underlying the expert's opinion must be "of a type reasonably relied upon by experts in the particular field in forming opinions or inferences upon the subject." N.C. R. EVID. 703. *Compare* State v. Demery, 113 N.C. App. 58, 65-66 (1993) (State's forensic serologist expert properly relied on statistical information concerning the frequency of blood group factors or characteristics in the North Carolina population compiled by the SBI with blood provided by the Red Cross and blood obtained in criminal cases; "The statistics on which he relied are commonly used and accepted in his field in North Carolina, and similar statistics are commonly used and accepted in forensic serology throughout the country"), State v. Purdie, 93 N.C. App. 269, 275-76 (1989) (expert in accident

reconstruction properly based his opinion on physical evidence), *and* State v. Teeter, 85 N.C. App. 624, 628-30 (1987) (clinical psychologist and expert in adult mental retardation and sexual abuse properly testified to the opinion that the victim exhibited behavioral characteristics consistent with sexual abuse; his opinion was based upon his experience in treating sexually abused mentally retarded persons, his familiarity with research and literature in that field, and his personal examination of the victim, all sources reasonably relied upon by experts in the field), *with* State v. Galloway, 145 N.C. App. 555, 564-65 (2001) (the trial court properly excluded statements made by the State's expert in the victim's medical discharge summary referencing the victim's psychiatric history, including substance abuse; because the expert was qualified as an expert in surgery, not psychiatry, the court rejected the defendant's assertion that the statements were admissible under Rule 703, finding that they did not contain facts or data reasonably relied upon by experts in the field of surgery).

3. **Need Not Be Admissible.** Rule 703 provides that if of a type reasonably relied upon by experts in the field, the facts or data forming the basis of the expert's opinion "need not be admissible in evidence." N.C. R. EVID. 703; *see, e.g.,* State v. Jones, 322 N.C. 406, 410-14 (1988) (trial court did not err by admitting hearsay evidence as the basis of an expert's opinion); State v. Purdie, 93 N.C. App. 269, 277 (1989) (same).

   For a discussion of confrontation clause issues related to the basis of the expert's opinion, see *Guide to Crawford and the Confrontation Clause*, in this Benchbook.

4. **Expert Need Not Interview Victim.** Evidence Rule 703 provides that the facts or data on which an expert bases an opinion "may be those perceived by or made known to him at or before the hearing." N.C. R. EVID. 703; *see Purdie*, 93 N.C. App. at 276 ("It is well-settled that an expert witness need not testify from first-hand personal knowledge . . . ."). Furthermore, the North Carolina Supreme Court has clarified that an expert "is not required to examine or interview the prosecuting witness as a prerequisite to testifying about issues relating to the prosecuting witness at trial," noting that "[s]uch a requirement would create a troubling predicament given that defendants do not have the ability to compel the State's witnesses to be evaluated by defense experts." State v. Walston, ___ N.C. ___, 798 S.E.2d 741, 747 (2017); *accord* State v. McCall, 162 N.C. App. 64, 71-73 (2004) (it was not error for an expert witness to testify that a child victim's behaviors suggested exposure to trauma, probably sexual abuse, where the expert did not personally examine the child; the expert obtained information about the child from a summary of the child's testimony, a DSS report and the child's statement to the police; rejecting the defendant's argument that the expert's failure to examine the child rendered her expert opinion unreliable).

5. **Disclosure & Cross-Examination of Basis at Trial.**
   Although an expert may testify without prior disclosure of the basis for his or her opinion, disclosure is required when requested by the other side. Rule 705 provides:

> The expert may testify in terms of opinion or inference and give his reasons therefor without prior disclosure of the underlying facts or data, unless an adverse party requests otherwise, in which event the expert will be required to disclose such underlying facts or data on direct examination or voir dire before stating the opinion. The expert may in any event be required to disclose the underlying facts or data on cross-examination.

N.C. R. EVID. 705; *see, e.g.,* State v. Brown, 101 N.C. App. 71, 76-77 (1990) (noting that under Rule 705 an expert does not have to identify the basis of his opinion, absent a specific request by opposing counsel; rejecting the defendant's argument that the State's failed to establish a proper foundation for its expert's opinion as to the weight of the cocaine where the expert testified to his opinion but the defendant made no inquiry as to basis on cross-examination); State v. Fletcher, 92 N.C. App. 50, 57 (1988) ("The basis of an expert's opinion need not be stated unless requested by an adverse party and here defendant made no such request.").

Courts have noted that "[d]isclosure of the basis of the opinion is essential to the factfinder's assessment of the credibility and weight to be given to it." State v. Jones, 322 N.C. 406, 412 (1988). If the party requesting disclosure does not specify disclosure on voir dire, the trial court probably can allow for disclosure on voir dire or direct examination without committing error. 2 BRANDIS & BROUN at 738 (so noting)*; see* State v. Pretty, 134 N.C. App. 379, 382-83 (1999) (no error where disclosure occurred during direct and cross-examination rather than on voir dire and no prejudice was shown from the delay in obtaining the evidence). But, if the party seeking disclosure specifically asks for disclosure on voir dire and the trial court allows disclosure only on direct examination, prejudicial error may occur if improper evidence is presented to the jury. 2 BRANDIS & BROUN at 738. When disclosure is ordered through voir dire and the trial court admits the opinion, it has been suggested that the trial court has discretion to require the expert to state the facts or data before giving the opinion or leave them to be brought out on cross-examination. *Id.*

"Wide latitude is generally given to a cross-examiner in his attempts to discredit the expert witness, including questioning the expert in order to show that the facts or data forming the basis of the expert's opinion were incomplete." State v. Black, 111 N.C. App. 284, 293–94 (1993). As has been explained:

> On cross-examination ... opposing counsel may require the expert to disclose the facts, data, and opinions underlying the expert's opinion not previously disclosed. With respect to facts, data, or opinions forming the basis of the expert's opinion, disclosed on direct examination or during cross-examination, the cross-examiner may explore whether, and if so how, the non-existence of any fact, data, or opinion or the existence of a contrary version of the fact, data, or opinion supported by the evidence, would affect

> the expert's opinion. Similarly the expert may be cross-examined with respect to material reviewed by the expert but upon which the expert does not rely. Counsel is also permitted to test the knowledge, experience, and fairness of the expert by inquiring as to what changes of conditions would affect his opinion, and in conducting such an inquiry ... the cross-examiner is not limited to facts finding support in the record. It is, however, improper to inquire of the expert whether his opinion differs from another expert's opinion, not expressed in a learned treatise, if the other expert's opinion has not itself been admitted in evidence. An expert witness may, of course, be impeached with a learned treatise, admissible as substantive evidence . . . .

Id. at 294 (quoting MCCORMICK, MCCORMICK ON EVIDENCE § 13 (1992), and going on to hold that the trial court properly allowed the defendant to elicit on cross-examination that the expert never examined certain medical records, that in formulating similar opinions she often relied upon such records, and that examination of the records would in fact have assisted the expert in formulating her opinion in this case; however, the trial could properly limit the defendant's cross-examination when he sought to question the expert regarding the contents of data that the expert had not considered or used in formulating her opinion and which was not contained in any recognized learned treatise); *see also* State v. White, 343 N.C. 378, 393 (1996) (the trial court properly allowed the State to cross-examine a defense psychiatry expert about the work of a clinical psychologist upon which the expert had relied where the expert disagreed with a conclusion drawn by the clinical psychologist).

Cases have held it to be error when the trial court prohibits defense counsel from asking a defense expert about the basis of his or her opinion. State v. Davis, 340 N.C. 1, 25-26 (1995) (error to sustain the State's objections to questions posed to the defendant's mental health expert about the basis of the expert's opinion); State v. Allison, 307 N.C. 411, 413-17 (1983) (the trial court committed prejudicial error in a case involving the insanity defense where it prohibited defense mental health experts from testifying to the basis of their opinions that the defendant was unable to distinguish between right and wrong with respect to his behavior at the time of the alleged crimes).

For a discussion of what discovery must be provided in connection with expert witnesses, see *Discovery in Criminal Cases* in this Benchbook.

6. Status as Substantive Evidence; Limiting Instruction. When evidence is admissible as the basis of an expert's opinion, it is not substantive evidence unless it qualifies for admission under some independently recognized principle, such as an exception to the hearsay rule. 2 BRANDIS & BROUN at 744-45. One exception to the hearsay rule that might apply is N.C. R. EVID. 803(18) (hearsay exceptions, availability of declarant immaterial), which provides an exception to the hearsay rule as follows:

> To the extent called to the attention of an expert witness upon cross-examination or relied upon by him in direct

> examination, statements contained in published treatises, periodicals, or pamphlets on a subject of history, medicine, or other science or art, established as a reliable authority by the testimony or admission of the witness or by other expert testimony or by judicial notice. If admitted, the statements may be read into evidence but may not be received as exhibits.

If the evidence does not qualify for admission as substantive evidence, its admission should be accompanied by an appropriate limiting instruction. *See* State v. Jones, 322 N.C. 406, 414 (1988) (noting that the defendant is entitled to a limiting instruction upon request).

E. Testimony Outside of Expert's Expertise. An expert's testimony should relate to the expert's area of expertise. State v. Ward, 364 N.C. 133, 146 n.5 (2010) ("[c]aution should be exercised in assuring that the subject matter of the expert witness's testimony relates to the expertise the witness brings to the courtroom" (quotation omitted)). For example, in one recent case the North Carolina Supreme Court noted that while a defense proffered witness who was a former police officer and trainer in police use of force matters would have been qualified to testify about standard police practices regarding the use of force, he was not qualified to testify about the human body's sympathetic nervous system. State v. McGrady, 368 N.C. 880, 896 (2016). By contrast, in another case the Court of Appeals rejected the defendant's argument that testimony by a forensic serologist that the defendant's blood profile was the same as .2% of the population and the victim's blood profile was the same as 8.2% of the population was beyond the scope of witness's expertise. State v. Demery, 113 N.C. App. 58, 63-64 (1993).

F. Terminology.

Although not binding authority for a judge, the PCAST REPORT asserts that statements by experts suggesting or implying greater certainty than is shown by the empirical evidence "are not scientifically valid and should not be permitted." PCAST REPORT at 145. It continues:

> In particular, courts should never permit scientifically indefensible claims such as: "zero," "vanishingly small," "essentially zero," "negligible," "minimal," or "microscopic" error rates; "100 percent certainty" or proof "to a reasonable degree of scientific certainty;" identification "to the exclusion of all other sources;" or a chance of error so remote as to be a "practical impossibility."

Id.; see also Paul C. Giannelli, *The NRC Report and Its Implications for Criminal Litigation*, 50 JURIMETRICS J. 53, 57-60 (2009) (discussing a similar position in the 2009 report by the National Research Council, entitled, STRENGTHENING FORENSIC SCIENCE IN THE UNITED STATES: A PATH FORWARD, and relevant cases).

IV. Interplay Between Rule 403 & the 700 Rules. Evidence that is admissible under Rule 702 still may be inadmissible under Rule 403. *See* N.C. R. EVID. 702(g) ("This section

does not limit the power of the trial court to disqualify an expert witness on grounds other than the qualifications set forth in this section."). *Compare, e.g.,* State v. King, 366 N.C. 68, 75-76 (2012) (holding that the trial court did not abuse its discretion by excluding under Rule 403 the expert testimony regarding repressed memory that was admissible under Rule 702), *and* State v. Walston, ___ N.C. ___, 798S.E.2d. 741, 746 (2017) (citing *King* and noting that Rule 403 would allow for the exclusion of expert testimony—in that case, regarding repressed memory and the suggestibility of memory—even if such evidence was admissible under Rule 702), *with* State v. Cooper, 229 N.C. App. 442, 463 (2013) (in this murder case where files recovered from the defendant's computer linked the defendant to the crime, the trial court abused its discretion by excluding under Rule 403 a defense expert proffered to testify that the defendant's computer had been tampered with).

Likewise, evidence admissible under Rule 705 may be excluded under Rule 403. State v. Coffey, 336 N.C. 412, 420-22 (1994) (although Rule 705 allows a party cross-examining an expert to inquire into the facts on which the expert's opinion is based, that Rule "does not end the inquiry" and the trial court may exclude such evidence under Rule 403; where the probative value of evidence of the defendant's convictions was substantially outweighed by the danger of unfair prejudice, evidence of the convictions was not admissible on grounds that they constituted a basis of the expert's opinion).

V. Court Appointed Experts. Evidence Rule 706(a) provides for court appointed experts. It provides:

> The court may on its own motion or on the motion of any party enter an order to show cause why expert witnesses should not be appointed, and may request the parties to submit nominations. The court may appoint any expert witnesses agreed upon by the parties, and may appoint witnesses of its own selection. An expert witness shall not be appointed by the court unless he consents to act. A witness so appointed shall be informed of his duties by the court in writing, a copy of which shall be filed with the clerk, or at a conference in which the parties shall have opportunity to participate. A witness so appointed shall advise the parties of his findings, if any; his deposition may be taken by any party; and he may be called to testify by the court or any party. He shall be subject to cross-examination by each party, including a party calling him as a witness.

N.C. R. EVID. 706(a); *see also* State v. Robinson, 368 N.C. 596, 597 (2015) (instructing that on remand the trial court may, in its discretion appoint an expert under the rule).

If the court appoints an expert, the witness is "entitled to reasonable compensation in whatever sum the court may allow." N.C. R. EVID. 706(b).

The rule allows the court, in the exercise of its discretion, to "authorize disclosure to the jury of the fact that the court appointed the expert witness." N.C. R. EVID. 706(c). And it specifies that nothing in the rule limits the parties in calling expert witnesses of their own selection. N.C. R. EVID. 706(d).

VI. Defendant's Right to Expert Assistance.

For a discussion of a criminal defendant's right to expert assistance and the procedure for obtaining such assistance, see Chapter 5, Experts and Other Assistance, in JOHN

RUBIN & ALYSON A. GRINE, NORTH CAROLINA DEFENDER MANUAL VOL. 1, PRETRIAL (2013), http://defendermanuals.sog.unc.edu/defender-manual/2.

VII. Standard of Review on Appeal.

In reviewing a trial court's decision regarding the admissibility of expert testimony, the appellate courts apply the deferential abuse of discretion standard. *See, e.g., Walston*, ___ N.C. ___, 798 S.E.2d at 745; *McGrady,* 368 N.C. at 893; State v. Babich, ___ N.C. App. ___, 797 S.E.2d 359, 361 (2017); State v. Hunt, ___ N.C. App. ___, 790 S.E.2d 874, 881 (2016).

1

Roadmap

- Make objections and arguments
- Establish facts in the record
- Appeal correctly

2

Getting started on the right foot:

- Make a motion for complete recordation. If you don't, the following won't be recorded:
  - Jury selection in noncapital cases;
  - Opening statements and closing arguments; and
  - Arguments of counsel on questions of law.
- You should win it every time!
  - Upon motion of any party or on the judge's own motion, proceedings excepted "*must* be recorded." N.C.G.S. § 15A-1241(b).

3

4

Discovery

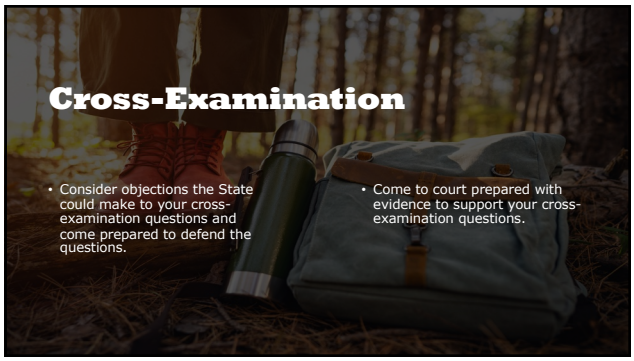
- File written discovery requests, specifying what you want, and follow up with a motion to compel. If the motion to compel is allowed, get a written order from the judge.
- Keep a running list of items you need to ask the State to produce.
- Cite constitutional and statutory grounds for your entitlement to the discovery.

5

Discovery

- Ask yourself, "how will the State introduce this evidence? What objections will I make to this evidence?"
  - Will I need a limiting instruction?
- Come prepared.

6



7

Pre-trial motions

- Request and motion for discovery
- Motion for complete recordation
- Motion for a bill of particulars
- Motion to sever charges or defendants
- Motion to suppress
  - You MUST attach an affidavit, and you can sign the affidavit
  - If the MTS is denied, you MUST object in front of the jury when the evidence is actually offered.

8

Motions *in Limine*

- A motion *in limine* (and pretrial ruling on it) regarding the admissibility of evidence is **not sufficient** to preserve an issue for appeal.
- Trial counsel **must** renew the motion or object to the evidence **at trial in the presence of the jury**.

9

Getting on the Road

- Joinder
- Jury Selection

10

Joinder of Charges

N.C.G.S. § 15A-926(a)

- Two or more offenses may be joined for trial when the offenses, whether felonies or misdemeanors or both, are:
  - based on the same act or transaction or on a series of acts or transactions connected together **or**
  - constituting parts of a single scheme or plan.

11

Joinder of Defendants

N.C.G.S. § 15A-926(b)

Charges against two or more defendants **may** be joined for trial:

- When each of the defendants is charged with accountability for each offense; **or**
- When, even if all of the defendants are not charged with accountability for each offense, the several offenses charged:
  1. Were part of a common scheme or plan; or
  2. Were part of the same act or transaction; or
  3. Were so closely connected in time, place, and occasion that it would be difficult to separate proof of one charge from proof of the others.

12

Motion to Sever Charges and Defendants
N.C.G.S. § 15A-927

- Objecting to the State's Motion to Join doesn't preserve joinder issues for appeal.
- A motion to sever must be made.
- The motion must be made pretrial
  - Unless, "based on grounds not previously known"

Assert constitutional and statutory grounds.

- 5th Amendment and state constitutional grounds
- 15A-926 (same transaction, single plan)
- 15A-927 ("necessary to achieve a fair determination of the defendant's guilt or innocence")

- Assert how the defendant will be prejudiced.

13

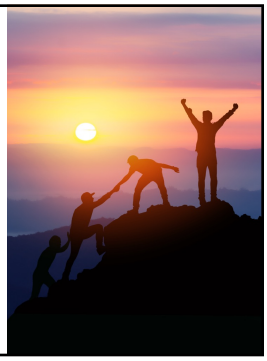
Motion to Sever Charges and Defendants
N.C.G.S. § 15A-927

- Motion on the same grounds must be renewed before or at the close of all the evidence. Otherwise, any right to severance is waived by failure to renew the motion.
- *State v. Yarborough*, 271 N.C. App. 159, 164 (2020) is an example of unpreserved joinder of offenses.

14

Jury Selection

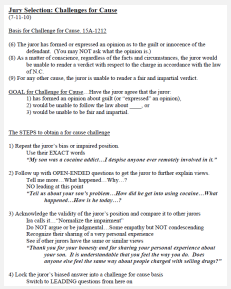
- *Batson* (race) and *J.E.B.* (gender) discrimination claims
  - A complete recordation is imperative for preserving.
  - Preserve for federal litigation.
- Manner of juror selection, including fair cross-section of the community.
- Denied challenges for cause
  - Specific, technical requirements to preserve
  - § 15A-1214
  - Have a folder with voir dire materials including the statute



15

Challenges for Cause

- Print out N.C.G.S. § 15A-1212 and have it in your trial notebook.
- Have a script to help you develop and preserve a challenge for cause.



Jury Selection: Challenges for Cause
(7-11-18)

Basis for Challenge for Cause: 15A-1212

(6) The juror has formed or expressed an opinion as to the guilt or innocence of the defendant. (You may NOT ask what the opinion is.)
(8) As a matter of conscience, regardless of the facts and circumstances, the juror would be unable to render a verdict with respect to the charge in accordance with the law of N.C.
(9) For any other cause, the juror is unable to render a fair and impartial verdict.

GOAL for Challenge for Cause: ...Have the juror agree that the juror
1) has formed an opinion about guilt (or "expressed" an opinion),
2) would be unable to follow the law about ____, or
3) would be unable to be fair and impartial.

The STEPS to obtain a for cause challenge

1) Repeat the juror's bias or impaired position.
Use these EXACT words
"My son was a cocaine addict…I despise anyone ever remotely involved in it."

2) Follow up with OPEN-ENDED questions to get the juror to further explain views.
Tell me more…What happened…Why…?
NO looking at this point
"Tell us about your son's problem…How did he get into using cocaine…What happened…How is he today…?

3) Acknowledge the validity of the juror's position and compare it to other jurors
Iin culls it: "Normalize the impairment"
Do NOT argue or be judgmental…Some empathy but NOT condescending
Recognize their sharing of a very personal experience
See if other jurors have the same or similar views
"Thank you for your honesty and for sharing your personal experience about your son. It is understandable that you feel the way you do. Does anyone else feel the same way about people charged with selling drugs?"

4) Look the juror's biased answer unto a challenge for cause basis
Switch to LEADING questions from here on

16

Challenges for Cause
N.C.G.S. § 15A-1214(h)

For a defendant to seek reversal of the case on appeal on the ground that the judge refused to allow a challenge made for cause, he must have:

(1) Exhausted the peremptory challenges available to him;

(2) Renewed his challenge as provided in subsection (i) of this section; and

(3) Had his renewal motion denied as to the juror in question.

17

Challenges for Cause
N.C.G.S. § 15A-1214(i)

A party who has exhausted his peremptory challenges may move orally or in writing to renew a challenge for cause previously denied if the party either:

(1) Had peremptorily challenged the juror; or

(2) States in the motion that he would have challenged that juror peremptorily had his challenges not been exhausted.

18

Questions for the jury

Have case law to support your client's right to have you ask certain questions.

- A prospective juror who is unable to accept a particular defense…recognized by law is prejudiced to such an extent that he can no longer be considered competent. Such jurors should be removed from the jury when challenged for cause. *State v Leonard*, 295 N.C. 58, 62-63 (1978).
- Defense counsel is free to inquire into the potential jurors' attitudes concerning the specific defenses of accident or self-defense. *State v. Parks*, 324 N.C. 420 (1989).

JURY SELECTION QUESTIONS
(6-27-06)

I. GENERAL PURPOSE OF VOIR DIRE

"Voir dire examination serves the **dual purpose** of enabling the court to **select an impartial jury and assisting counsel in exercising peremptory challenges**." McMillan v Virginia, 500 U.S. 415, 431 (1991) (The N.C. Supreme Court explained that a **similar "dual purpose"** was to ascertain whether **grounds exist for cause challenges** and to enable the lawyers to **intelligently exercise their peremptory challenges**. State v. Simpson, 341 N.C. 316, 462 SE2d 191, 202 (1995).

"Where an adversary wishes to exclude a juror because of bias, …it is the adversary seeking exclusion who must demonstrate, ***through questioning***, that the potential juror lacks impartiality." Wainwright v. Witt, 469 U.S. at 423 (1985).

Each defendant is entitled to full opportunity to face the prospective jurors, make diligent inquiry into their fitness to serve, and to exercise his right to challenge those who are objectionable to him. State v Thomas, 294 N.C. 105, 115 (1978).

The purpose of voir dire and the exercise of challenges "is to eliminate extremes of partiality and to assure both…[parties]…that the persons chosen to decide the guilt or innocence of the accused will reach that decision solely upon the evidence produced at trial." State v. Cooper, 335 N.C. 618, 440 S.E.2d 826, 832 (1994).

Jurors, like all of us, have natural inclinations and favorites, and they sometimes, at least on a subconscious level, give the benefit of the doubt to their favorites. So jury selection, in a real sense, is an opportunity for counsel to see if there is anything in a juror's yesterday or today that would make it difficult for that juror to view the facts, not in an abstract sense, but in a particular case, dispassionately. State v Hedgepath, 66 N.C. App. 390 (1984).

19

On the Road to Review (Trial Issues)

- Evidentiary Error
- Jury Instruction Issues
- Motions to Dismiss
- Improper Closing Arguments

20

21

"In order to preserve an issue for appellate review, a party must have presented to the trial court a timely request, objection, or motion, stating the specific grounds for the ruling the party desired the court to make if the specific grounds were not apparent from the context. It is also necessary for the complaining party to obtain a ruling upon the party's request, objection, or motion. "

Rule 10(a)

22

Objections must be:

1. Timely.

In front of the jury, even if made outside the presence of the jury.

2. Specific.

Cite the Rule or Statute

Include Constitutional Grounds

3. Ruled on.

On the record

May also need to include a motion to strike, a request for a limiting instruction, or a motion for a mistrial.

23

N.C. R. Evid. 103(a)

- "Once the court makes a definitive ruling on the record admitting or excluding evidence, either at or before trial, a party need not renew an objection or offer of proof to preserve a claim of error for appeal."
- **Held unconstitutional in *State v. Oglesby*, 361 N.C. 550 (2007).**
- Even if a judge says an objection is preserved, that doesn't make it preserved.

24

Practice Tips:

- ✓Organize and label your questions to match up with the evidence rule that you are going to argue.
- ✓When you prepare for each witness's testimony, highlight/bold/circle the evidence and possible questions that you must object to.
  - ✓List the constitutional grounds and evidence rules
- ✓Don't rely on your memory in court. Write it down.

25

Specificity

LACK OF RELIABILITY OF OPINION ISSUE – RULE 702

what are your opinions?

-told ADA on 3/9/12 that having to testify with John in the room would affect Sally's ability to testify and effectively communicate all due to his presence in the room as well as other people being present talking about what happened

-thinks Sally will clam up at the sight of John in the courtroom – not sure whether that was due to fear or some other emotion but she said his presence would definitely hinder her ability to give truthful testimony

(1) testimony must be based on sufficient facts or data

have you talked with Sally about a trial?

a courtroom?

a jury?

being in court with John?

have you asked what she thinks about it?

other sources of trauma – medical examinations

26

Specificity

WORKSHEET FOR PTSD TEST

-p. 2 of 6 – "has always been shy and even resistant to do new things, classrooms. sometimes has to be peeled off mom."

(2) testimony is product of reliable principles and methods

cite the studies you have relied upon in reaching your opinion

what research has been done in this area

who are the leading experts in this area

what resources have you consulted in forming your opinion

what methods have you used to reach your opinion

what principles of psychology underlie your opinion

(3) witness has applied the principles and methods reliably to the facts of the case

have you produced a report that applies your training and experience to the facts in this case

FACTS DO NOT SATISIFY THE STATUTORY REQUIREMENTS

p. 4 of state v. Jackson – distinguish facts

27

Motion to Suppress

- Generally, must be made pretrial. N.C.G.S. § 15A-975
- "must state the grounds upon which it is made" N.C.G.S. § 15A-977(a)
- may be summarily denied if the motion "does not allege a legal basis for the motion[,]" or if the supporting affidavit "does not as a matter of law support the ground alleged" N.C.G.S. § 15A-977(c).
- Still must object at trial.

28

Motions to Suppress and Other Motions Made Before or During Trial

- Object at the moment the evidence is introduced in the presence of the jury, even if voir dire was held immediately before or earlier in case.
- Object if the evidence is mentioned by a later witness.
- Don't open the door if evidence is suppressed.

29

Voir Dire

- Ask for a voir dire hearing to address witness testimony and exhibits.
  - A single document might contain various pieces of evidence that are inadmissible for different reasons.
  - During pre-trial preparation, you should go through the documents sentence by sentence and note objections.
- But you must still object during the witness's testimony to the admission of the testimony and the exhibit.

30

State v. Lowery

278 N.C.App.333,341 (2021)

- Pretrial motion to limit testimony filed challenging statements as hearsay and a violation of defendant's rights to due process and to confrontation.
- Trial court ruled statements were admissible under excited utterance exception to the hearsay rule and did not address consitutional grounds
- Defendant objected at trial. But "the objection was general and did not specifically raise any constitutional ground"
- Confrontation issue not preserved for appellate review

31

State v. Draughon

281 N.C.App.573,581 (2022)

- When Draughon turned himself in, police seized Draughon's cell phone from the car he arrived in.
- When the detective started to talk about the phone at trial, counsel objected because it was "illegally obtained" because there was no search warrant for Draughon's father's car.
- The objection was overruled.
- A motion to suppress made at trial, whether oral or written, should state the legal ground upon which it is made.
- While an affidavit is not required for a motion timely made at trial, the defendant must, however, specify that he is making a motion to suppress and request a *voir dire*.
- "The record and transcript reveal that Draughon only made a general objection, and Draughon has **failed to meet the burden of establishing that he made a motion to suppress in proper form**. Because Draughon did not file a motion to suppress the cell phone evidence before or during trial, he has completely waived appellate review of the issue."

32

Jury Instruction Issues

- Counsel must have requested or objected to the jury instruction before the jury retired to deliberate.
- Requests for pattern jury instructions can be oral.
- Requests for special jury instructions, non-pattern instructions, and modifications to pattern instructions must be made in writing.

33

Constitutionalize Your Requests

- "Our courts have consistently held that 'due process requires that a lesser included offense instruction be given when the evidence warrants such an instruction.'" *State v. Bennett*, 272 N.C. App. 577 (2020).
  - Cite the 14th Amendment and Article I, section 19
- "[T]he refusal to instruct the jury concerning an affirmative defense is a harsh sanction that implicates defendant's fundamental right to present a defense at trial." *State v. Foster*, 235 N.C. App. 365, 382, (2014).
  - Cite the 6th and 14th Amendments and Article I, sections 19 and 23

34

Practice Tips:

- Print pattern instructions for all offenses.
- Review pattern instructions.
  - Read the footnotes and annotations.
  - Footnotes are not required unless requested!
  - Consider terms/phrases in brackets
- Limiting instructions are not required unless requested, so request it, and then remember to make sure it is actually given!
- Think outside the box and construct proposed instructions based on cases.
- Ask the judge for a written copy of instructions.

35

State v. Benner

380 N.C. 621, 629 (2022)

- Defendant requested that the trial court instruct the jury in accordance with N.C.P.I — Crim. 308.10 (Self-Defense, Retreat-Including Homicide (to Be Used Following Self-Defense Instructions Where Retreat Is in Issue))
- Defendant did not request that the trial court instruct the jury that "he was presumed to have a reasonable fear of imminent death or great bodily injury as a result of the fact that he had been assaulted in his home." "[A] request to be afforded the protections made available by N.C.G.S. §§ 14-51.2 and 14-51.3 does not preserve his right to complain about the trial court's failure to instruct the jury in accordance with every sentence or clause contained in those statutory provisions."
- "North Carolina Rule of Appellate Procedure 10(a)(2) requires that a party seeking to challenge an alleged instructional error on appeal must either specifically request an instruction that the trial court fails to deliver or object to the trial court's failure to deliver the relevant instruction in a timely manner. Defendant did not take either of these steps."

36

State v. Acker

282 N.C. App. 574, 580 (2022)

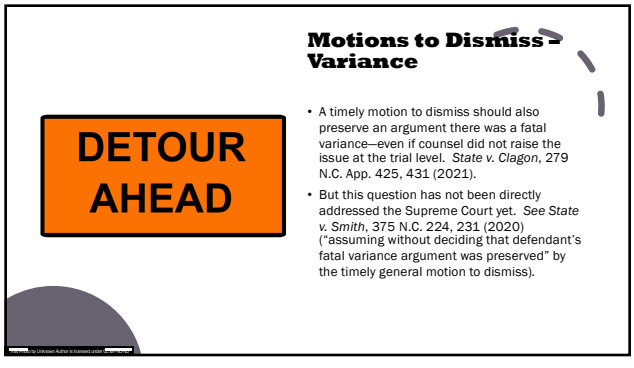
- Defendant's trial counsel filed a pre-trial notice of self-defense pursuant to N.C.G.S. § 15A-905(c)
- At trial, defendant's attorney submitted a written request for jury instructions, including requests for self-defense and manslaughter instructions. Repeated request for both at charge conference. Trial court denied requests.
- The trial court then asked defendant's trial counsel the following: THE COURT: All right, Mr. Brown, for purposes of the record, you're in agreement with the jury instructions? Each instruction is what you requested also with the exception of your objection to lying in wait? MR. BROWN: That is correct, Your Honor.
- No objection when the jury was not instructed on manslaughter or self-defense. When the trial court asked for "any additions or requests or deletions" with respect to the jury charge, defendant's trial counsel responded, "No, Your Honor."
- Deemed not preserved and applied plain error review.

37

Motion to Dismiss – Sufficiency

- Trial counsel must have made a timely motion to dismiss at the end of **all** the evidence to preserve a sufficiency issue for appeal.
- "We hold that, under Rule 10(a)(3), and our case law, defendant's simple act of moving to dismiss at the proper time preserved all issues related to the sufficiency of the evidence for appellate review." *State v. Golder*, 374 N.C. 238, 245 (2020).
- "Rule 10(a)(3) does not require that the defendant assert a specific ground for a motion to dismiss for insufficiency of the evidence." *Id.* at 245-46.

38



Motions to Dismiss – Variance

- A timely motion to dismiss should also preserve an argument there was a fatal variance—even if counsel did not raise the issue at the trial level. *State v. Clagon*, 279 N.C. App. 425, 431 (2021).
- But this question has not been directly addressed the Supreme Court yet. *See State v. Smith*, 375 N.C. 224, 231 (2020) ("assuming without deciding that defendant's fatal variance argument was preserved" by the timely general motion to dismiss).

39

Closing Arguments

- Improper arguments are not preserved without objection.
- Objections during argument are more important to protecting the defendant's rights on appeal than the attorney not appearing rude.

40

Objections – Closing Arguments

- Burden shifting
- Name calling
- Arguing facts not in evidence
- Personal opinions
- Misrepresenting the law or the instructions
- Inflammatory arguments

41

42

Making a Complete Record

- Move for a complete recordation
- State the basis for objection on the record
  - Even if stated at the bench or in chambers, put it on the record
- An oral proffer as to expected testimony is ineffective
  - The witness must testify
  - The exhibit/document must be given to the judge and be placed in the record

43

Commonly overlooked items

- PowerPoints – get in the record
  - Printed copy is not always adequate
  - Compare DA's PowerPoint slides to the actual exhibits – object to manipulation
- Digital evidence – get in the record and keep copies
- Ex parte materials – clearly labeled and sealed and not served on the State

44

What do you see?

- Courtroom conditions
- Law enforcement presence
- Victim's rights advocates
- Covid restrictions
- What can the jury see?
- Signs on the courtroom door restricting access
- How big is the screen that shows gruesome pictures and where is it located?

45

Making A Complete Record

- Submit a photograph of evidence and make sure it's in the court file.
  - Picture of client's tattoo
- Describe what happens in court.
  - "Three men came into the courtroom wearing shirts that said, 'Justice for Trey.'"
- Describe what a witness does.
  - "Mr. Jones, I see that when you described the shooting, you raised your right hand in the air and moved your finger as if pulling the trigger of a gun two times. Is that correct?"

46

Making A Complete Record

- Defense wants to cross-examine State's witness about pending charges.
  - Ask to voir dire, and ask the questions.
  - Submit copies of indictments.
- Defendant wants to testify that he knows the alleged victim tried to kill someone five years ago. Judge won't let him.
  - Ask to voir dire, and ask the questions.
  - Make sure the answers are in the record.

47

Properly Appealing

- Rules 3 and 4 of N.C. Rules of Appellate Procedure address notice of appeal.
- In criminal cases, Notice of Appeal can be oral or written
- SBM cases are "civil" cases and require written notice of appeal
- Juvenile cases are governed by Rule 3 and N.C.G.S. § 7B-2602

48

Rule 4

Oral Notice of Appeal

- Given "at trial"

MS. [redacted]. Judge, yes.
Mr. [redacted] respectively gives notice of appeal.

Written Notice of Appeal

- Filed with the clerk and served on other parties within 14 days of entry of judgment or order
- Specify the party or parties taking the appeal
- Designate the judgment or order being appealed and the court to which appeal is taken
- Signed by counsel

49

Rule 4

Oral Notice of Appeal

- Given "at trial"

MS. [redacted]. Judge, yes.
Mr. [redacted] respectively gives notice of appeal.

Written Notice of Appeal

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
XXXXX COUNTY

IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE
SUPERIOR COURT DIVISION
*** CRS **** (include all file numbers)

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA)
)
v.)
)
CLIENT NAME)
Defendant-Appellant)

NOTICE OF APPEAL
AND REQUEST FOR
APPOINTMENT
OF APPELLATE COUNSEL

CLIENT, by and through undersigned counsel, and pursuant to N.C.G.S. §§ 15A-1444, and N.C. App. R. 4, gives notice of appeal to the North Carolina Court of Appeals from the final judgment entered in the above-captioned case on DATE by the Superior Court of XXXXX County, the Honorable NAME OF JUDGE presiding.

CLIENT, by and through undersigned counsel, further asserts that he remains indigent and respectfully requests appointment of the Office of the Appellate Defender pursuant to N.C.G.S. § 7A-451 and IDS Rule 3.1.

This the ____ day of _____, 2021.

_____
Attorney for Defendant
ADDRESS
PHONE NUMBER

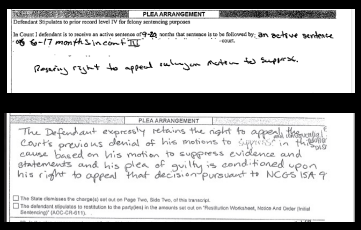
50

Motion to Suppress

- If defense litigated a MTS and lost, and defendant pleaded guilty, defense must give prior notice to the court and DA that defendant will appeal.
  - Put it in the transcript and state it on the record.
  - Give notice of appeal of the judgment.

51

Motion to Suppress



PLEA ARRANGEMENT

(Defendant Stipulates to prior record level IV for felony sentencing purposes)

In Count 1 defendant is to receive an active sentence of 9-23 months that sentence is to be followed by: an active sentence of 6-17 months in count VII

Reserving right to appeal ruling on motion to suppress.

PLEA ARRANGEMENT

The Defendant expressly retains the right to appeal the Court's previous denial of his motions to ~~suppress~~ in the cause based on his motion to suppress evidence and statements and his plea of guilty is conditioned upon his right to appeal that decision pursuant to NCGS 15A-9

☐ The State dismisses the charge(s) set out on Page Two, Side Two, of this transcript.
☐ The defendant stipulates to restitution to the party(ies) in the amounts set out on "Restitution Worksheet, Notice And Order (Initial Sentencing)" (AOC-CR-611).

52

Going the Extra Mile

- Make sure all court dates on are Appellate Entries.
- Ensure the Office of the Appellate Defender is appointed and that the Office of the Appellate Defender has received the case from the county clerk's office

53

Unpacking

- Motions *in limine* will not preserve most evidentiary issues for appeal.
- Objections at trial must be timely and specific.
- A ruling must be made on all grounds in a motion or for an objection.
- Jury instructions must be requested before jury deliberations.
- Proper notice of appeal must be given.

54

Souvenirs
(aka Resources)

- IDS website
- SOG website
  - Defender Manual
  - Pattern Jury Instructions
- OAD on-call attorneys

55

56

Pre-Trial Preparation for Criminal Defense Practitioners
How To Make Sure Your Objections Are Heard On Appeal
(aka Preserving the Record)

Glenn Gerding, Appellate Defender

Top Tips To Ensure Full Appellate Review:

→ **Move for a complete recordation.**
→ **Objections must be made in front of the jury to be timely.**
→ **Objections must be specific (cite specific statute, rule of evidence, and constitutional basis)**
→ **Move to dismiss all charges for insufficient evidence and variance.**
→ **Submit non-pattern jury instructions, and requests to modify pattern instructions, in writing.**
→ **Give proper notice of appeal and ensure appellate counsel is appointed and that the Office of the Appellate Defender has received the case from the county clerk's office.**
→ **Thoughtful preparation, research, and brainstorming with an eye towards appeal will help you have confidence in objecting and preserving the record. Make it a habit to be forward thinking. Read appellate opinions not just for the legal ruling, but to learn how the issue was (or was not) properly preserved.**

****

→ **Move for a complete recordation.** – Make sure everything is in the record. Proffer evidence through witness testimony and documents.

In non-capital criminal cases, the court reporter is not required to record voir dire, opening statements, or closing arguments, except upon motion of any party or the judge's own motion. N.C.G.S. 15A-1241.

Counsel or the trial judge should ask for and ensure a complete recordation. Appellate review of *Batson* claims, in particular, are frustrated by the lack of a transcript of voir dire. In *State v. Campbell*, 846 S.E.2d 804 (N.C. Ct. App. 2020), voir dire was not recorded. Defense made a *Batson* objection and the parties tried to recreate the record. Judge Hampson noted in his concurrence/dissent that:

> our existing case law significantly limits a party's ability to preserve the issue absent not only complete recordation but also specific and direct voir dire questioning of prospective jurors (or other evidence) about their race. . . . In light of our case law indicating a trial lawyer cannot recreate the record of an unrecorded jury voir dire to preserve a *Batson* challenge, the obligation to recreate that record, it seems, must fall on the trial judge in conjunction with the parties.

→ **To be timely, objections must be made <u>in front of the jury</u>** to preserve any objections and arguments made in voir dire hearings. This includes preserving a ruling on a motion to suppress. You cannot rely on Rule 103(a) of the N.C. Rules of Evidence. Why not?

Our Supreme Court has held Rule 103(a) unconstitutional in part because only the Supreme Court, not the General Assembly, can create rules for preserving error. *State v. Oglesby*, 361 N.C. 550 (2007).

Rule 10(a) of the N.C. Rules of Appellate Procedure states:

> "In order to preserve an issue for appellate review, a party must have presented to the trial court a timely request, objection, or motion, stating the specific grounds for the ruling the party desired the court to make if the specific grounds were not apparent from the context…"

Therefore, our Supreme Court interprets Rule 10(a)(1) to require objections to evidence to be made <u>in front of the jury at the time the evidence is introduced</u>, even if the objection has been made and ruled upon previously. *State v. Ray*, 364 N.C. 272 (2010).

In *State v. Ray*, outside the presence of the jury, the defense attorney objected based on Rule 404(b) to the prosecutor's cross-examination of the defendant. Although the voir dire hearing occurred immediately before this line of questioning began in the presence of the jury, defendant's attorney did not object during the actual exchange in front of the jury. The Supreme Court held that the failure to object in front of the jury waived the 404(b) issue for appellate review.

An example of a case applying Rule 10(a)(1) and *State v. Ray* is *State v. Joyner*, 243 N.C. App. 644 (2015).

In *Joyner*, before the defendant testified, his attorney sought to preclude the State from cross-examining him about old convictions under Rule 609. The trial court allowed the defendant to testify during a voir dire hearing, heard arguments of counsel, and ruled that the State could cross-examine the defendant on the old convictions. When the jury was called back in and the defendant testified, the defense attorney failed to object to the State's cross-examination of the defendant about the old convictions. The Court of Appeals held that "the defendant has no right to raise the Rule 609 issue on appeal."

→ **Objections must be specific (cite specific statute, rule of evidence, and constitutional basis):**

Rule 10(a) of the N.C. Rules of Appellate Procedure requires the objecting party to cite the specific grounds for an objection. That means counsel must say the specific rule of evidence and constitutional provision in front of the jury. Examples:

Counsel's failure to cite Rules 403 and 404(b) waived appellate review:

In *State v. Allen*, COA17-973, 2018 N.C. App. LEXIS 554 (June 5, 2018) (unpublished op.), defense counsel sought to exclude evidence under Rules 403 and 404(b). During a hearing outside the presence of the jury the trial judge overruled the objections and ruled the evidence was admissible. Defense counsel acknowledged he would need to object when the State offered the evidence in front of the jury.

However, when the prosecutor questioned the witness in front of the jury defense counsel objected, stating "I apologize. Just for the record, we'd object to the proposed testimony on due process grounds, Federal Constitution, do not wish to be heard." The Court of Appeals held that the objection made in front of the jury was only on constitutional grounds, and not based on a rule of evidence. The issue was waived.

Counsel's failure to cite Sixth Amendment waived appellate review:

In *State v. Mosley*, COA09-1060, 2010 N.C. App. LEXIS 758 (May 4, 2010) (unpublished op.), the trial attorney sought to cross-examine a testifying co-defendant about his pending criminal charges to show bias. The trial attorney argued Rule 608 as the basis for admissibility. The trial court denied the request to allow cross-examination. On appeal, the defendant argued the cross-examination should have been allowed not just under Rule 608, but was required by the Sixth Amendment right to cross-examine and confront a witness. The Court of Appeals held the constitutional issue was waived because the trial attorney failed to assert the Sixth Amendment during trial.

→ **Move to dismiss all charges for insufficient evidence and variance**.

Rule 10(a)(3) of the N.C. Rules of Appellate Procedure states that: "In a criminal case, a defendant may not make insufficiency of the evidence to prove the crime charged the basis of an issue presented on appeal unless a motion to dismiss the action, or for judgment as in case of nonsuit, is made at trial."

In *State v. Golder*, 374 N.C. 238 (2020), the Supreme Court made clear that when defense counsel moves to dismiss the charges, even if thereafter they argue only about certain charges or theories, they have preserved the issue of the sufficiency of the evidence for all charges and all theories of liability.

It is not clear after *Golder*, and a following case *State v. Smith*, 375 N.C. 224 (2020), whether a motion to dismiss for insufficient evidence also preserves a variance issue. To be safe, counsel should specifically move to dismiss all charges for variance in addition to insufficiency.

The Court of Appeals has already started to distinguish *Golder*. In *State v. Gettleman*, 2020 N.C. App. LEXIS 895 (Dec. 15, 2020) (published op.), the defense attorney did not move to dismiss "all" charges but moved to dismiss certain charges specifically. The Court of Appeals held that when defense counsel failed to move to dismiss "all"

charges, he did not preserve for appellate review the sufficiency of the evidence as to the charge that he did not move to dismiss.

→ **Submit non-pattern jury instructions, and requests to modify pattern instructions, in writing.**

N.C.G.S. 15A-1231(a) "At the close of the evidence or at an earlier time directed by the judge, any party may tender written instructions. A party tendering instructions must furnish copies to the other parties at the time he tenders them to the judge."

Rule 21 General Rules of Practice: "If special instructions are desired, they should be submitted in writing to the trial judge at or before the jury instruction conference."

→ **Give proper notice of appeal and ensure the Office of the Appellate Defender is appointed and that the Office of the Appellate Defender has received the case from the county clerk's office.**

Rules 3 and 4 of the N.C. Rules of Appellate Procedure

-Oral notice of appeal at trial (not later that day or that week)
-Written notice of appeal within 14 days
    -MUST be served on DA and must have cert. of service
-Appeal is from the "judgment" NOT from the "order denying the motion to suppress"
-Written notice of appeal is necessary to appeal satellite-based monitoring (SBM) orders

If notice of appeal is defective (ie. is not timely, does not include those items listed in Rule 3, fails to include a certificate of service, appeals from the denial of a motion, instead of from the judgment) then the appeal will be dismissed, and the Court will consider issues only by way of a petition for writ of certiorari under Rule 21 of the N.C. Rules of Appellate Procedure. Granting a petition for certiorari is discretionary and the Court of Appeals can decline to review issues, whereas if notice of appeal is proper, the Court is required to review the issues.

JURY INSTRUCTIONS

PRESENTED BY BELAL ELRAHAL, ASST. PUBLIC DEFENDER

ORIGINALLY CREATED BY PHOEBE DEE, ASST. PUBLIC DEFENDER

ALL MISTAKES ATTRIBUTED TO RICHARD WELLS, ASST. PUBLIC DEFENDER

1

WHY DO WE TRY THE CASES WE TRY?

- We have a great case, with great issues!
- Our client is being unreasonable and/or can't bring themselves to sign up for time in prison.
- The DA is being unreasonable and, with a plea offer that lousy, there's nothing to lose in going to trial.

2

WHAT DOES THAT HAVE TO DO WITH JURY INSTRUCTIONS?

You may not have a great case - there are problems with it. But you can still win the case. You need to focus yourself, the client and the jury on the real issues in the case.

3

WHY ARE JURY INSTRUCTIONS IMPORTANT?

- They are the law of the universe of your case.
- They are the only law the jurors will hear (*attorneys can read law, but …*)
- They come from the judge.
- They are the last thing the jurors hear.
- Because jurors WANT TO DO THE RIGHT THING.

4

PATTERN VS. NON-PATTERN JURY INSTRUCTIONS

PATTERN JURY INSTRUCTIONS are written by a committee of Superior Court judges and are reviewed annually. The SOG regularly updates them.

NON-PATTERN JURY INSTRUCTIONS are written by the trial judge, the da or YOU in cases where the pattern instructions fail to address a legal question at issue in the case.

5

WHEN SHOULD I READ THE JURY INSTRUCTIONS?

AS SOON AS YOU THINK THERE IS ANY CHANCE THAT THE CASE IS GOING TO TRIAL!

Jury Instructions are *crucial* for trial prep. They will keep you focused on exactly what the State must be successful in proving to win.

6

READ FREE GOOD STUFF

- Chapter 32 of Vol. 2 of the Defender Manual.
- Read the Pattern Jury Instructions Index. Get acclimated.
- It's easy to find and print these – they're online!
- http://www.sog.unc.edu/programs/ncpji
- Bookmark it – or google "unc sog pji" and you'll get there.

7

GIVE YOUR CLIENT A COPY

- Having the Jury Instruction can focus a client's attention on relevant issues and give them agency.
- It focuses your attention on the relevant issues. The only law that matters in a jury trial is what the jury will hear. Facts win jury trials; run all your facts through the lens of the Jury Instructions.

8

THE TRIAL BEGINS – JURY SELECTION

- Educate the jury about the law (the Jury Instructions) during jury selection. It will focus their attention on the relevant issues during the trial. Often, no one tells the jury what the trial is about!
- "The judge will instruct you on the law. This case is about [Blank] and it is my understanding the judge will instruct you . . . ."
- Every case: "Beyond a Reasonable Doubt" = "Fully Satisfied or Entirely Convinced."
- Defenses such as self-defense – always touch on these.
- Quote to the jury from the likely Pattern Jury Instructions.

9

THE TRIAL

- A bunch of crazy stuff happened. But at the end . . . . We come back to the Jury Instructions.
- The jury will now try to make the Crazy Trial Facts mesh with the Jury Instructions.
- Often just Pattern Instructions, but sometimes . . . Non-Pattern Jury Instructions! This is where the fun begins…

10

WHEN SHOULD YOU THINK ABOUT WRITING YOUR OWN INSTRUCTION?

WHENEVER A CRITICAL CONCEPT ISN'T CLEARLY ARTICULATED BY ANY OF THE PATTERN INSTRUCTIONS.

SO, ALMOST EVERY CASE

11

EXAMPLE FROM DRUG TRAFFICKING CASE

- NCPI 260.17 – Drug Trafficking. If Trafficking Instruction given, Defendant requests additional instructions relating to the required *mens rea* of "knowledge." **FIRST**, Defendant requests Footnote 4 to the NCPI instruction, specifically that "Defendant knew that what he possessed *was heroin*". **SECOND**, from the NC Crimes guidebook and therein cited authority *"[a] person does not act "knowingly" if he or she merely should have known; the person must actually know."* **THIRD**, Defendant requests further that the jury be instructed that Defendant knew the amount was at least the minimal 4 gram trafficking amount (*you will lose*). ATTACHED is relevant authority for these requests.
- NCPI 260.90 – Lesser-included misdemeanor charge. Also, "**and**" instead of "**or**" ("keeping and selling") because this "and" language is in the indictment.

12

"KNOWINGLY" AS USED WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE DRUG CHARGES, FROM THE NC CRIMES BOOK

- A person acts knowingly when the person is aware or conscious of what he or she is doing (278 N.C. 623). Similarly, a person has knowledge about the circumstances surrounding his or her act or about the results of an act when he or she is aware of or conscious of those circumstances or of those results (218 N.C. 258). **A person does not act "knowingly" if he or she merely should have known; the person must actually know (212 N.C. 361).** North Carolina does not accept the doctrine, accepted in some jurisdictions, that knowledge includes "willful blindness" of a highly probable fact, that is, deliberate avoidance of knowledge (324 N.C. 190).

13

WITNESS HAS BEEN GRANTED IMMUNITY

- "There is evidence in this case which shows that the witness, Joe Plumber, is testifying under an agreement with the prosecutor, whereby he will not be prosecuted for his crimes in exchange for his testimony against the defendant. In the situation presented, Mr. Plumber is considered, by law, to have an interest in the outcome of this case. You should therefore be suspicious of his testimony and approach it with the greatest care and caution. In your deliberations you should carefully consider whether there are inconsistencies in the evidence of Mr. Plumber and what evidence exists to support what he is saying."

14

MERE PRESENCE

- "I must caution you that merely being with the co-defendant at or near the location of the crimes, does not render the defendant guilty of any crime. Association or contact between the defendant the co-defendant before or after the commission of these crimes is not sufficient and will not justify the conclusion that the defendant is guilty." *State v. Beach, 283 NC 261, 267-68 (1973)*

15

ANALYST FAILED CERTIFICATION EXAM

- "You have heard evidence in this case that Ms. Smith, the DNA analyst employed by the State Bureau of Investigations, has not passed her certification exam, as required by the NC General Assembly. You may consider this evidence, along with other evidence about her qualifications, when determining what, if any, weight to give to her testimony"

16

OFFICER GIVES OPINION TESTIMONY

- "Officer Brady provided opinion testimony in this trial. Opinion testimony is offered, solely, for the purpose of corroborating other evidence. You should consider the officer's opinion only if you believe it is consistent with the other evidence. Officer Brady is not an expert and his opinion should not be given more weight than that of any civilian witness."

17

OFFICER VIOLATES DEPT POLICY

- NCPI Crim 101.5 – Credibility of Witnesses
- Modified to read (additional language in bold): "You are the sole judges of the believability of witnesses. You must decide for yourselves whether to believe the testimony of any witness. You may believe all, any part, or none of a witness's testimony. In deciding whether to believe a witness you should use the same tests of truthfulness that you use in your everyday lives. Among other things, these tests may include: **an officers failure to follow police department policies**; the opportunity of the witness to see, hear, know, or remember the facts or occurrences about which the witness testified; the manner and appearance of the witness; any interest, bias, prejudice, or partiality the witness may have; the apparent understanding and fairness of the witness; whether the testimony is reasonable; and whether the testimony is consistent with other believable evidence in the case."

18

WHAT ABOUT A CIVIL JURY INSTRUCTION?

- Evidence is gone, and you've lost your Brady/Youngblood Motion to Dismiss.
- You've crossed the State's witness up and down about "misplacing" it "unintentionally" but you want more.
- N.C.P.I Civil 101.39 "Spoliation by a party"

When evidence has been received which tends to show that (describe despoiled evidence) was (1) in the exclusive possession of the [plaintiff][defendant], (2) has been [lost][misplaced][suppressed][destroyed][corrupted] and (3) that the [plaintiff][defendant] had notice of the [plaintiff's][defendant's] [potential][claim][defense], you may infer, though you are not compelled to do so, that (describe despoiled evidence) would be damaging to the [plaintiff][defendant]. You may give this inference such force and effect as you determine it should have under all of the facts and circumstances….

19

OR A FEDERAL JURY INSTRUCTION?

- Not all Circuit Courts have Pattern Jury Instructions published, but the ones that are online are extensive and worth reviewing.
- Our N.C.P.I. Crim 101.10 Burden of Proof and Reasonable Doubt

The defendant has entered a plea of "not guilty." The fact that the defendant has been [indicted] [charged] is no evidence of guilt. Under our system of justice, when a defendant pleads "not guilty," the defendant is not required to prove the defendant's innocence; the defendant is presumed to be innocent. The State must prove to you that the defendant is guilty beyond a reasonable doubt. A reasonable doubt is a doubt based on reason and common sense, arising out of some or all of the evidence that has been presented, or lack or insufficiency of the evidence, as the case may be. Proof beyond a reasonable doubt is proof that fully satisfies or entirely convinces you of the defendant's guilt.

20

OR A FEDERAL JURY INSTRUCTION?

- Instruction 3.02 Presumption of Innocence; Proof Beyond a Reasonable Doubt (1st Circuit)

It is a cardinal principle of our system of justice that every person accused of a crime is presumed to be innocent unless and until his or her guilt is established beyond a reasonable doubt. The presumption is not a mere formality. It is a matter of the most important substance.

The presumption of innocence alone may be sufficient to raise a reasonable doubt and to require the acquittal of a defendant. The defendant before you, [_____], has the benefit of that presumption throughout the trial, and you are not to convict [him/her] of a particular charge unless you are persuaded of [his/her] guilt of that charge beyond a reasonable doubt.

21

OR A FEDERAL JURY INSTRUCTION?

- (continued)

The presumption of innocence until proven guilty means that the burden of proof is always on the government to satisfy you that [defendant] is guilty of the crime with which [he/she] is charged beyond a reasonable doubt. It is a heavy burden, but the law does not require that the government prove guilt beyond all possible doubt; proof beyond a reasonable doubt is sufficient to convict. This burden never shifts to [defendant]. It is always the government's burden to prove each of the elements of the crime[s] charged beyond a reasonable doubt by the evidence and the reasonable inferences to be drawn from that evidence. [Defendant] has the right to rely upon the failure or inability of the government to establish beyond a reasonable doubt any essential element of a crime charged against [him/her].

If, after fair and impartial consideration of all the evidence, you have a reasonable doubt as to [defendant]'s guilt of a particular crime, it is your duty to find [him/her] not guilty of that crime. On the other hand, if, after fair and impartial consideration of all the evidence, you are satisfied beyond a reasonable doubt of [defendant]'s guilt of a particular crime, you should find [him/her] guilty of that crime.

22

ALWAYS REMEMBER…

The Jury must consider the case in accordance with both the State and Defense Theories. Defendant in apt time requested that the law bearing upon his theory of the case be presented to the jury. He was merely asking the Court to charge the law arising on the evidence. Justice and the law countenance nothing less.

State v. Tioran, 65 N.C.App.122, 125 (1983), citing State v. Harrington, 260 N.C. 663, 666 (1963).

23

THE CHARGE CONFERENCE

- After all evidence is presented. Often right after.
- You MUST request instructions in writing. NCGS 15A-1231; *State v. Smith, 311 NC 287 (1984).* So plan ahead – before the crazy stuff happens!
- Think about lesser-included instructions! Surprisingly, Judges often will give these. Tender them in writing.
- Preserve the record on appeal! You don't want Glenn Gerding mad at you!

24

SO HOW DO I SUBMIT A JURY INSTRUCTION DURING THE CHARGE CONFERENCE?

- Have them prepared in advance. Often it is as simple as having 2 printed copies of each Pattern Instruction.
- Have a list of the Pattern Instructions and any Special Instructions you want; check them off because the judge speaks quickly. You DO NOT need to list all the Instructions the jury will hear.
- If the requested (and denied) jury instruction is a contested point, hand up your copy of the Pattern Instruction or scribble something onto a piece of paper.
- **Defendant's Right to Remain Silent** – Ask for this Instruction. Failure to give this Instruction is NOT reversible error. *State v. Paige, 272 NC 417 (1968).*
- **Preserve the Record for Appeal!**

25

FORM OF REQUESTED INSTRUCTIONS

- **NCGS 1-181(a)**
- In Writing
- Entitled in the Cause
- Signed by Counsel Submitting

26

THE STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA)
)
Vs.)
)
INNOCENT CLIENT,)
Defendant.)

Proposed
Jury Instructions

NOW COMES the DEFENDANT, through undersigned counsel, and respectfully requests that included within the jury instructions given be the following:

1. NCPI Crim 101.10 – Burden of Proof and Reasonable Doubt
2. NCPI Crim 104.20 – Testimony of Interested Witness
3. NCPI Crim 101.30 – Effect of Decision not to Testify
4. NCPI Crim 101.35 – Concluding Instructions
5. NCPI Crim 104.41 – Actual-Constructive Possession
6. NCPI Crim 104.60 – Admissions (request this be given instead of 104.70)
7. NCPI Crim 260.30 – Trafficking/Transportation. Include expanded definition of "knowingly" from footnote 4: "and that the defendant knew that what he transported was heroin."
8. NCPI Crim 260.17 – Trafficking/Possession. Include expanded definition of "knowingly" fro m footnote 4: "and that the defendant knew that what he transported was heroin."
9. NCPI Crim 202.80 – Criminal Conspiracy . Include expanded definition of Trafficking "and that the defendant knew that what he transported was heroin."

Richard Wells
Asst. Public Defender

27

ARGUING TO THE JURY

- Emphasize the Important Jury Instructions.
- Tell the story (truth) of innocence, and argue the story/facts as it relates to those few important Jury Instructions.
- Quote from the Jury Instructions.

28

THE JUDGE INSTRUCTS

- The judge will read the instructions to the jury. And the judge will (might) mess it up. FOLLOW ALONG.
- Object after judge gives entire instruction (renew your objections before the jury retires to deliberate).
- If you submitted written instructions, this will preserve the record. But object anyway. *State v. Smith, 311 NC 287 (1984).*
- Judges can give written instructions to the jury. Some judges hate doing it, some like doing it. Think about what you want.

29

THE JURY IS STILL CONFUSED

- Juries often come back with questions about the instructions or law of the case.
- Many times the judge will simply suggest re-reading a particular instruction to the jury.
- Keep other instructions in mind, particularly if you offered any and they were rejected by the judge, and they speak to the issue the jury is having.
- 15A-1233 The judge can allow the jury to re-examine exhibits/writings/transcript in the courtroom. BUT the consent of all parties is required before the judge can let the jury take exhibits/writings into the jury room.

30

QUESTIONS?

Belal Elrahal
belal.elrahal@nccourts.org
704-724-4746

31

EASTER EGG

- N.C.P.I. Civil 215.81 "Brakes – Motorcycles"

violation of this law and would not be negligence. On the other hand, if the

---

[1]North of the Tar River, above the fall line, the term "motorcycle," properly enunciated, rhymes with the second syllable of "popsicle."

[2]In the opinion of the Committee the definition of "motor-driven cycle" also includes a moped.

[3]Prior to 1967, G.S. 20-124(c) expressly excepted motorcycles. The 1967

32

Alyson Adams Grine
Resident Superior Court Judge
Judicial District 15B – Orange and Chatham Counties
North Carolina Judicial Branch

Old Orange County Courthouse
104 East King Street
Hillsborough, NC 27278
919-644-4747

Chatham County Justice Center
P.O. Box 369
Pittsboro, NC 27312
919-545-3580

2024 New Felony Defender Training
VIEW FROM THE BENCH

- **Taking Your Superior Court Practice to the Next Level**
    - **Sharpen Your Tools**
        - Law
        - Language
    - **Motions Practice**
        - Identify evidentiary issues in advance
            - Get a ruling
            - Redact
        - Identify areas of agreement
        - Go beyond issue spotting
        - You conduct the hearing
            - Burden of proof
                - Who goes first
            - Type of evidence proper for consideration
            - Proper forum
    - **Trial**
        - Draft jury instructions
        - Tailor your evidence
        - Set the scene with an exhibit
        - Consider your strengths; counter your weaknesses
        - Talk to jurors

- **Care and Feeding of Your Visiting Judge**

    - **Introductions**
        - Yourself
        - The session
        - Your case
        - Your position

    - **Courtroom security**
        - Inform me about high-tension matters, recent incidents, the facility (panic buttons, lockdown area…)
        - Safe the exhibits

    - **Educate Me**
        - Local resources
            - Eg., are there specialty courts, is there an organization that creates sentencing plans, what treatment programs are available…
        - Local History
        - Cool places

- **Adopting Equitable Practices to Ensure All Citizens Receive Equal Treatment in Our Courts**

    - **BOLO Disparate Treatment**
        - Pleas, bonds, etc.

    - **Individuate**

    - **Data**
        - Eg, jury pool

    - **Gratuitous References vs. Relevant Facts**
        - Raising Issues of Race in NC Criminal Cases | UNC School of Government

- **Closing Remarks**

    - **Rule 12** of the General Rules of Practice for the Superior and District Courts
        - Conduct yourself with decorum
        - Promote respect for the Court
        - Avoid abusive language
        - Yield gracefully to rulings of the Court
        - Be caring to your community

Rule 12. Courtroom Decorum

Except for some unusual reason connected with the business of the court, attorneys will not be sent for when their cases are called in their regular order.

Counsel are at all times to conduct themselves with dignity and propriety. All statements and communications to the court other than objections and exceptions shall be clearly and audibly made from a standing position behind the counsel table. Counsel shall not approach the bench except upon the permission or request of the court.

The examination of witnesses and jurors shall be conducted from a sitting position behind the counsel table except as otherwise permitted by the court (see *S. vs. Bass*, 5 N.C. App. 429, 431 (1969)). Counsel shall not approach the witness except for the purpose of presenting, inquiring about, or examining the witness with respect to an exhibit, document, or diagram.

Any directions or instructions to the court reporter are to be made in open court by the presiding judge only, and not by an attorney.

Business attire shall be appropriate dress for counsel while in the courtroom.

All personalities between counsel should be avoided. The personal history or peculiarities of counsel on the opposing side should not be alluded to. Colloquies between counsel should be avoided.

Adverse witnesses and suitors should be treated with fairness and due consideration. Abusive language or offensive personal references are prohibited.

The conduct of the lawyers before the court and with other lawyers should be characterized by candor and fairness. Counsel shall not knowingly misinterpret the contents of a paper, the testimony of a witness, the language or argument of opposite counsel or the language of a decision or other authority; nor shall he offer evidence which he knows to be inadmissible. In an argument addressed to the court, remarks or statements should not be interjected to influence the jury or spectators. (See Rule 22, Canons of Ethics and Rules of Professional Conduct, N.C. State Bar, G.S. 4A p. 273.)

Suggestions of counsel looking to the comfort or convenience of jurors should be made to the court out of the jury's hearing. Before, and during trial, a lawyer should attempt to avoid communicating with jurors, even as to matters foreign to the cause.

Counsel should yield gracefully to rulings of the court and avoid detrimental remarks both in court and out. He should at all times promote respect for the court. (See Rule 1, Canons of Ethics and Rules of Professional Conduct, N.C. State Bar, G.S. 4A p. 269.)

History Note.

276 N.C. 735.

THE YALE LAW JOURNAL FORUM
MARCH 24, 2014

Justice Sotomayor and the Jurisprudence of Procedural Justice

Tracey L. Meares & Tom R. Tyler

In this Essay, Professors Tyler and Meares highlight the ways in which recent social science research supports the model of jurisprudence articulated by Justice Sotomayor. Her model defines building identification with political and legal institutions as an important goal for the Court. It further suggests that this goal is best achieved when the Court exercises its authority using just procedures. That perspective is consistent with research on the foundations of popular legitimacy demonstrating that perceived procedural justice of the Court most strongly shapes it. Social science findings further reveal the factors shaping popular conceptions of procedural justice.

In her recent concurring opinion in *United States v. Jones*,[1] Justice Sotomayor addressed the question of what a lawful search means within the context of the Fourth Amendment. At issue in *Jones* was whether the government's use of an electronic tracking device attached to the undercarriage of a Jeep Grand Cherokee beyond the ten days authorized by a warrant violated the Fourth Amendment.[2] As she discussed the problems inherent to discretionary governmental decisions to target and track individuals, Justice Sotomayor framed her response not only as a question of physical trespass under the Fourth Amendment, which was the focus of Justice Scalia's opinion for the Court, but also in terms of the impact of government actions on the "relationship between citizen and government in a way that is inimical to democratic society."[3]

Justice Sotomayor further developed this theme of avoiding distrust and alienation and instead focusing on how to further a desirable relationship between people, law, and government in her recent James A. Thomas Lecture, delivered at Yale Law School on February 3, 2014. In that lecture, the Justice

1. United States v. Jones, 132 S. Ct. 945, 954 (2012) (Sotomayor, J., concurring).
2. *Id.* at 948 (majority opinion).
3. *Id.* at 956 (Sotomayor, J., concurring) (quoting United States v. Cuevas-Perez, 640 F.3d 272, 285 (7th Cir. 2011) (Flaum, J., concurring)).

argued that the goal of the law is to express our shared ideals as a society—and, through doing that, to enable everyone to identify with law and with our democracy and its political and legal institutions.[4]

There are different methods of constitutional interpretation: originalism, textualism, purposivism, and so on. We think Justice Sotomayor's initial opinions reflect a jurisprudence of process that emphasizes making decisions fairly. In carrying out this approach, Justice Sotomayor highlighted in her Thomas Lecture more than just her efforts to make transparent to readers that the Court's decision in a particular case is fair. She also pointed to her own endeavors to humanize judges, helping people to see that they are well-meaning individuals sincerely trying to do what is right, rather than people motivated by prejudice or ill will. In this manner, she noted, she hoped to encourage the public to have respect for the law as an important institution in our society as well as in their own lives. And through building respect for judges and the Court, Justice Sotomayor further indicated that she seeks to build support for government overall.[5] While Justice Sotomayor did not cite to social science evidence as a justification for her position on these matters, we find the degree to which her model of jurisprudence accords with and is supported by the findings of recent social science research on the legal system striking. In particular, a large and diverse body of social science evidence on legitimacy and procedural justice supports the central arguments she outlines. This research focuses upon how law and the policies and practices of legal authorities are experienced by the public.

I. PROCEDURAL FAIRNESS MATTERS

Our concern in this analysis is with people's judgments about the fairness of the procedure that legal authorities use when they make decisions. Unlike the procedural justice of objective features of the legal system (e.g. adversarial vs. inquisitorial trial procedures), this concern is with whether people evaluate a legal procedure as being just or unjust. This question is important because the primary factor that people consider when they are deciding whether they feel a decision is legitimate and ought to be accepted is whether or not they believe that the authorities involved made their decision through a fair

---

4. Justice Sonia Sotomayor & Linda Greenhouse, *A Conversation with Justice Sotomayor*, 123 YALE L.J. F. 375 (2014), http://yalelawjournal.org/forum/a-conversation-with-justice-sotomayor.

5. *See id*.

procedure, irrespective of whether members of the public are evaluating decisions made by the Supreme Court or by local courts, or reacting to the decisions made or rules enacted by any legal authorities. Research clearly shows that procedural justice matters more than whether or not people agree with a decision or regard it as substantively fair.[6]

Some of the elements researchers have found to be important when the public is evaluating the justice of decision-making procedures include whether they believe that all parties to a case are being given an opportunity to present evidence and state their views, whether they think the decisionmakers get the information they need to make good decisions, whether they believe the authorities consider the evidence impartially, and whether they view them as making unbiased and rule-based decisions that apply rules consistently across people and cases. These elements are all related to the fairness of decisionmaking, a core element in both objective[7] and psychological evaluations of legal procedures.[8]

While it was once commonly thought the people cared about procedurally fair decisionmaking because of its potential contribution to accurate outcomes or a person's ability to control an outcome, much research now supports the view that people care about a much broader set of issues. Specifically, people understand the way in which they are treated by legal authorities to provide them with information about how that authority views them and the group or groups to which they belong. In other words, the way people interpret the fairness of procedures has a substantial relational component.[9]

Justice Sotomayor indicated in her Thomas Lecture that her own goal has been to deal with cases through fair procedures. She said: "What I view as driving my jurisprudence is process. I can't control the outcomes of cases. . . . And I can live with that if I perceive the process to be fair."[10] Her quote reflects a basic insight in the literature: procedures might be considered more "trait-

---

6. *See, e.g.*, JOHN THIBAUT & LAURENS WALKER, PROCEDURAL JUSTICE: A PSYCHOLOGICAL ANALYSIS (1975).

7. *See, e.g.*, DENIS JAMES GALLIGAN, DUE PROCESS AND FAIR PROCEDURES: A STUDY OF ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEDURES (1996); Lawrence B. Solum, *Procedural Justice*, 78 S. CAL. L. REV. 181, 183-90 (2004).

8. *See, e.g.*, THIBAUT & WALKER, *supra* note 6.

9. Tom R. Tyler & E. Allan Lind, *A Relational Model of Authority in Groups*, 25 ADVANCES EXPERIMENTAL SOC. PSYCHOL. 115 (1992).

10. *See* Sotomayor & Greenhouse, *supra* note 4, at 2.

like"[11] than outcomes, which are variable, or which may be extremely indeterminate in a particular case. For example, while it may not be obvious how a particular case should come out, it is almost always clear how parties should proceed and be treated in that particular case.[12] Although the argument Justice Sotomayor presented in the Thomas Lecture focused upon her own efforts to pay close attention to facts and use objectively fair procedures when handling cases, studies suggest that this perspective on jurisprudence is a model for making decisions in ways that will be well received by the public, because the public is also strongly influenced by whether or not they believe judges are exercising their authority through fair procedures. And the consequences of a commitment to procedural justice, research shows, are congenial to Justice Sotomayor's own aims for decisionmaking—greater trust in, and commitment to, law and government. People who believe the authorities are procedurally just also comply with the law more frequently on an everyday basis.[13]

---

11. *See* Joel Brockner & Phyllis Siegel, *Understanding the Interaction Between Procedural and Distributive Justice: The Role of Trust*, *in* TRUST IN ORGANIZATIONS: FRONTIERS OF THEORY AND RESEARCH 390, 404 (Roderick M. Kramer & Tom R. Tyler eds. 1996).

12. Tracey L. Meares et al., *Updating the Study of Punishment*, 56 STAN. L. REV. 1171, 1194-95 (2004).

13. *See, e.g.*, TOM R. TYLER, WHY PEOPLE OBEY THE LAW (2006) (a study of the residents of Chicago indicating that those who believe the police are procedurally just comply with the law more frequently in their everyday lives); Denise C. Gottfredson et al., *How Drug Treatment Courts Work: An Analysis of Mediators*, 44 J. OF RES. CRIME & DELINQUENCY 3, 3 (2007) (a study of drug courts indicating that they reduce recidivism relative to alternatives, because "perceptions of procedural justice reduce crime"); Jonathan Jackson et al., *Why Do People Comply with the Law? Legitimacy and the Influence of Legal Institutions*, 52 BRITISH J. CRIMINOLOGY 1051, 1062 (2012) (a study of the public in England and Wales indicating that there is a pathway "from the procedural fairness of the police to compliance"); Michael D. Reisig et al., *Compliance with the Law in Slovenia*, EUR. J. ON CRIM. POL'Y & RES. (2013), http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s10610-013-9211-9 (finding that the procedural justice of the police influenced self-reported compliance with the law among young adults); Jason Sunshine & Tom R. Tyler, *The Role of Procedural Justice and Legitimacy in Shaping Public Support for Policing*, 37 LAW & SOC'Y REV. 513, 535 (2003) (two surveys of the people in New York City "identify[ing] procedural justice as the primary antecedent of legitimacy" and shaping both compliance with the law and cooperation with police); Tom R. Tyler & Jonathan Jackson, *Popular Legitimacy and the Exercise of Legal Authority: Motivating Compliance, Cooperation and Engagement*, 20 PSYCHOL. PUB. POL'Y & L. 78, 78-79 (2014) (a study of a random sample of Americans' views about the police and the courts demonstrating that procedural justice shapes legitimacy, compliance, and cooperation); Heathcote W. Wales et al., *Procedural Justice and the Mental Health Court Judge's Role in Reducing Recidivism*, 33 INT'L J.L. & PSYCHIATRY 265, 265 (2010) ("Observed reductions in recidivism from participation in MHC [mental health court] are caused in part by the role of

II. RELEVANT SOCIAL SCIENCE RESEARCH

A. Decision-Making Fairness

There is a large body of empirical literature supporting Justice Sotomayor's focus on process. The Justice suggests that she focuses upon making decisions through fair procedures, believing that this leads to high-quality decisions. The public shares this view and, when evaluating authorities such as judges, asks whether that authority used fair procedures to make a decision. That judgment, more than who wins or loses their case, shapes people's views about the decision and the judge and their willingness to defer to judicial authority. It also shapes their views about the legitimacy of the courts and their overall willingness to comply with laws and cooperate with legal institutions.

1. U.S. Supreme Court

Tom R. Tyler and Gregory Mitchell have examined public acceptance of Supreme Court decisions in the context of the controversial issue of abortion rights.[14] They inquired whether people who disagreed with the Court might nonetheless feel obligated to accept its decisions on this, or any other, issue. Utilizing interviews with a sample of members of the public, they found that a key issue underlying public acceptance of Supreme Court judgments was an evaluation of the procedural justice of Court decisionmaking. In their sample, people considered whether the Justices were honest, impartial, and based their decisions on case-relevant information, and respondents were further influenced by whether they felt the Justices respected citizens and their rights, considered their views, and cared about their concerns. The study identified a broad set of procedural justice concerns, including concerns about the

---

the judge in conveying elements of procedural justice."); Cynthia G. Lee et al., *A Community Court Grows in Brooklyn: A Comprehensive Evaluation of the Red Hook Community Justice Center Final Report*, NAT'L CENTER ST. CTS. 176 (2013), http://www.courtinnovation.org/sites/default/files/documents/RH%20Evaluation%20Final%20RRepor.pdf ("The Red Hook Community Justice Center appears to bring about a robust and sustained decrease in recidivism among adult misdemeanor offenders."); Tom R. Tyler et al., *Street Stops and Police Legitimacy: Teachable Moments in Young Urban Men's Legal Socialization* (Yale Law & Econ. Research Paper No. 476, 2013), http://ssrn.com/abstract=2289244 (finding that young men who viewed the police as acting through procedural justice were more willing to help by reporting crimes).

14. Tom R. Tyler & Gregory Mitchell, *Legitimacy and the Empowerment of Discretionary Legal Authority: The United States Supreme Court and Abortion Rights*, 43 DUKE L.J. 703 (1994).

neutrality of decisionmaking that were central to the Court's legitimacy. Tyler and Mitchell ultimately found that procedural justice meaningfully legitimated the Court and its decisions. The results of the study strongly supported the procedural justice argument in that those citizens who believed that the court used fair procedures to make their decisions both felt obligated to defer to them and did not support efforts to strip the Court of authority to make decisions in this area.

2. Local and State Courts

Most studies of procedural justice are of local or state courts rather than the United States Supreme Court. These studies support the argument that people are more satisfied with decisions when they believe those decisions are made through fair procedures.[15] Further, people more willingly *accept* court decisions

---

15. *See* STEPHEN SHUTE ET AL., A FAIR HEARING? (2013) (finding that minority defendants' confidence in the courts is linked to their procedural justice judgments); TYLER, *supra* note 13 (studying residents of Chicago and indicating that those who believe the police are procedurally just comply with the law more frequently in their everyday lives); Ben Bradford, *Voice, Neutrality and Respect: Use of Victim Support Services, Procedural Fairness and Confidence in the Criminal Justice System*, 11 CRIMINOLOGY & CRIM. JUST. 345, 345 (2011) ("By providing [crime] victims with voice and a sense that someone is listening to and taking their concerns seriously, contact with victims services seems to be linked to more favourable overall assessments of the criminal justice system."); Jonathan D. Casper et al., *Procedural Justice in Felony Cases*, 22 LAW & SOC'Y REV. 483 (1988) (finding, based on interviews with people whose felony cases were disposed through the courts, that satisfaction with the handling of one's case was linked to judgments about the procedural justice of the courts); Peter Dillon & Robert Emery, *Divorce Mediation and Resolution of Child Custody Disputes: Long-Term Effects*, 66 AM. J. ORTHOPSYCHIATRY 131, 131 (finding that nine years after a custody hearing those parents who thought the hearing was procedurally fair had "more frequent current contact with their children and greater involvement in current decisions about them"); Katherine M. Kitzmann & Robert E. Emery, *Child and Family Coping One Year After Mediated and Litigated Child Custody Disputes*, 8 J. FAM. PSYCHOL. 150 (1994) (finding in a longitudinal study that judgments about the fairness of child custody hearings had long-term implications for satisfaction and compliance); Katherine M. Kitzmann & Robert E. Emery, *Procedural Justice and Parents' Satisfaction in a Field Study of Child Custody Dispute Resolution*, 17 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 553 (1993) (reporting that interviews with parents following child custody hearings indicated that satisfaction was linked to judgments about whether the hearing was fairly conducted); Avishalom Tor et al., *Fairness and the Willingness to Accept Plea Bargain Offers*, 7 J. EMPIRICAL LEGAL STUD. 97, 97 (2010) ("In contrast with the common assumption in the plea bargaining literature, we show fairness related concerns systematically impact defendants' preferences and judgments."); Tom R. Tyler, *Multiculturalism and the Willingness of Citizens to Defer to Law and to Legal Authorities*, 25 LAW & SOC. INQUIRY 983 (2000) (arguing that procedural justice shapes the willingness of the

if they believe court procedures are fair,[16] and they are also more willing to *cooperate* with the courts, for example by testifying, if they believe that the courts function through fair procedures.[17] Of particular importance is the finding that procedural justice promotes decision adherence that lasts over time.[18]

---

members of both majority and minority ethnic groups to defer to law and legal authorities); Tom R. Tyler, *Public Trust and Confidence in Legal Authorities: What Do Majority and Minority Group Members Want from the Law and Legal Institutions?*, 19 BEHAV. SCI. & L. 215, 215 (2001) [hereinafter Tyler, *Public Trust*] ("Analysis from several studies exploring the basis of public views support this procedural justice based model of public evaluation."); Jo-Anne Wemmers, *Victims' Experiences in the Criminal Justice System and Their Recovery from Crime*, 19 INT'L REV. VICTIMOLOGY 221, 221 (2013) ("[U]nfair procedures were found to impact victims' recovery."); Jo-Anne Wemmers et al., *What Is Procedural Justice: Criteria Used by Dutch Victims to Assess the Fairness of Criminal Justice Procedures*, 8 SOC. JUST. RES. 329 (1995) (finding that Dutch crime victims evaluated the criminal justice process through a procedural justice frame); Rashida Abuwala & Donald J. Farole, Jr., *The Effects of the Harlem Housing Court on Tenant Perceptions of Justice*, CENTER FOR CT. INNOVATION (2008), http://www.courtinnovation.org/sites/default/files/Harlem_Housing_Court_Study.pdf (finding that interviews with people appearing in the Harlem and downtown project courts suggest that fairer treatment was linked to higher satisfaction with the courts); Donald J. Farole, Jr., *Public Perceptions of New York's Courts: The New York State Residents Survey*, CENTER FOR CT. INNOVATION 17 (2007), http://www.courtinnovation.org/sites/default/files/documents/NYS_Residents_Survey.pdf (suggesting that procedural justice was the most important factor in overall approval of courts).

16. *See* ROBERT J. MACCOUN ET AL., ALTERNATIVE ADJUDICATION: AN EVALUATION OF THE NEW JERSEY AUTOMOBILE ARBITRATION PROGRAM 56-57 (1988) (finding that people are more willing to accept ADR awards if they feel that the procedures were procedurally just); TOM R. TYLER & YUEN J. HUO, TRUST IN THE LAW: ENCOURAGING PUBLIC COOPERATION WITH THE POLICE AND COURTS, at xv, 123-29 (2002) (finding that people who have dealt with the courts were more willing to accept court decisions if they believed that the courts made those decisions in a procedurally just way); E. Allan Lind et al., *Individual and Corporate Dispute Resolution: Using Procedural Fairness as a Decision Heuristic*, 38 ADMIN. SCI. Q. 224, 224 (1993) (finding that individual and corporate litigants were more accepting of the results of court-annexed arbitration hearings if they believed that the hearings were procedurally just).

17. Tyler & Jackson, *supra* note 13 (finding that people who viewed the police and courts as exercising their authority fairly were more willing to report crime and be a witness in court).

18. PENELOPE EILEEN BRYAN, CONSTRUCTIVE DIVORCE: PROCEDURAL JUSTICE AND SOCIOLEGAL REFORM (2006); Robert E. Emery et al., *Child Custody Mediation and Litigation: Parents' Satisfaction and Functioning One Year After Settlement*, 62 J. CONSULTING & CLINICAL PSYCHOL. 124 (1994); Tom R. Tyler et al., *Reintegrative Shaming, Procedural Justice, and Recidivism: The Engagement of Offenders' Psychological Mechanisms in the Canberra RISE Drinking-and-Driving Experiment*, 41 LAW & SOC'Y REV. 553, 563-65 (2007)

3. Police

Like courts, police are legal authorities with which the public interacts. An even larger body of research on the police suggests that people are more satisfied with police decisions when they believe that the police are exercising their authority through fair procedures.[19] Studies further indicate that people

---

19. TYLER, *supra* note 13 (a study of the residents of Chicago indicating that those who believe the police are procedurally just comply with the law more frequently in their everyday lives); TYLER & HUO, *supra* note 16 (finding, in a study of everyday interactions with the police in Oakland and Los Angeles, that people are more satisfied with interactions when they believe that the police acted with procedural justice); Irina Elliott et al., *Procedural Justice in Contacts with the Police: Testing a Relational Model of Authority in a Mixed Methods Study*, 17 PSYCHOL. PUB. POL'Y & L. 592, 592 (2011) ("[F]indings supported the predictions that higher perceived antecedents of procedural justice would be associated with higher perceived legitimacy."); Jacinta M. Gau & Rod K. Brunson, *Consent Searches as a Threat to Procedural Justice and Police Legitimacy*, 24 CRIM. JUST. POL'Y REV. 759, 759 (2013) (finding that "consent requests . . . damage perceptions of procedural justice and, moreover, of the legitimacy of the stop itself"); Jacinta M. Gau & Rod K. Brunson, *Procedural Justice and Order Maintenance Policing: A Study of Inner-City Young Men's Perceptions of Police Legitimacy*, 27 JUST. Q. 255 (2010) [hereinafter Gau & Brunson, *Procedural Justice*] (finding that interviews with young people suggest that stops are viewed as unfair harassment); Lyn Hinds, *Building Police-Youth Relationships: The Importance of Procedural Justice*, 7 YOUTH JUST. 195, 195 (2007) ("Young people's attitudes toward police legitimacy are positively linked to police use of procedural justice."); Lyn Hinds & Kristina Murphy, *Public Satisfaction with Police: Using Procedural Justice to Improve Police Legitimacy*, 40 AUSTL. & N.Z. J. CRIMINOLOGY 27, 27 (2007) ("People who believe the police use procedural justice when they exercise their authority are more likely to view police as legitimate, and in turn are more satisfied with police services."); Tal Jonathan-Zamir & David Weisburd, *The Effects of Security Threats on Antecedents of Police Legitimacy: Findings from a Quasi-Experiment in Israel*, 50 J. RES. CRIM. & DELINQ. 3, 4 (2013) (finding that in Israeli communities "procedural justice is consistently the primary antecedent of police legitimacy"); Lorraine Mazerolle et al., *Shaping Citizen Perceptions of Police Legitimacy: A Randomized Field Trial of Procedural Justice*, 51 CRIMINOLOGY 33 (2013) (showing through a randomized field experiment varying procedural justice that procedural justice shaped police legitimacy); Andy Myhill & Ben Bradford, *Can Police Enhance Public Confidence by Improving Quality of Service? Results from Two Surveys in England and Wales*, 22 POLICING AND SOC'Y 397, 397 (2012) (finding that the key issue in the effect of encounters with police on perceived legitimacy is quality of "personal treatment"); Jennifer Norman, *Seen and Not Heard: Young People's Perceptions of the Police*, 3 POLICING 364, 364 (2009) (finding that "unfair targeting and treatment from the police" undermined what "young people thought of the police"); Ralph B. Taylor & Brian A. Lawton, *An Integrated Contextual Model of Confidence in Local Police*, 15 POLICE Q. 414, 414 (2012) (finding, in a study of people in Pennsylvania, the "importance of police simultaneously maintaining order and treating citizens fairly"); Tom R. Tyler & Jeffrey Fagan, *Legitimacy and Cooperation: Why Do People Cooperate with the Police?,* 6 OHIO ST. J. CRIM. L. 231 (2008) (finding that procedural justice shaped legitimacy in a sample of New York City residents); Tom R. Tyler & Cheryl J.

are more willing to defer to police decisions when they feel the police are acting fairly.[20]

The police benefit from cooperation with the community beyond mere compliance with rules. One form of cooperation involves helping the police to solve crimes or apprehend criminals. Providing tips about the location of crimes and criminals is a key issue, as is the willingness to aid with

---

Wakslak, *Profiling and Police Legitimacy: Procedural Justice, Attributions of Motive, and Acceptance of Police Authority*, 42 CRIMINOLOGY 253 (2004) (analyzing several datasets to show that unfair treatment leads to inferences of racial profiling and undermine police legitimacy).

20. JOHN D. MCCLUSKEY, POLICE REQUESTS FOR COMPLIANCE: COERCIVE AND PROCEDURALLY JUST TACTICS (2003) (suggesting, based on several studies involving both interviews with people who have dealt with the police and observation of police-citizen encounters, that procedural justice promotes compliance with police directives); Christina E.W. Bond & David John Gow, *Policing the Beat: The Experience in Toowoomba, Queensland*, 6 CRIME PREV. STUD. 153 (1996) (suggesting, through a qualitative analysis of a beat policing program, that it led to heightened satisfaction with police services); TYLER & HUO, *supra* note 16 (finding in a study of police-citizen encounters in California that people more willingly accepted fairly made decisions); Mengyan Dai et al., *Procedural Justice During Police-Citizen Encounters: The Effects of Process-Based Policing on Citizen Compliance and Demeanor*, 39 J. CRIM. JUST 159, 159 (2011) ("Two types of procedurally fair behavior by the police, police demeanor and their consideration of citizen voice, are significant in reducing citizen and noncompliance."); Stephen D. Mastrofski et al., *Compliance on Demand: The Public's Response to Specific Police Requests*, 33 J. RES. CRIM. & DELINQ. 269 (1996) (demonstrating through a study of people's personal experience with the police that procedural fairness increases compliance); Alex R. Piquero et al., *Discerning Unfairness Where Others May Not: Low Self-Control and Unfair Sanction Perceptions*, 42 CRIMINOLOGY 699 (2004) (finding that perceiving sanctions as unfair leads to anger); Clifford Stott et al., *"Keeping the Peace": Social Identity, Procedural Justice and the Policing of Football Crowds*, 52 BRIT. J. CRIMINOLOGY 381 (2012) (finding that style of policing shaped compliance among European football crowds); Tom R. Tyler, *What Is Procedural Justice?: Criteria Used by Citizens to Assess the Fairness of Legal Procedures*, 22 LAW & SOC'Y REV. 103 (1988) (outlining the relationship of different procedural justice elements to decision acceptance); Jeffrey T. Ward et al., *Caught in Their Own Speed Trap: The Intersection of Speed Enforcement Policy, Police Legitimacy, and Decision Acceptance*, 14 POLICE Q. 251 (2011) (finding that unfair ticketing procedures led to less compliance); Amy C. Watson & Beth Angell, *The Role of Stigma and Uncertainty in Moderating the Effect of Procedural Justice on Cooperation and Resistance in Police Encounters with Persons with Mental Illnesses*, 19 PSYCHOL. PUB. POL'Y & L. 30, 30 (2013) ("Procedural justice is associated with more cooperation and less resistance."); Andy Myhill & Paul Quinton, *It's a Fair Cop? Police Legitimacy, Public Cooperation, and Crime Reduction*, NAT'L POLICING IMPROVEMENT AGENCY (2011), http://www.college.police.uk/en/docs/Fair_cop_Full_Report.pdf (finding that procedural justice shaped legitimacy, compliance and cooperation with the police among a national sample of the people of England).

prosecutions by participating in lineups and trials. Procedural fairness promotes such cooperation.[21]

A second type of cooperation is working with the police to co-police neighborhoods. This could involve attending community meetings or joining a group such as neighborhood watch.[22] In contrast to the first category of behavior, these actions are more proactive and organized. Again, if people believe the police act fairly, they are more likely to join cooperative efforts in their community.[23]

---

21. *See, e.g.*, JONATHAN JACKSON ET AL., JUST AUTHORITY? TRUST IN THE POLICE IN ENGLAND AND WALES 215 (2013) ("The procedural fairness of the police lies at the heart of people's connections with legal authorities."); Phillip Atiba Goff et al., *Crossing the Line of Legitimacy: The Impact of Cross-Deputization Policy on Crime Reporting*, 19 PSYCH. PUB. POL'Y & L. 250, 254 (2013) (finding that viewing the police as less legitimate lowers the likelihood of reporting a crime); Lyn Hinds, *Youth, Police Legitimacy and Informal Contact*, 24 J. POLICE & CRIM. PSYCHOL. 10 (2009) (finding that young people who view the police as legitimate are more willing to help them); Tammy Rinehart Kochel, *Can Police Legitimacy Promote Collective Efficacy?*, 29 JUST. Q. 384 (2012) (finding that legitimacy promotes collective efficacy among the residents of Trinidad and Tobago); Kristina Murphy, *Does Procedural Justice Matter to Youth? Comparing Adults' and Youths' Willingness to Collaborate with Police*, 23 POLICING & SOC'Y 1, 12 (2013) (finding that those respondents who feel fairly treated are more willing to collaborate with the police); Kristina Murphy et al., *Encouraging Public Cooperation and Support for Police*, 18 POLICING & SOC'Y 136, 136, 144-46 (2008) (observing that the results of several surveys suggest that "views about police legitimacy do influence public cooperation with the police, and that those who view the police as more legitimate are more likely to assist the police to control crime," and that "[t]he key antecedent of legitimacy is procedural justice"); Michael D. Reisig & Camille Lloyd, *Procedural Justice, Police Legitimacy, and Helping the Police Fight Crime: Results from a Survey of Jamaican Adolescents*, 12 POLICE Q. 42, 56 (2009) (finding that among Jamaican high school students procedural justice and legitimacy led to the willingness to report suspects to the police); Sunshine & Tyler, *supra* note 13, at 526-27; Tom R. Tyler et al., *Legitimacy and Deterrence Effects in Counter-Terrorism Policing: A Study of Muslim-Americans*, 44 LAW & SOC'Y REV, 365, 368 (2010) (finding, in a survey of Muslim Americans, that people's willingness to help the police identify terrorist risks was linked to perceived police procedural justice); Tyler & Fagan, *supra* note 19 (finding that procedural justice shaped legitimacy in a sample of New York City residents); Tyler et al., *supra* note 13 (finding that young men who viewed the police as acting through procedural justice were more willing to help by reporting crimes); Tyler & Jackson, *supra* note 13, at 78-79 (finding, in a study of a random sample of Americans' views about the police and the courts, that procedural justice shapes legitimacy, compliance and cooperation); Myhill & Quinton, *supra* note 20, at 2-3 (finding that police procedural fairness led to cooperation with the police in a national sample of the people in England).

22. *See, e.g.*, Tracey Meares, *Praying for Community Policing*, 90 CALIF. L. REV. 1593 (2002).

23. *See* Mazerolle et al., *supra* note 19, at 35; Sunshine & Tyler, *supra* note 13, at 526-27; Tyler et al., *supra* note 21, at 368; Tyler & Fagan, *supra* note 19, at 250-52.

What messages can judges, whether Supreme Court Justices or local magistrates, draw from these findings? The primary lesson is that commitment to fair procedures in decisionmaking is important, but that it is equally important to communicate to the public how justice is being done so that the public knows that judges are making decisions fairly. In other words judges need to both *be* fair and to *be seen as* being fair. These two factors, importantly, are not coincident. Being seen or perceived as fair involves transparency in procedures, explanation of rules and decisions, and the promotion of procedures that give interested parties a voice in the proceedings. Many judges devote their attention to being fair, i.e., to correctly applying the law to the facts of each case, but do not think about how they can communicate that they are being fair to the parties in the case or to the public more generally. Recognizing that those parties are themselves focused upon whether their case was handled fairly highlights the importance of attention to the issue of communicating how the case was handled and decisions were made.

B. Fair Procedures Communicate Relational Value.

Discussions of procedural fairness usually begin with a focus upon the decision-making elements we have already noted.[24] A focus on decisionmaking accords with the traditional legal framing of procedural design as being about how legal authorities structure trials and deliberations about cases. A fair judge is one who correctly applies the law to the facts in a particular case, usually with the goal of achieving the correct outcome. However, studies of the popular meaning of procedural justice suggest that the public considers a broader range of issues when evaluating the fairness of judicial decisionmaking. These broader issues are referred to as relational issues because they are related to the social messages communicated by the courts. The quality of the treatment that people receive is relational because it sends messages that people use to interpret their degree of inclusion within society and their social status/standing. In other words, decisionmaking is not only about the issues in dispute. Rather, it is about people's right to come before a court and to have their needs and concerns taken seriously by the authorities. As we have noted, the public is less concerned with whether the right outcome is achieved than they are about other relational matters. Interestingly, Justice Sotomayor touched directly upon this broader set of elements.

---

24. *See supra* note 8 and accompanying text.

What relational aspects of procedure matter to the public, and why? The public first focuses upon whether they feel treated with dignity and respect. This includes respect for people's rights as members of the community and for their status as people. They care about quality of treatment more than they care about the extent to which a decision favors them. The question, of course, is why this is the case. The quality of the treatment that people experience when dealing with societal authorities conveys social messages. High-quality treatment by legal authorities first conveys a message of inclusion, since respect for one's rights indicates standing with the community. Membership in the community ("citizenship") confers rights, and their recognition acknowledges that inclusion. Everyone in the community is an equally entitled human being, with the same rights as others. Quality of treatment communicates a message about whether authorities acknowledge that equality in standing.[25]

Second, treatment with respect indicates one's status within society. When an authority is demeaning or disrespectful to someone who appears before them, or whose interests or values are involved in a case, that treatment communicates marginal social status. Being taken seriously, on the other hand, communicates social respect and high standing within the community. The standing of one's group or oneself is important to self-esteem because even when formally included within the general framework of rights, people can be treated as marginal, or, conversely, as valuable. While minorities have legal rights, they may nonetheless feel that they are viewed as socially inferior and less desirable than members of other social groups.

In addition to being concerned about issues involving the quality of treatment, people key in on their ability to trust in the character and motivation of judicial authorities. When people evaluate an authority, they make a judgment about that person's intentions. If they believe that the authority is sincerely seeking to do what is right, to consider the needs and concerns of the public to find a solution that is good for the people of the community, then people view that authority as trustworthy. Trust comes from the inference of such intentions. It is the expectation of future benevolence that is the product of repeated respectful interactions and a general sense of congruence of

---

25. Equality in standing is important in terms of public support because studies by social scientists find that the use of equality in groups fosters identification with and loyalty toward the group and its authorities. *See* MORTON DEUTSCH, DISTRIBUTIVE JUSTICE 196-97 (1985). It is for this reason that when authorities want to make decisions that promote solidarity they use the principle of equality. David M. Messick & Terry Schell, *Evidence for an Equality Heuristic in Social Decision Making*, 80 ACTA PSYCHOLOGICA 311 (1992).

values.[26] Again, Justice Sotomayor touches directly upon this issue when she publicly recognizes the good intentions of other Justices and expresses her wish that the public were more widely aware that Justices are not motivated by ill will, but rather by good-faith efforts to do what they believe is right.[27]

Yuen Huo's research on how the public deals with disliked groups is relevant here. A perennial issue in law is determining what obligations society owes to minority groups that want to express unpopular ideas through teaching, through public demonstrations, or in other ways. Huo presents members of the public with such groups and asks about several types of denials that might occur. The public regards the most acceptable form of denial as the refusal to provide resources to allow the group to promote its agenda. An intermediately acceptable denial is to deny the group rights, such as the right to speak or assemble. However, the least acceptable form of denial is to treat members of the group disrespectfully. In other words, of all the forms of injustice, disrespect is viewed as the most objectionable.[28]

What is most striking about Justice Sotomayor's comments on legal procedures is how consistent they are with current psychological perspectives on why procedural justice is so central to people's evaluations of legal procedures. As we have noted, there are two elements to procedural justice: quality of decision making and quality of treatment. Early treatments of procedural justice developed out of models of court procedure; they emphasized the goals of finding accurate information and using that information to make objectively just substantive decisions. Early psychological research followed this model and focused upon using fair procedures as a mechanism for obtaining outcomes that those involved would judge to be substantively fair. Essentially, this model follows the line of argument outlined by Justice Sotomayor that the enactment of fair procedures maximizes the likelihood of obtaining substantively appropriate outcomes. This is the model that framed the classic research of John Thibaut and Laurens Walker on the perceived fairness of inquisitorial and adversarial trial procedures.[29]

While this model has considerable plausibility and fits well within a legal framework, it has not been found to be a good description of the way that people actually evaluate the legal system. This is true irrespective of whether

---

26. Tyler & Jackson, *supra* note 13.

27. *See* Sotomayor & Greenhouse, *supra* note 4, at 3, 8.

28. Yuen J. Huo, *Justice and the Regulation of Social Relations: When and Why Do Group Members Deny Claims to Social Goods?*, 41 BRIT. J. SOC. PSYCHOL. 535 (2002).

29. THIBAUT & WALKER, *supra* note 6.

we are talking about people who are involved in actual cases as litigants or the general public when it is evaluating the court system as a legal institution. As we have noted, public evaluations center most heavily around issues of quality of treatment rather than upon evaluations of the quality of the decisionmaking of the courts.

How can we understand the public's focus on quality of treatment over the quality of decisionmaking by legal authorities? The key is the framework provided by the relational model of authority. When people evaluate legal authorities, their concerns are to some degree about particular issues or outcomes, but to a greater extent they are focused on whether authorities will acknowledge their right to bring issues and have their needs and concerns taken seriously. This perspective suggests that a central concern for many people is that authorities respect the public and acknowledge its right to respectful treatment. They also seek reassurance that authorities will take them seriously, considering their needs and concerns and making decisions that are responsive to them.

Fair procedures are important because they provide reassurance that those in positions of legal authority are attending to these relational issues. As a consequence, when people deal with an authority or are members of a group, organization, community, or society and see evidence that fair procedures are shaping decisions, rules, and policies, then they merge their sense of self with the group, intertwining their identities with group values. As people identify more closely with others and the institutions and authorities that unite them, they engage in a variety of group supporting behaviors, including following rules, accepting decisions, cooperating with authorities, and generally taking actions that people perceive will help their group.[30] Recent research, in fact, is able to disentangle the relative effects of people's commitment to fair procedures because of their belief that such procedures lead to more accurate or just outcomes from the effects of their commitment to fair procedures because such procedures support more positive self identity.[31]

---

30. TOM R. TYLER, WHY PEOPLE COOPERATE: THE ROLE OF SOCIAL MOTIVATIONS (2011); TOM R. TYLER & STEVEN L. BLADER, COOPERATION IN GROUPS (2000).

31. A recent analysis of public support for local courts provides an example of relational effects. This analysis compares the relative influence of people's belief that fairer procedures lead to greater substantive justice to the direct influence of fair procedures on legitimacy. It is this direct effect that reflects the relational influence of fairness upon legitimacy and law-related behaviors. In a comparison of influences upon legitimacy among Americans it was found that the primary factor was relational, with only a secondary influence of the decision-making aspects of fair procedures. *See* Tom Tyler & Justin Sevier, *How Do the Courts Create*

These findings support Justice Sotomayor's broader conception of what fairness looks like. Her efforts to humanize the Court by communicating respect to members of the public and to highlight the sincere and principled behavior of Justices touch on two core elements of public conceptions of fairness and hence are central to legitimating the court to the American public. Her comments suggest that the Justice has her finger on the pulse of the American public and hence has a good sense of how to create and maintain legitimacy for the Court and its decisions.

We live in an era of widespread distrust in our major social and political institutions. One focus of distrust is political authority, including the executive (51% of respondents express a great deal or a fair amount of trust), legislative (34%), and judicial (62%) branches of government.[32] Although the judiciary fares reasonably well in contrast to the other branches of government, the proportion of Americans expressing a similar level of trust in the judiciary in 2003 was 75%.[33] Hence, Justice Sotomayor's effort seems timely.

Studies of public reactions to both the Supreme Court and to local courts, as well as to other legal authorities such as the police and administrative agencies, demonstrate that when people talk about having experienced a fair or an unfair procedure, they make their determination by considering both the fairness of decisionmaking and the fairness of treatment. These same studies further suggest that fairness of treatment is of particular importance.

1. U.S. Supreme Court

Recent efforts to understand public views about the Court have identified a broad set of issues that shape perceptions and presented an image of public support that includes relational concerns.

Professors Gibson and Caldeira interviewed a randomly chosen sample of Americans and found that legitimacy was linked to issues of principle and sincerity. Judges are viewed as acting out of a sincere effort to make decisions

---

Popular Legitimacy?: The Role of Establishing the Truth, Punishing Justly and/or Acting Through Fair Procedures, 77 ALB. L. REV. (forthcoming 2014), http://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=2396945.

32. Jeffrey M. Jones, *Americans' Trust in Government Generally Down this Year*, GALLUP (Sept. 26, 2013), http://www.gallup.com/poll/164663/americans-trust-government-generally-down-year.aspx.

33. *Id.*

based upon principle, rather than in a strategic effort to advance their own self-interest (unlike members of Congress).[34]

Professor Kahan argues that the challenge for the Court is to transcend the tendency for people to view it through the lens of their prior perceptions of policy-relevant facts (or "motivated reasoning").[35] Kahan notes that "citizens of diverse values are prone to forming opposing *perceptions* of the Supreme Court's neutrality."[36] Kahan's insight is interesting because he suggests that the key to gaining acceptance does not lie only in a greater effort by the Court to explain its decisionmaking procedures. He suggests that the Court may be required to "say *much more* than is required strictly to decide a case."[37]

Kahan argues that instead of elaborating its reasoning to promote confidence in its impartiality, the Court should consider social-psychological strategies for countering motivated reasoning. One principle is "aporia," the acknowledgement of the complexity of the issues involved in a case.[38] This acknowledgement, as Kahan outlines it, reflects a willingness on the part of the Justices to be inclusive by acknowledging the arguments made by those on all sides of an issue. This shows everyone involved that the Court is giving fair and open-minded consideration to opposing arguments.[39] Kahan's argument reflects the same spirit as Justice Sotomayor's attempt to make her colleagues' principled efforts to reason through cases transparent to the public.

Kahan's second principle is affirmation.[40] Here, he emphasizes the idea of respect for people, their rights, and their standing in society. He argues that the Court should explicitly affirm people's possession of valued traits and characteristics by communicating respect for the status and values of the groups with which they identify.[41] This should be done for all the different parties involved in a case. Such recognition of people and the groups that shape

---

34. James L. Gibson & Gregory A. Caldeira, *Has Legal Realism Damaged the Legitimacy of the U.S. Supreme Court?*, 45 LAW & SOC'Y REV. 213 (2011) ("[L]egitimacy seems to flow from the view that discretion is being exercised in a principled, rather than strategic, way.").

35. Dan M. Kahan, *The Supreme Court 2010 Term—Foreword: Neutral Principles, Motivated Cognition, and Some Problems for Constitutional Law*, 125 HARV. L. REV. 19 (2011).

36. *Id.* at 58.

37. *Id.* at 71.

38. *Id.* at 62.

39. *Id*. at 63.

40. *Id.* at 67.

41. *Id*.

their identity not only promotes the Court's legitimacy, but also solidifies public identification with society and government.

Social-psychological research on minorities shows that displays of subgroup respect promote identification with social institutions, along with social engagement and psychological well-being among minority groups.[42] This research builds upon the general finding, already noted, that when people deal with others—particularly authorities representing a group to which they belong—they are looking for information about the status they and their group have. In other words, are they, their values, and their identity respected within the larger society? If so, they identify more closely with the larger society and adopt its values, including loyalty to overarching legal and political authorities. On the other hand, messages of disrespect and exclusion promote extra-legal behaviors such as violence.[43]

Tom Tyler and Margarita Krochik further explored the psychology of support for the Court or Congress in the context of ideological conflicts.[44] They used a vignette procedure in which those who completed a questionnaire were first told that the Court had made a decision consistent with or opposed to their own views on a controversial economic or social issue. Their findings suggest that judgments about the fairness of procedures did shape the willingness to accept Court decisions above and beyond whether those decisions reflected the person's own social or economic values. Overall, three factors mattered. The first was whether or not people assessed that the Court or Congress made decisions fairly (that is, principled decision making). The second was whether people felt that the Court or Congress considered public concerns when making decisions. And, the third was whether people felt that the Court or Congress respected public values. Of these three issues, the one most central to accepting Court decisions was whether the Court was seen as considering public concerns.[45]

---

42. Yuen J. Huo & Ludwin E. Molina, *Is Pluralism a Viable Model of Diversity?: The Benefits and Limits of Subgroup Respect*, 9 GROUP PROCESSES & INTERGROUP RELATIONS 359 (2006); Yuen J. Huo et al., *Subgroup Respect, Social Engagement, and Well-Being: A Field Study of an Ethnically Diverse High School*, 16 CULTURAL DIVERSITY & ETHNIC MINORITY PSYCHOL. 427 (2010).

43. Joy D. Leary et al., *The African American Adolescent Respect Scale: A Measure of a Prosocial Attitude*, 15 RES. ON SOC. WORK PRAC. 462 (2005).

44. Tom Tyler & Margarita Krochik, *Deference to Authority as a Basis for Managing Ideological Conflict*, 88 CHI.-KENT L. REV. 433 (2013).

45. *Id.* at 445.

2. Local Courts

It is also possible to consider the legitimacy of local courts. Tom Tyler & Justin Sevier used information collected from a national sample of Americans to examine the legitimacy of local courts.[46] They examined the degree to which court legitimacy was based upon the quality of the decisionmaking of the courts, defined as the frequency with which the courts were believed to make accurate decisions and to punish appropriately. Although their results indicate that legitimacy is, to some extent, based upon the evaluation of the quality of decisionmaking of the courts, the primary factor shaping legitimacy is the perceived quality of the treatment people received from judicial authorities. This includes whether people believe that they are respected when they deal with the courts and whether they think that judges care about and consider people's needs and concerns when making decisions. The study also shows that people are more willing to cooperate with the courts when they view them as legitimate. This includes a greater willingness to bring disputes to court instead of engaging in private violence and more willingness to be a witness in a court proceeding.

What implications do these findings have for the Court? First, they suggest the wisdom and value of the efforts that Justice Sotomayor is already undertaking to strengthen the connection between the Court and the public. And research findings support the Justice's intuition that this effort needs to be broader than focusing on the neutrality and factuality of Court decisionmaking. Those are important elements of the public's view of the Court, but research findings point to issues of trust in the motives of the Justices and their willingness to recognize and acknowledge public concerns. Hence, these are obvious points of contact with the public.

C. Fair Procedures Legitimize Authorities and Institutions, Promote Identification with Government, and Lead to Higher Levels of Compliance and Cooperation

In her comments, Justice Sotomayor suggests that the long-term goals in making and explaining judicial decisions should be to build respect for the law as an important institution in our lives and to enable people to identify with democracy. Again, social science findings suggest that the way to achieve these goals is in exactly the manner the Justice outlines. Studies suggest clearly that

---

46. Tyler & Sevier, *supra* note 31.

authorities and institutions gain legitimacy and promote identification with themselves and the community they represent when they exercise their authority fairly.[47] Legitimacy has important consequences, therefore, for the viability of law, government, and society.

Procedural justice is important at several stages institutionally. First, it is important when rules are being formulated. Here, people value the opportunity to participate by being able to express their views and deliberate with others as rules are being formulated. Once rules exist, people focus on whether procedural justice occurs as rules are implemented, including fair decisionmaking and fair treatment. The connection of procedural justice to legitimacy is direct for both the Supreme Court and for local courts and other

---

47. TYLER, *supra* note 13 (suggesting, through a study of the residents of Chicago, that those who believe the police are procedurally just comply with the law more frequently in their everyday lives); Bradford, *supra* note 15, at 345 ("By providing [crime] victims with voice and a sense that someone is listening to and taking their concerns seriously, contact with victims services seems to be linked to more favourable overall assessments of the criminal justice system."); Elliott et al., *supra* note 19, at 592 ("[F]indings supported the predictions that higher perceived antecedents of procedural justice would be associated with higher perceived legitimacy."); Gau & Brunson, *Procedural Justice*, *supra* note 19; Badi Hasisi & David Weisburd, *Going Beyond Ascribed Identities: The Importance of Procedural Justice in Airport Security Screening in Israel*, 45 LAW & SOC'Y REV. 867 (2011) (finding that procedural justice during airport security screening shapes the legitimacy of the police and their procedures); Hinds, *supra* note 19, at 195 ("Young people's attitudes toward police legitimacy are positively linked to police use of procedural justice."); Hinds & Murphy, *supra* note 19, at 27 ("People who believe the police use procedural justice when they exercise their authority are more likely to view police as legitimate, and in turn are more satisfied with police services."); Jonathan-Zamir & Weisburd, *supra* note 19, at 4 (finding that in Israeli communities "procedural justice is consistently the primary antecedent of police legitimacy"); Mazerolle et al., *supra* note 19; Myhill & Bradford, *supra* note 19, at 397 (finding that the key issue in the effect of encounters with police on perceived legitimacy is quality of "personal treatment"); Taylor & Lawton, *supra* note 19, at 414 (finding, in a study of people in Pennsylvania, the "importance of police simultaneously maintaining order and treating citizens fairly"); Tyler, *Public Trust*, *supra* note 15, at 215 ("Analysis from several studies exploring the basis of public views support this procedural justice based model of public evaluation."); Tom R. Tyler et al., *Maintaining Allegiance Toward Political Authorities: The Role of Prior Attitudes and the Use of Fair Procedures*, 33 AM. J. POL. SCI. 629 (1989) (showing that people on trial for felonies generalize from the procedural justice they feel they received in their trial to their views about law and government legitimacy); Wemmers et al., *supra* note 15 (finding that Dutch crime victims evaluated the criminal justice process through a procedural justice frame); Abuwala & Farole, *supra* note 15 (finding that interviews with people appearing in the Harlem and downtown project courts suggest that fairer treatment was linked to higher satisfaction with the courts); Farole, *supra* note 15, at 17 (finding that interviews with people appearing in the Harlem and downtown project courts suggest that fairer treatment was linked to higher satisfaction with the courts).

legal authorities. When judges act fairly, the public feels a stronger obligation to defer to their decisions and support the institutions they represent.

In addition, the use of fair procedures builds identification with authorities and the communities they represent. For example, research shows that when people evaluate the police in their community as acting fairly, their identification with the police is greater[48]—a result that resonates deeply with Justice Sotomayor's comments in her Thomas Lecture. As an example, people who were treated fairly by the police were more likely to think that they shared a similar background with police officers and could understand their actions. Further, they felt that those officers respected them and their values. They were also more likely to indicate that they felt they "belonged in their community" and that being a resident of their community was "important to the way they thought of themselves as a person."[49]

Research further demonstrates that, as Justice Sotomayor suggests, there are important positive consequences for communities in which people identify with legal and governmental authorities and institutions and the community they represent.[50] Studies by social psychologists demonstrate that when people identify with a group they blur the distinction between self-interest and group-interest. They increasingly view the well-being of the group as central to their own identify and work on behalf of the group. Of particular importance is the increasingly voluntary nature of cooperation with the group that develops out of identification. People want their group to be successful and group success becomes the same as personal success.[51]

Finally, the Justice's comments are strikingly convergent with recent social science research concerning potential goals for the legal system and their relationship to popular legitimacy. Traditionally, legal authorities primarily focused on obtaining public compliance with the law. Both legitimacy and sanction threats are found to motivate compliance.[52] Increasingly, discussions of law and legal authority have emphasized the importance of willing acceptance, voluntary acceptance, and cooperation as goals for legal authorities.[53] This shift is important because, unlike compliance, voluntary

---

48. Tyler & Fagan, *supra* note 19, at 260.

49. TYLER, *supra* note 30.

50. Tyler & Jackson, *supra* note 13.

51. TYLER, *supra* note 30, at 146-66 (summarizing factors contributing to group-based motivation).

52. TYLER, *supra* note 13.

53. Tyler & Jackson, *supra* note 13.

deference and willing cooperation are heavily dependent upon popular legitimacy, making having such legitimacy increasingly important just at a time when many institutions are seeing declines in public trust and confidence.

While cooperation is not the same goal as compliance, both of these goals are often conceptualized similarly in that their focus is on the issues associated with maintaining social order—i.e., reporting crimes and criminals, being involved in a neighborhood watch, testifying in court, or serving on juries. The legal system increasingly depends upon such cooperation as the number of societal resources that can be devoted to legal institutions declines.

However, police authorities increasingly recognize that the problem of social order cannot be separated from community problems, and you cannot arrest your way out of crime.[54] Hence the issue is whether legal authority can be exercised in ways that promote identification with communities, encourage economic and social activity, and promote the overall legitimacy of government. Studies suggest that experiences with the legal system do influence views about government.[55] Similarly, the results of a recent national survey of Americans suggest that when people evaluate their police and court systems as procedurally fair, they identify more with their communities and engage in them socially, by trusting neighbors; politically, by voting; and economically, by shopping and going to entertainment venues within that community.[56] Hence, trust in law and legal authorities can promote community well-being and support for government.

Justice Sotomayor's comments anticipate and complement this discussion of the important role of the local police and courts in creating a climate for social, political, and economic development. People thrive when they feel reassurance where they live and work. It is important for people to feel that if they call upon the police and courts their security will be protected, but also that they will be treated with respect and their rights recognized if they deal with those authorities. Of course, most people in a community seldom call upon the police or the courts for services, but the police and courts are in the background in every community and shape what people think, feel, and do.

---

54. Tracey L. Meares, *The Good Cop: Knowing the Difference Between Lawful or Effective Policing and Rightful Policing—And Why It Matters*, 54 WM. & MARY L. REV. 1865 (2012); Tracey L. Meares, *Norms, Legitimacy and Law Enforcement*, 79 OR. L. REV. 391 (2000); Tracey L. Meares & Dan M. Kahan, *Law and (Norms of) Order in the Inner City*, 32 LAW & SOC'Y REV. 805 (1998).

55. *E.g.*, Tyler et al., *supra* note 47.

56. Tyler & Jackson, *supra* note 13.

People want to feel comfort, not fear, when the police are present and to anticipate that they will receive help and professional treatment if they need it. Similarly, as a prerequisite to making contracts and working with others, people want to feel that if they are involved in a dispute they can trust the courts to rectify injustices.

Of course, Justice Sotomayor is not the only Supreme Court Justice to recognize the role of law and legal authorities in promoting communities and government. Justice Breyer similarly argues that the courts are central to creating a context in which communities can "respond to a universal need present in every society, that for some method for resolving disputes among individuals."[57] Further, Justice Breyer recognizes the importance of Court legitimacy, suggesting that "public acceptance is not automatic and cannot be taken for granted. The Court itself must help maintain the public's trust in the Court, the public's confidence in the Constitution, and the public's commitment to the rule of law."[58] And he notes the need to motivate political participation as a way of maintaining a viable democracy. He notes: "The Constitution's efforts to create democratic political institutions mean little unless the public participates in American political life."[59] However, Justice Breyer does not address the issue of how the Court can facilitate these goals. It is the pairing of these goals with a strategy for achieving them that brings Justice Sotomayor's comments so sharply into line with recent social science findings.

SUMMARY

There is a striking correspondence between the findings of recent research on the psychology of popular legitimacy and the jurisprudence of Justice Sotomayor. While she does not do so, the Justice could cite a wide range of recent social science scholarship in support of her perspective on how the courts should function so as to best build a viable society.

There are several potential benefits of calling attention to that research. One reason is to provide support for her perspective. As we have noted, both judges in general and Supreme Court Justices in particular have approached

---

57. STEPHEN BREYER, MAKING OUR DEMOCRACY WORK 138 (2010).

58. *Id.* at xiii.

59. *Id.* at 215.

judging from a range of theories of interpretation.[60] How can we decide which perspective on interpretation ought to be used? One approach is to identify goals and then consider what we know from empirical research about how to achieve those goals.[61]

Social science research has illuminated some of these goals, including the ability to gain public deference to court decisions, the capacity to enhance public willingness to empower courts to resolve conflicts and evaluate laws and policies, and the capability of the communities and the overall structure of government within which the court system exists. All of these goals are addressed both by local courts and, at a national level, by federal courts, including the Supreme Court. How can these goals be achieved? As we have outlined, social science suggests that the key to public support is popular legitimacy. Further, the central factor shaping popular legitimacy is an evaluation of the fairness with which the courts exercise their authority. The widespread nature and strength of these findings argues for the value of relying upon this social science framing as a way of evaluating interpretive strategies of judicial decisionmaking both at the local and the federal level.

These social science findings can help to sharpen Justice Sotomayor's general message. When she argues for the value of humanizing the justices and respecting the public, her argument is anecdotal and general in tone. The social science findings outlined here are more specific and provide a set of guidelines for implementing a strategy to achieve the goals she articulates. In particular, efforts to humanize judges can benefit from social science models of motive-based trust—the factors that shape inferences about the character and intention of authorities—and respect for the public can be bolstered by considering the important role that authorities such as judges play in communicating messages about inclusion and status.

---

60. Interestingly textualism is also defended by Justice Scalia by reference to public support for the courts. In his book with Bryan Garner, ANTONIN SCALIA & BRYAN A. GARNER, READING LAW: THE INTERPRETATION OF LEGAL TEXTS (2012), Justice Scalia argues that "[t]he descent into social rancor over judicial decisions is largely traceable to nontextual means of interpretation, which erodes society's confidence in a rule of law." *Id.* at xxviii. He suggests this erosion then leads to a decline of faith in democratic institutions. Justice Scalia's focus upon the content of opinions as a source of legitimacy is different from the perspective being advocated in this Essay, but the quote shows that, irrespective of how Justices think the Court is legitimated, they recognize that impact upon popular legitimacy is a criterion against which to evaluate the actions of the Court.

61. Tracey L. Meares & Bernard E. Harcourt, *Transparent Adjudication and Social Science Research in Constitutional Criminal Procedure*, 90 J. CRIM. L. & CRIMINOLOGY 733 (1999).

Finally, the social science findings outlined above point to the limits of the type of instrumental models of legal and political authority that have dominated legal scholarship and judicial decisionmaking over the last several decades. The instrumental model suggests that people's connection to law and legal authority is primarily shaped by the outcomes that people experience. On this model, the central public concerns about local courts are about the cost of litigation, the time it takes, and the favorability of outcomes. Similarly, public concerns with federal courts mainly center around obtaining desirable policy decisions.

In contrast, the large body of research we note here highlights that the public connection to the courts is primarily motivated by a desire for non-instrumental notions of justice, a finding also supported by recent studies of the motivations underlying litigation. For example, Gillian Hadfield has found that litigation decisions by 9/11 victims were motivated by nonmonetary concerns about values and accountability;[62] Tamara Relis has shown that the concerns of medical malpractice victims are shaped by principles that include the desire for treatment with dignity and respect, the desire to be heard, and the desire for those responsible to be blamed for their wrongdoing;[63] and Tess Wilkinson-Ryan and David Hoffman have demonstrated that reactions to contract breaches are influenced by inferences concerning the character of the other party and their perceived intentions in breaching the contract.[64] Similarly, decisions about whether or not to appeal court decisions are shaped by non-instrumental issues. In particular, litigants want to receive a hearing on issues that they feel were not heard in the trial court, with people interpreting the court's willingness to grant such a hearing as vindicating them in the sense that the court is acknowledging the importance of listening to them articulate their needs and concerns even if it does not accept their legal arguments.[65] People's relationship to judges and courts, in other words, is centered around the very type of non-instrumental issues we have outlined here—issues that Justice Sotomayor, in her writings and jurisprudence, seems to deeply understand.

---

62. Gillian K. Hadfield, *Framing the Choice Between Cash and the Courthouse: Experiences with the 9/11 Victim Compensation Fund*, 42 LAW & SOC'Y REV. 645 (2008).

63. Tamara Relis, *"It's Not About the Money!": A Theory on Misconceptions of Plaintiffs' Litigation Aims*, 68 U. PITT. L. REV. 341 (2006).

64. Tess Wilkinson-Ryan & David A. Hoffman, *Breach Is for Suckers*, 63 VAND. L. REV. 1003 (2010).

65. SCOTT BARCLAY, AN APPEALING ACT: WHY PEOPLE APPEAL IN CIVIL CASES (1999).

Tom R. Tyler is the Macklin Fleming Professor of Law and Professor of Psychology at Yale University. He holds a Ph.D. from UCLA and a B.A. from Columbia University. Tracey L. Meares is the Walton Hale Hamilton Professor of Law at Yale University. She graduated from The University of Chicago Law School. *We thank Roseanna Sommers and Sam Thypin-Bermeo for helpful comments upon an initial draft of this comment and William Eskridge for encouraging us to highlight the connection between Justice Sotomayor's jurisprudence and the results of recent social science research.*

Preferred citation: Tracey L. Meares & Tom R. Tyler, *Justice Sotomayor and the Jurisprudence of Procedural Justice*, 123 YALE L.J. F. 525 (2014), http://yalelawjournal.org/forum/justice-sotomayor-and-the-jurisprudence-of-procedural-justice.

NEW FELONY DEFENDER PROGRAM

Case Problem: Part 1

Ira Mickenberg
Defender Trainer and Consultant
6 Saratoga Circle
Saratoga Springs, NY 12866
(518) 583-6730
Imickenberg@nycap.rr.com

Summary of Client Interview and Other Information

Your client is Lionel Carper, a 19 year old black man. He is 5'8" tall, weighs 135 lbs., and wears his hair in cornrows. He lives in a very poor section of a mid-sized city. The neighborhood has many abandoned, boarded up storefronts, houses, and apartment buildings. The homes and stores that are still occupied all have metal grates or bars on the windows. About 90% of the people in this part of town are black, with the other 10% being equally divided between whites and recent immigrants from Central America.

Lionel Carper lives in a three room apartment on 26th Street with his 50 year old grandmother, his 20 year old sister, Sandra Pitts, and his two younger twin brothers, Ed and Joseph Porter, aged 8. Lionel, Sandra, Ed, and Joseph all had the same mother, but three different fathers. Their mother died of AIDS three years ago. They have not seen any of the fathers for years. Lionel dropped out of school in the 9th grade when he was 16. He said that he has three prior juvenile delinquency adjudications for possession of drugs. He thinks the first two were for possessing marijuana, and the third was for heroin. He also has one prior adult misdemeanor conviction for possessing marijuana and one adult felony conviction for sale of a small amount of crack. The adult misdemeanor and felony were in separate incidents that took place within a month of his 18th birthday. He served twelve months for the felony, and got out of prison a month before he was arrested in your case.

Carper has told you that he was not the person who sold drugs on February 1st. He says that on that morning he was watching a video with his sister. He doesn't remember the title of the movie, but says "it was something with a lot of shooting." His sister agrees that she was watching the video with him, but does not remember the title. She also admits that she is a heroin addict; that she shot up just before the movie; and that she may have nodded off for a while during the film. Sandra does not have any criminal record.

Initial Police Report by P.O. Thomas

On February 1, 2017, in response to many complaints from neighborhood residents about flagrant drug dealing on 26th Street, my backup team and I staged an undercover street buy operation. I went to 26th Street, between 3rd and 4th Avenue, at 10:00 A.M. in plainclothes, with the aim of buying crack from any street dealer I could find. I was wearing a tape recording device, but at the end of the day, discovered there was an equipment malfunction, so there was no tape of the incident. Another plainclothes officer, P.O. Palmer, was to observe the buy from across the street but was not able to be present.

I arrived with my 3 officer backup team at about 10:00 A.M., and parked our car on 29th Street. I walked to 26th Street, and immediately saw several young black men standing on the street. Some of the men were standing alone, some were in groups of 2 to five people. Sometimes other individuals would approach one or more of these men, have a brief conversation, and engage in what I believe was a hand to hand transaction, exchanging something for what appeared to be U.S. currency. I could not tell exactly what they were exchanging, but based on my 10 years experience as a police officer, I believed it was drugs.

I walked up to one of the men on the street who was standing alone, and asked him, "what have you got?" The man, who was wearing a red coat and a red baseball cap, did not answer. I then said, "I need a couple of rocks. If you're selling, I'm buying." The man, who I later identified as Lionel Carper, said, "I don't have anything today, but that guy does." He then pointed to another man standing about 20 yards away, wearing a blue Carolina Panthers jacket and a black stocking cap.

I walked to the man in the Panthers jacket, and after a brief conversation, agreed to buy two rocks of crack for $20. I handed the man a $20 bill. The man walked to a nearby parked car, picked up a paper bag from the ground near the car's wheel, removed two baggies of crack, and gave them to me.

I walked around the corner and radioed my back up team. I told them I made a buy from two people. I said that the first was "a black male, about 5'10" to 6' tall, 170 lbs, 21-25 years old, wearing a red coat." I said the second man was "a black male, about 30-35 years old, 6' to 6'2" tall, 150 lbs, wearing a Panthers jacket and a black stocking cap. I also said that "the guy with the Panthers coat has the stash in a paper bag near the wheel of the car he's standing next to."

The backup team drove to 26th Street, arriving about 5 minutes after I made the buy. They arrested William Stapp, who is a 32 year old black man, 6' tall and 155 lbs. Stapp was wearing a blue Carolina Panthers jacket and a black stocking cap. They also recovered a bag containing 50 baggies of crack from a brown paper bag near the wheel of a car parked near where Stapp was standing. The backup officers did not make any other arrests. They said, "there was just no one on the street with a red coat." About three hours later, I made a positive identification of Stapp at a police station show-up, after observing him through a one way mirror in an interrogation room.

Supplemental Police Report by P.O. Thomas

The following week, my backup team and I again went to 26th Street to make an undercover buy. I made the buy, and as I was walking away, saw Lionel Carper emerge from the doorway of an apartment building. I walked around the corner, and radioed my backup team with a description of the new seller. I also said, "I also see the dealer who got away last week. He's wearing the same red coat." The backup officers arrived at 26th Street about 3 minutes later. When they saw Lionel Carper walking down the street, they arrested him. A search incident to arrest revealed a plastic bag containing a small amount of marijuana in his coat pocket. I identified Carper in a stationhouse show-up about two hours later.

File No.
10 CR 0001

Law Enforcement Case No. | LID No. | SID No. | FBI No.

MAGISTRATE'S ORDER

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA

Urbal County

In The General Court Of Justice
District Court Division

Offense
Possession of Marijuana

THE STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA VS.

Name And Address Of Defendant
Lionel Carper
Apt. 88H 26th St.
Urbal City, NC

I, the undersigned, find that the defendant named above has been arrested without a warrant and the defendant's detention is justified because there is probable cause to believe that on or about the date of offense shown and in the county named above the defendant named above unlawfully, willfully and feloniously did
possess a controlled substance, to wit, marijuana, 1.5 ounces.

County Of Residence	Telephone No.
Urbal	918-0000

Race	Sex	Date Of Birth	Age
B	M	5/18/90	19

Social Security No.	Drivers License No. & State
290-42-3108	

Name Of Defendant's Employer
—

Offense Code(s)	Offense In Violation Of G.S.
	90-95(a)(3)
	Date Of Offense: 2/8/10

Date Of Arrest & Check Digit No. (As Shown On Fingerprint Card)

Arresting Officer (Name, Address Or Department)
P.O. Ryan
Urbal City P.D.

Name & Address Of Witnesses (Including Counties & Telephone Nos.)

This act was in violation of the law referred to in this Magistrate's Order. This Magistrate's Order is issued upon information furnished under oath by the arresting officer(s) shown. A copy of this Order has been delivered to the defendant.

Signature

Location Of Court
Urbal District Court

☐ Misdemeanor Offense Which Requires Fingerprinting Per Fingerprint Plan

Date Issued

☒ Magistrate ☐ Deputy CSC ☐ Assistant CSC ☐ Clerk Of Superior Court

Court Date: 2/9/10

Court Time: 9.00 ☒ AM ☐ PM

District Attorney	Attorney For Defendant At Time Of Trial Or Plea	☐ Appointed ☐ Retained ☐ Waived	**PRIOR CONVICTIONS:** No./Level: 0 ☐ I (0) ☐ II (1-4) ☐ III (5+)

PLEA: ☐ guilty ☐ no contest _____ **VERDICT:** ☐ guilty _____ M.C.L. ☐ A1 ☐ 1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3
☐ guilty ☐ no contest _____ ☐ guilty _____ M.C.L. ☐ A1 ☐ 1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3
☐ not guilty _____ ☐ not guilty _____

JUDGMENT: The defendant appeared in open court and freely, voluntarily and understandingly entered the above plea; on the above verdict it is **ORDERED** that the defendant: ☐ pay costs and a fine of $_____.
☐ be imprisoned for a term of _____ days in the custody of the sheriff. ☐ DOC. Pretrial Credit _____ days served.
☐ Work release ☐ is recommended. ☐ is not recommended. [☐ is ordered. (use form AOC-CR-602)]
☐ The Court finds that a ☐ longer ☐ shorter period of probation, than that which is specified in G.S. 15A-1343.2(d), is necessary.
☐ Execution of the sentence is suspended and the defendant is placed on unsupervised probation for _____ months, subject to the following conditions: (1) commit no criminal offense in any jurisdiction. (2) possess no firearm, explosive or other deadly weapon listed in G.S. 14-269. (3) remain gainfully and suitably employed or faithfully pursue a course of study or of vocational training, that will equip the defendant for suitable employment, and abide by all rules of the institution. (4) satisfy child support and family obligations, as required by the Court. (5) pay to the Clerk the costs of court and any additional sums shown below.

Fine	Restitution*	Attorney's Fee	Community Service Fee	Other
$	$	$	$	$

*Name(s), address(es), amount(s) & social security number(s) of aggrieved party(ies) to receive restitution:

☐ 6. complete _____ hours of community service during the first _____ days of probation, as directed by the service coordinator, and pay the fee prescribed by G.S. 143B-475.1(b) within _____ days.
☐ 7. not be found in or on the premises of the complainant or _____.
☐ 8. not assault, communicate with or be in the presence of the complainant or _____.
☐ 9. Other: _____

It is ORDERED that this: ☐ Judgment is continued upon payment of costs.
☐ case be consolidated for judgment with _____.
☐ sentence is to run at the expiration of the sentence in _____.

☐ **COMMITMENT:** It is **ORDERED** that the Clerk deliver two certified copies of this Judgment and Commitment to the sheriff and that the sheriff cause the defendant to be retained in custody to serve the sentence imposed or until the defendant shall have complied with the conditions of release pending appeal.

PROBABLE CAUSE: ☐ Probable cause is found as to all Counts except _____, and the defendant is bound over to Superior for action by the grand jury. ☐ No probable cause is found as to Count(s) _____ of this Warrant, and the Count(s) is dismissed.

Date	Name Of District Court Judge Or Magistrate (Type Or Print)	Signature Of District Court Judge Or Magistrate

APPEAL ENTRIES

☐ The defendant, in open court, gives notice of appeal to the ☐ District ☐ Superior Court.
☐ The current pretrial release order is modified as follows:

Date	Signature Of District Court Judge Or Magistrate

WAIVER OF PROBABLE CAUSE HEARING

The undersigned defendant, with the consent of his/her attorney, waives the right to a probable cause hearing.

Date Waived	Signature Of Defendant
	Signature Of Attorney

CERTIFICATION

I certify that this Judgment is a true and complete copy of the original which is on file in this case.

Date	Date Delivered To Sheriff	Signature	☐ Deputy CSC ☐ Assist. CSC ☐ CSC

NOTE: *If DWI, use AOC-CR-342 (active) or AOC-CR-310 (probation). If active sentence to DOC, use AOC-CR-602. If supervised probation, use AOC-CR-604.*

NOT A REAL INDICTMENT. FOR EDUCATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA

Urbal County

File No. 10 CRS 0001

In The General Court Of Justice
Superior Court Division

STATE VERSUS

Name Of Defendant: Lionel Carper

Date Of Offense:

Offense In Violation Of G.S.: 90-95(a)(1)

INDICTMENT

I. **POSSESSION WITH INTENT TO MANUFACTURE, SELL, AND DELIVER** cocaine *(Identify Substance)*

☒ II. **SALE AND DELIVERY**

☐ III. **MANUFACTURE**

NOTE: *[This form may be used to charge all three offenses, I, II, and III; I only; I and II only; or I and III only. Do not use this form to charge only II or III. Note that although Count I below includes three different ways (intent to sell, intent to deliver, intent to manufacture) to commit that one offense, the state need only prove one of those ways to obtain a conviction. State v. Birdsong, 325 N.C. 418 (1989); State v. Moore, 327 N.C. 378 (1990).]*

It is not legally necessary in Count I to allege the amount of the controlled substance. If, however, the offense of possession of the controlled substance is a felony or misdemeanor depending on the amount possessed, alleging the amount in Count I will permit the offense of possession of the controlled substances to be submitted to the jury in factually-appropriate cases.

I. **POSSESSION WITH INTENT TO MANUFACTURE, SELL, AND DELIVER**

The jurors for the State upon their oath present that on or about the date of offense shown and in the county named above the defendant named above unlawfully, willfully and feloniously did possess with intent to manufacture, sell, and deliver a controlled substance as follows:

Specify Amount Of Substance *(see note above)*:

Identify Substance: Cocaine

Schedule Of the NC Controlled Substances Act: II

II. **SALE AND DELIVERY**

And the jurors for the State upon their oath present that on or about the date of offense shown and in the county named above the defendant named above unlawfully, willfully and feloniously did sell and deliver the controlled substance identified in Count I to:

Name Of Person Substance Sold And Delivered To: P.O. Thomas

III. **MANUFACTURE**

And the jurors for the State upon their oath present that on or about the date of offense shown and in the county named above the defendant named above unlawfully, willfully and feloniously did manufacture the controlled substance identified in Count I by: *(describe act of manufacturing)*

Signature Of Prosecutor:

AOC-CR-151, Rev. 10/96

(Over)

WITNESSES	
☒ P.O. Thomas	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

The Witnesses marked "X" were sworn by the undersigned Foreman of the Grand Jury and, after hearing testimony, this Bill was found to be:

☒ A TRUE BILL by twelve or more grand jurors, and I the undersigned Foreman of the Grand Jury, attest the concurrence of twelve or more grand jurors in this Bill of Indictment.

☐ NOT A TRUE BILL.

Date	Signature Of Grand Jury Foreman
3/12/10	

AOC-CR-151, Side Two, Rev. 10/96

BRAINSTORMING BASICS

Good trial lawyers realize that we win cases on the *facts*, not on the law. Jurors are persuaded by a good, factual story that convinces them that our client is not guilty. To win a criminal trial, we must develop a different factual narrative from that offered by the prosecution. Brainstorming is the method we use for developing the facts of the case. Later, you will use the facts to build a defense theory and tell your client's story of innocence.

Tips for Brainstorming:

1. Be factual and specific

- Not law
- Not conclusions
- Not endless rounds of questions (although do keep a list of matters requiring more investigation)

2. Be Inclusive

- Crime facts, events, actions
- People (personalities, motivations, interrelationships, influences)
- Places, objects
- Investigative and other procedures

3. Be non-judgmental

- Facts are not good, bad, or beyond change . . . yet

4. Be literal

- Write down facts as close to verbatim as possible; don't paraphrase

5. Be ready to investigate further

- Keep a list of facts, ideas, possibilities that require further interviews, discovery, etc.

Grid for Use in Workshop # 1
Choosing All Vehicles to Obtain Discovery Items

Discovery Item	Investigate	Request for Statutory Discovery	Motion to Compel Statutory Discovery	Brady Motion	Other (e.g., Motion to Preserve)

NEW FELONY DEFENDER TRAINING

Case Problem: Part 2

After Initial Discovery and Investigation

Ira Mickenberg
Defender Trainer and Consultant
6 Saratoga Circle
Saratoga Springs, NY 12866
(518) 583-6730
Imickenberg@nycap.rr.com

Summary of Investigation

Your investigator has turned up one other witness, Tanya Greene. She is 30 years old, and the ex-girlfriend of William Stapp. She tells your investigator that Stapp is a drug dealer and that he never works with anyone else because he is "real paranoid about someone ratting him out, and also too cheap to share the profits with anyone." She also tells your investigator that Stapp particularly dislikes Lionel Carper because Tanya "had a little fling with Lionel for a week or two after he got out of jail."

Your investigator also spoke with P.O. Thomas, with whom he used to work when he was an officer. P.O. Thomas told your investigator that the "equipment malfunction" was that he didn't turn the tape recorder on properly. He also said that another officer, plainclothes P.O. Palmer, was supposed to protect Thomas' safety by unobtrusively observing Thomas from across the street, but Palmer mistakenly went to 27th Street and didn't see any of the incident.

Your investigation also reveals that William Stapp has five prior misdemeanor convictions for various drug offenses, some of which initially involved heroin and crack but were pled out as misdemeanors. Stapp also has two prior felony convictions for selling crack. His case has been continued until July and he has been released on $500 bond. His lawyer has not returned your calls, and your investigator has not attempted to interview Stapp.

Discovery

In response to your discovery request, the State has provided you with a lab report from the State Bureau of Investigation identifying the substance sold to P.O. Thomas as cocaine (report attached). The State has served notice on you that it intends to call the chemist as an expert witness and that it intends to introduce at trial, pursuant to G.S. 90-95(g1), a written statement of chain of custody of the substance analyzed (attached).

The State also has served notice on you that it intends to call P.O. Thomas, not just to testify about his actions and observations during the sale, but as an expert witness to testify about the role of steerers in street level drug selling operations and about the typical pattern of drug sales in the neighborhood of 26th Street. The State has also demanded that you provide them with the names of any alibi witnesses and any expert witnesses you intend to call at trial.

North Carolina
State Bureau of Investigation
Department of Justice
Raleigh

Laboratory Report

TO:	Officer Thomas Urbal Police Department Urbal, NC	DATE: SBI LAB NO.: EXAMINED BY: SBI FILE NO.: AGENCY FILE NO.: SUBMITTED BY:	Feb. 28, 2017 000001 Hope S. Eternal 08-00001 First-Class Mail
LOCATION: CASE TYPE:	Urbal County Controlled Substances Act	DATE OF OFFENSE: DATE SUBMITTED: TRACKING NO.:	Feb. 1, 2017 Feb. 5, 2017 0000002

ITEMS SUBMITTED:

Item # 1: Fifty-two plastic bag corners containing off-white substance.

TYPES OF EXAMINATION REQUESTED:

Examine for controlled substances.

RESULTS OF EXAMINATION:

Item # 1: Cocaine base – Schedule II.
Weight – 6.3 grams

DISPOSITION OF EVIDENCE:

The unconsumed portion of the evidence is enclosed in the attached package and is being returned via first class mail.

This report represents a true and accurate result of my analysis on the item(s) described.

_____
Hope S. Eternal

State Bureau of Investigation

Department of Justice

SBI Laboratory Chain of Custody for Case 000001

The signatures of North Carolina State Bureau of Investigation employees appearing below indicate that the material described on the SBI Laboratory Report, under Items Submitted, was delivered to the person (or approved carrier) indicated, on or about the date stated, and was delivered in essentially the same condition as received.

LAB Item Number	Agency Item Number	Received from	Transferred to	Date of Transfer	Signature
1	1	First-Class Mail	Melanie Griffith	02/05/2017	
1	1	Melanie Griffith	Evidence Retention	02/05/2017	
1	1	Evidence Retention	Jimmy Dean	02/21/2017	
1	1	Jimmy Dean	Hope S. Eternal	02/21/2017	
1	1	Hope S. Eternal	Jimmy Dean	02/29/2017	
1	1	Jimmy Dean	First-Class Mail	02/29/2017	

Two Possible Theories for *State v. Carper*

1. The sale happened, I made the statements to Officer Thomas, but it wasn't a crime because I had no involvement in Stapp's drug business.

Michael Stapp is a drug dealer and has been one for years, yet he always seems to be able to get off with a slap on the wrist. Stapp likes to work alone because he doesn't trust anyone and wants to keep all of his drug money for himself. Stapp was at it again on February 1, selling drugs in the neighborhood. Lionel was out that day too when Officer Thomas and the other keystone cops showed up. "You want drugs?" asked Lionel. "I don't have any, but everyone knows Stapp has always got something to sell." As always, Stapp made the sale on his own, from his own stash near his feet. Lionel had no involvement with Stapp—they can't stand each other because Lionel got with Stapp's girl. And Thomas is no expert at this. He can't even get his tape recorder to turn on or his backup team to the right location. When are the police going to get their act together and put Stapp [Did he cut a deal?] and the real drug dealers away?

2. The sale happened, but I didn't do it and I wasn't there.

Michael Stapp is a drug dealer and has been one for years, yet he always seems to be able to get off with a slap on the wrist. Stapp was at it again on February 1, selling drugs in the neighborhood. Officer Thomas and his team went out that day to investigate drug sales, but they weren't too good at it. Thomas couldn't get his tape recorder to work, his backup went to the wrong street, and the other officers took so long to arrive that the guy in the red coat—the guy Thomas says told him to see Stapp about drugs—had left. Lionel Carper was home looking after his sister, who has a drug problem because of people like Stapp. A week later, Thomas charged 19-year old Lionel, small and slight of build and no resemblance to the guy in the red coat except that Lionel lives in the neighborhood and has a red coat. Thomas couldn't follow even the simplest rules to avoid mistakes like this. When are the police going to get their act together and put Stapp [Did he cut a deal?] and the real drug dealers away?

Theory of Defense Basics

A theory of defense is a short written summary of the factual, emotional, and legal reasons why the jury (or judge) should return a favorable verdict. It gets at the essence of your client's story of innocence, reduced culpability, or unfairness; provides a roadmap for you for all phases of trial; and resolves problems or questions that the jury (or judge) may have about returning the verdict you want.

Steps in creating a theory of defense

Pick your genre

1. It never happened (mistake, setup)
2. It happened, but I didn't do it (mistaken id, alibi, setup, etc.)
3. It happened, I did it, but it wasn't a crime (self-defense, accident, elements lacking)
4. It happened, I did it, it was a crime, but it wasn't this crime (lesser offense)
5. It happened, I did it, it was the crime charged, but I'm not responsible (insanity)
6. It happened, I did it, it was the crime charged, I'm responsible, so what? (jury nullification)

Identify your three best facts and three worst facts

- Optional step to test the viability of your choice of genre

Come up with a headline

- Barstool or tabloid headline method

Write a theory paragraph

- Use your headline as your opening sentence
- Write three or four sentences describing the essential factual, emotional, and legal reasons why the jury (or judge) should return a verdict in your favor
- Conclude with a sentence describing the conclusion the jury (or judge) should reach

Develop recurring themes

- Through catch phrases or evocative language, themes provide a shorthand way to evoke your overall theory and move your audience

Grid 1 for Use in Workshop # 2
Choosing All Vehicles to Keep Evidence Out

Evidence	Motion in Limine	Motion to Suppress	Objection	Other (e.g. sanction, curative instruction, witness not qualified)

Grid 2 for Use in Workshop # 2
Choosing Vehicles to Keep Evidence In

Evidence	Possible Way State Will Try to Keep it Out	Defense Response 1 (Why It Should Come In)	Defense Response 2 (Why It Should Come In)

Suppressing Evidence 101

Felony Public Defender's Training 2020
Presented February 13, 2020

By
Susan K. Seahorn
Public Defender
Defender District 15B
200 S. Cameron Street, Suite 150
Hillsborough, North Carolina 27278
919-643-4400

REASONS TO FILE A SUPPRESSION MOTION

1. You case has good facts that establish a strong suppression issue and there is good law to support it. In other words, you should/might win.

2. Your facts are less strong, but there is law to support the issue and:

a. You can use the opportunity to question the witnesses under oath (the officer or possibly a witness who otherwise won't speak with you) and you can use the sworn testimony at trial to impeach. You can also find out a lot about the case and it may help you to discover good facts or other good issues.

OR

b. Your client will have the opportunity to hear evidence and get a more realistic view of the case.

OR

c. It is a serious case and you need to preserve every issue.

OR

d. There is no defense except suppression of the evidence, which if you win, makes you win the case. Sometimes you win when you don't expect to.

OR

e. Sometimes DA's really don't want to do a suppression hearing, and will make you a better plea offer to avoid it.

WHAT KINDS OF EVIDENCE CAN YOU TRY TO SUPPRESS

1. Any kind of **identification.** In the past, it was understood among many that state action was not required because suppression of identification is based on the lack of reliability of the identification brought about by the circumstances under which the ID occurred, not that the state caused it to

happen. Then the US Supreme Court issued its opinion in Perry v. New Hamshire, 132 S.Ct. 716, 181 L.Ed. 2d 694, (2012) in which they said that the Constitution provides other means to afford a defendant a way to address unreliability, and thus state action is required even though a suppression of ID is not a Fourth Amendment motion it is a Due Process, Fifth Amendment motion. There are a lot of cases in lower courts where people have raised the issue without State action, so you should still move to suppress if there is not State action and rely on the State Constitution to do so rather than the US Constitution. If there is no State action, argue that the State constitution affords greater protection than the US Constitution does based on recent recognition of the unreliability of eyewitness identification in general.

2. Any **statement** of your client, if

a. i. it was elicited while your client was in **custody**

AND

ii. it was a part of interrogation OR the cop said something to goad your client into responding (Fifth Amendment) AND client had not waived her rights prior to making the statement.

OR

b. someone working for or with the police elicited the statement after your client was charged AND had asked for a lawyer, whether the client was in custody or out of custody at the time the statement was made (Sixth Amendment).

OR

c. the police went to see your client while he was in jail to question the client about the charge for which he is in jail AND after client has asked for a lawyer AND client did not request to talk to the police (Sixth Amendment applies whether or not client signs a waiver at the time).

OR

d. the police continued to question client after he said he didn't want to talk with them while he is still in custody (Fifth Amendment).

OR

e. the police used someone as an agent to get client to tell them about the case after client was arrested AND had a lawyer (Sixth Amendment).

3. **Physical evidence** seized:

a. in a seizure or stop that was not supported by reasonable suspicion or probable cause (Fourth Amendment).

OR

b. in a search without probable cause or without valid consent to search (Fourth Amendment).

OR

c. in a search with valid consent to search, however the police had exceeded the scope of the consent given at the time when the evidence was found (Fourth Amendment).

OR

d. a search pursuant to a search warrant, but the warrant is invalid on its face (fails to establish probable cause or fails to implicate the premises to be searched) OR is based on information in the warrant application that was false (Fourth Amendment).

OR

e. was obtained through police action that was outrageous to the point it shocks the conscience (Fifth Amendment).

TECHNICALITIES AND RULES THAT MUST BE MET TO PROTECT YOUR RIGHT TO MAKE THE MOTION, AS WELL AS, PRACTICAL INFORMATION

1. The motion **must be filed no later than 10 working days** after receiving notice of the intent to use the evidence by the State. This notice is usually a part of the standard cover attachment to discovery materials that is provided by the State to the defense after indictment. It is easy to overlook unless you are aware it is likely to be there and take note of it. It may, however, be provided in a separate notice. See 15A-976 for specific details of the notice.

2. The motion **must be accompanied by an affidavit** that alleges specific facts to support the Constitutional or Statutory violations that you allege in support of your motion. The safest practice is to write the affidavit for your own signature based on "information and belief" gained through investigation or discovery or probable cause testimony or confidential sources of information (your client). The motion and affidavit, as a whole, **must raise the violation you allege supported by facts,** which if proven, would support suppression of the evidence. If you fail to meet this requirement, **the motion may be dismissed on its face without a hearing.** 15A-977. Unless the standing of your client to make the motion is obvious, you **must include a statement of standing**. You should request a hearing prior to trial as part of the motion. This is so that you can get a copy of the transcript before trial if you lose.

Suppression motions are fact specific, so there are no form motions. You can use someone else's motion to go by, but someone else's facts will not support a motion in your case.

3. **Always cite the State constitutional provisions** that support your motion in addition to the Federal Amendments, and cite both in your arguments. Sometimes you have more protection in the State than from the Feds, not often, but it happens. If the State Constitution is better but you fail to raise it, you lose.

4. You do not need to file a memorandum of law in support of your motion prior to the hearing of the motion. If you are serious about being prepared and wanting to have a chance of winning the motion, you should **prepare a memorandum of law** to present to the Court at the time of the hearing. You should be prepared to argue facts combined with law to support the Court granting your motion at the time of the hearing.

Practice Notes

a. Judges are, unfortunately, but frequently, unfamiliar with case law that may support your issue. If you are not prepared to tell the Judge what the law is so that he sees he may be reversed if he rules against you, then he will likely rule against you. Do your research and be prepared on the law.

b. The State often does not extensively prepare to present law on the issue, so you will have an advantage if you are prepared.

c. Judges are never inclined to grant a motion for a defendant that will result in the charges being dismissed because the State has lost their essential evidence, so you MUST be prepared to show the facts and law in a clear and convincing manner in favor of your client.

d. Most DA's are less prepared for a suppression motion than they would be for trial. This usually means they will have spent less or no time talking with their witnesses and you may get more candid responses from the State's witnesses. Have your questions well prepared so that you can take full advantage of this windfall.

e. If your motion is based on an unreliable **identification,** strongly consider having your client waive his presence at the probable cause hearing and the suppression motion so that you don't help create a show up that will inevitably make the witness more sure of the identification, as well as provide a very suggestive environment for the witness to reinforce their memory.

f. The Judge must rule on your motion during the session the motion is heard, UNLESS the parties give permission for him to rule outside the session on the record. Outside of term must also be agreed to. Thus, the judge must ask on the record and you must agree on the record for him to rule at a later date. If not, he looses jurisdiction and you could require that it be heard again. Sometimes an advantage. Session is the week it is heard, term is the 6 months in which the judge is scheduled to be sitting in the jurisdiction.

A NON-EXHAUSTIVE LIST OF FACT PATTERNS THAT WILL SUPPORT A SUPPRESSION MOTION

There are endless fact patterns, so the following is simply provided to get you thinking about things that are out there that could support a motion to suppress. A lot of these facts have led to suppression motions being granted.

Identification Issues

-The prosecuting witness sees the client on TV, handcuffed and being escorted to jail by police. The prosecuting witness identifies the client from seeing the clip on TV. This is suggestive because it is one person and the witness is seeing one person who the commentator is likely saying committed or is suspected of the crime. It makes the ID less reliable.

-Witness sees client in Court under circumstances that clearly identify who the police have targeted, or arrested. This can even be where the client is sitting alone next to her attorney, a probable cause hearing or a suppression motion.

-Police bring client in handcuffs to see if witness can identify the client. Of course the facts are better if the police have made any statement to the witness such as, "we think we caught the perpetrator" prior to the witness viewing the client.

-Police show witness photo array in which your client's photo is the only one that closely resembles the description of the person who committed the crime, or the client looks substantially different from the other persons in the array.

-Police show a photo array and make comments to the witness that the person who is the suspect is in there, or make any indication which photo that the witness should consider more than others.

-Prosecuting witness is picked up off the street by a man who later sexually assaults her. She is in the car with him for 20 minutes and states that it was a white 4 door car, though she didn't get a good look at the exterior of the car, nor could she state a brand of car. The interior was gray, and had gray leather seats and a smooth gray dashboard. Though client was not identified in the photo lineup he appeared in, and another person was identified, the

police focused on client. Three exterior photos of the car owned by client's wife were shown to prosecuting witness, which was a white two door Buick Regal. No interior photos are shown to the prosecuting witness.

-Police show a single photo to a witness, for example, there are a series of bank robberies. In one robbery there are good photos of the perpetrator. In another the camera wasn't working, but the one from the clear photo is taken by police and shown to the teller's where there was no photo captured. The person in the photo looks very much like the description of the person in the robbery where no photo was captured, and this includes unusual physical characteristics like the man has long dreadlocks that are grey.

Statement Issues

-Your client is asked questions by the police after client was arrested, but no rights had been presented to the client or waived. For example, the police approach your client at work and tell him that they want to question him, they put him in the back seat of a police car, in hand cuffs, and take his wallet. The police the drive client to the police station that is 15 or so miles from the client's work place. The police question the client at the police station, but he is not given any rights. Police maintain that none of their actions resulted in an arrest of the client.

-Your client was 16 and signed an adult waiver rather than a juvenile waiver before he was questioned and made a statement.

-Your client has just been arrested, is handcuffed and is being held at gunpoint when one of the other police approach client and say to client, "look what I just found, (showing something that looks like drugs), wonder who this belongs to?" As a result, your client makes some incriminating comment. Your client had not been given rights or waived rights.

-Your client is arrested and taken to jail. At the jail he refuses to waive his rights and says he doesn't want to talk. Client is held in jail overnight. Before client is taken for his first appearance the next day, police go back to see client and say they will give him one more chance to talk with them. Client makes a statement.

-Client is arrested and taken to jail. Client is presented with a waiver and client says he wants a lawyer. The police say they can't get a lawyer for

client until the next day. The police keep questioning client and client keeps talking.

-Police promise client he won't go to jail if he talks to them.

-Police threaten to arrest girlfriend or wife if client doesn't talk.

-Police promise they will help get charges reduced if client talks.

Physical Evidence

-Police have no reasonable suspicion to stop the car, but they do and once stopped find drugs or other contraband.

-Police have reason to stop the car, but is only for a minor traffic violation such as speeding 5 miles over the limit. After the stop, nothing else is developed, but police search the car without permission and finds drugs or contraband.

-Client is passenger in the car, but car was stopped without reasonable suspicion.

-Police search someone because they are in a drug area with no other basis for the search.

-Client is arrested for armed robbery near the scene of the offense, and officers search her residence for evidence either without or with a search warrant.

-Client is driver of a car which is stopped for a traffic offense, he is asked for consent to search and gives it. The police take the door panels off the inside of the doors based on the consent.
-Client is stopped for a traffic offense. Client is given a ticket and given his license back. Client starts to leave. Officer (in the interim has called for a drug dog) then starts to ask questions about if the client has drugs or guns in his car. Client says no. Drug dog arrives and the handler runs the dog around the car and the dog is said to have 'alerted' on the car. Drugs are found in the car.

-Client is stopped near scene of breaking or entering offense, but has been more than 12 hours since the offense occurred. There is no information linking the client to the crime.

-Search warrant fails on its face to state facts that make it reasonable to believe that evidence of the crime will be present in the place to be searched.

-Warrant for telephone of client who has been arrested for a breaking and entering is seized by police. A warrant is obtained for the search of the phone, thought police have no basis to think that the phone was connected to the breaking and entering.

-Search warrant fails to establish any nexus between the crime and the place to be searched. For example, client is arrested for indecent liberties based on taking photos of 12 year old girls in a health club who are fully clothed and who agree to him photographing them. They were not posed by him nor were they in any lewd position, they were simply sitting on a bench. Warrant is issued for the search of his home and his computer based on the fact he was charged with indecent liberties, though he was not at his home during the incident. And in this case, is there any basis to believe a crime existed so that they could search for evidence of that crime???

-Police believe client is guilty of murder, but they have nothing to tie him to it other than he was the last person known to be with the deceased before she disappeared. They go to his apartment based on a complaint made by client concerning a neighbor making threats. While there, they see a large number of figurines. Client works at a craft store where figurines are sold. Police ask manager of store where client works if he is suspected of stealing, and manager says probably he is. Police get warrant to search for stolen goods, but when they execute the warrant they look at clothing and papers in the apartment.

-Search warrant does establish basis to search residence. While there executing the warrant, after drugs are found in the house, the police search a car owned by a friend of the resident who does not live there, and whose car is parked on the street.

-Search warrant application is based mostly on information given by a confidential source. Police don't say anything about the details observed or history of the confidential source of information and his relationship or lack thereof with client.

-Search warrant is for stolen goods. The information is that the stolen goods were believed to be in the client's possession 6 months earlier. Warrant is issued for client's home.

-Client is charged with murder for which he was arrested several days after the death. A gun was found that is linked to your client. Search warrant application says that ballistics reports match the bullet that killed the deceased to that gun. The ballistics report was not available when the application for the search warrant was made and wasn't available until several days after the application was submitted to the magistrate.

Problem 1

About 10:30 pm two officers on bike patrol saw two black males standing in the roadway in a part of the town that is known to have a high drug trade and usage. One of the men, A, was known to the officers as a drug user and alcoholic. The second man, B, who later becomes the defendant, is not known to the police. According to the police reports generated, the man B handed something to the man known to the police, A. The officer suspected a drug transaction and moved towards the men to investigate. The two officers approached the two men. One of the officers saw that man B appeared to have something clutched in his fist which was not visible. The officer upon approaching the man, immediately, ordered man B to put his hands on his head with his fingers interlaced on his head. Man B put his hands on his head, but did not interlace his fingers. The officer then grabbed Man B's arm and pulled it in front of Man B. The officer continued to order Man to place his hands with interlocked fingers on his head. Man B refused to comply. The officer then began to tell Man B that he would taze Man B if he did not get on his knees. Man B got on his knees. The officer tried to force Man B to put his hands behind his back and continued to order him to open his hands. Man B failed to comply. The Officer pushed Man B onto his chest, and the other officer tazed Man B. Man B was handcuffed. Man B was found to have a crack rock inside a Newport cigarette box that was crushed in his hand.

Problem 2

An early morning cleaning crew in a church hears a noise and believes there has been a breakin and that the person is still in the building. Police are called. Police respond and reportedly see a man in the parking lot carrying wine. When the officer yells at the man to stop, he runs into the woods. Client is apprehended in the woods and is handcuffed. Police are escorting client to the police car, and he has not been Mirandized or waived his rights. Client says, "this is a motherfucker". The policeman says back to client, "Breaking into a church is a motherfucker." Client responds, "the door was open."

Problem 3

A home invasion robbery occurs. One of the perpetrators was wearing a mask and was described as being 6' 2", 200lbs., black male with medium length hair. A few days later client is stopped. Client is 5'11", 175lbs. black male with short braids that stick out from his head. Client is shown to the witness. At the time the witness views the client he is sitting alone in the rear of a marked patrol car, and the officer told the witness at the time they contacted the witness to view client that, "they thought they had the guy".

Film No.	File No.

SEARCH WARRANT

In the Matter of

Client

Date Issued	Time Issued
8-4-04	11:50 ☐ AM ☒ PM

Name of Applicant
Investigator Stephen Vaughan

Name of Additional Affiant

Name of Additional Affiant

RETURN OF SERVICE

I Certify that this Search WARRANT was received and executed as follows:

Date Received	Time Received
08-04-04	1200 ☐ AM ☒ PM
Date Executed	**Date and Time of Return**
08-04-04 / 1235	

☒ I made a search of 306 Estes Dr, Apt. J-13, Carrboro, NC as commanded.

☒ I seized the items listed on the attached inventory
☐ I did not seize any items.

☐ This warrant was not executed within 48 hours of the date of issuance and I hereby return it not executed

Signature of Officer Making Return: [signature] 399

Department or Agency of Officer: Carrboro Police Dept.

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
ORANGE County

In the General Court of Justice
District Court Division

To any officer with authority and jurisdiction to conduct the search authorized by this Search Warrant:

I, the undersigned, find that there is probable cause to believe that the property and person described in the application on the reverse side and related to the commission of a crime is located as described in the application.

You are commanded to search the premises, vehicle, person, and other place or item described in the application for the property and person in question. If the property and/or person are found, make the seizure and keep the property subject to Court Order and process the person according to law.

You are directed to execute this Search Warrant within forty-eight (48) hours from the time indicated on this Warrant and make due return to the Clerk of the Issuing Court.

This Search Warrant is issued upon information furnished under oath by the person or persons shown.

Date: 8-4-04
Signature: [signature]
☐ Deputy CSC ☐ Asst. CSC ☐ Clerk of Superior Court
☒ Magistrate ☐ District Ct. Judge ☐ Superior Ct. Judge

This Search Warrant was returned to me on the date and time shown below

Date: 8-4-04 Time: 3:30 ☐ AM ☒ PM

Signature: [signature]

☐ Deputy CSC ☐ Asst. CSC ☐ Clerk of Superior Court MAGISTRATE

APPLICATION FOR SEARCH WARRANT

I, Investigator Stephen Vaughan of the Durham City Police Department
(Insert name and address; or if law enforcement officer, name, rank and agency)

being duly sworn, request that the court issue a warrant to search the person, place, vehicle, and other items described in this application and to find and seize the property and person described in this application. There is probable cause to believe that SEE ATTACHMENT
(Describe property to be seized; or if search warrant is to be used for searching a place

to serve an arrest warrant or other process, name person to be arrested)

constitutes evidence of a crime and the identity of a person participating in a crime,

SEE ATTACHMENT , and is located
(Name Crime)

(check appropriate box(es) and fill-in specified information)

☒ in the following premises 306 N. Estes Drive EXt. Apartment J13 Carrboro North Carolina
(Give address and, if useful, describe premises)

(and)

☐ on the following person(s)
(Give name(s) and, if useful, describe person(s))

(and)

☒ in the following vehicle(s) Honda Civic with NC RZV-9200
(Describe vehicle(s))

(and)

☐ N/A
(Name and/or describe other places or items to be searched, if applicable)

The applicant swears to the following facts to establish probable cause for the issuance of a search warrant:

SEE ATTACHMENT

H

SWORN AND SUBSCRIBED TO BEFORE ME

Date 8-4-04

Signature

Signature of Applicant S. M. Vaughan

☐ Deputy CSC ☐ Asst. CSC ☐ Clerk of Superior Court ☑ Mag. ☐ Judge

☐ In addition to the affidavit included above, this application is supported by additional affidavit(s) attached, made by

☐ In addition to the affidavit included above, this application is supported by sworn testimony, given by

This testimony has been (check appropriate box) ☐ reduced to writing ☐ tape recorded and I have filed each with the Clerk.

H If a continuation is necessary, continue the statement on an attached sheet of paper with a notation saying "see attachment." Date the continuation and include on it the signatures of the applicant and issuing official.

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
ORANGE COUNTY

IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE
DISTRICT COURT DIVISION

ATTACHMENT FOR APPLICATION FOR SEARCH WARRANT

IN THE MATTER OF: Client
306 N. Estes Drive Ext. Apt. J13 Carrboro North Carolina

I, Investigator Stephen Vaughan being a duly sworn officer, request that the COURT to issue a warrant to search the place, and any other items or places of control by the person described in this application; and to find and seize the property described in this application. There is probable cause to believe that stolen property and personal property of several victims of the crime of Burglary North Carolina General Statue 14-51 and the crime of Felonious Larceny North Carolina General Statue 14-72 are contained in the residence to be searched. The premise to be searched is located at 306 N. Estes Drive Ext. Apt. J13 in Carrboro, North Carolina. The suspect in this crime is Client). The suspect is a Hispanic male, born on July the 18th, 1981. The suspect was in the possession of stolen laptop computers that were taken during a series of Burglaries that occurred in the Belmont Apartment complex located at 601 S. LaSalle St. in Durham North Carolina.

The affiant swears to the following facts to establish probable cause for the issuance of a search warrant. I, Investigator Stephen Vaughan, am a sworn law enforcement officer since 1997 and have been with the Durham City Police Department since 1999. I am currently an Investigator with the Durham City Police Department's Criminal Investigation Division and am primarily assigned to investigate crimes involving domestic violence. I have been involved in countless investigation ranging from domestic violence assault cases to homicide investigations. I have assisted district property crimes investigators with commercial and vehicle breaking and entering investigations, including surveillance operations. I have received training in the area of criminal investigation over my years with the department.

The affiant has been investigating a series of Burglaries and Breaking and Entering in the Belmont Apartments located at 601 S. LaSalle St in Durham North Carolina, along with District 3 Property Crimes Investigator A. Tyndall. I have also been assisting Sgt. J. Sheley with Duke University Police Department with a related case that occurred at 1913 Erwin Rd in Durham North Carolina. The incidents have occurred between the dates of 1/17/04 to 4/18/04. The suspect has entered the apartments through an unsecured door of the victim's residence between the times of 0130 hours and 0600 hours.

The suspect has taken items from each of the residence when entry was made. The suspect has taken one Fuji Finepix Digital camera Model A310, one Canon L 35mm camera, one pair of pink women's wool gloves made in Spain, one Jetta Laptop computer silver in color with serial number TN4M17008079, two Dell Laptop computers purple incolor, one Canon Power Shot Digital camera model SD100 with serial number 7023521104, a ~~pair of men's~~ Bape sneakers gold and silver in color size 7 1/2, and one

MAGISTRATE / JUDGE

DATE: 8-4-04

APPLICANT

DATE: 8-4-04

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
ORANGE COUNTY

IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE
DISTRICT COURT DIVISION

ATTACHMENT FOR APPLICATION FOR SEARCH WARRANT

IN THE MATTER OF: Client

306 N. Estes Drive Ext. Apt. J13 Carrboro North Carolina

Men's Swiss Army Watch stainless steel in color with a black face and smooth wristband with links.

The victim's reported that they had downloaded photographic images onto their computer hard drives and had photographs stored in their digital cameras. The stored photographic images contained possible photographs of other victims of burglaries in the Belmont Apartment complex. The suspect may have downloaded these images onto his computer system or printed images of his next intended victims. I believe this to be true, because during my investigation I learned that four of the victims participated in the same social events and lived and associated in the Belmont Apartment complex.

On May 3rd, 2004 Investigator Pennica, with Durham City Police Department's District One Property Crimes Unit, responded to 1703 Ruffin St in Durham North Carolina. Uniform Patrol Officers, called him to location in reference to a subject in the possession of six laptop computers, several of which were reported to be stolen. The subject in possession of the stolen laptop computers was Client , with a date of birth of 1/1/2001 The suspect was in possession of three computers that were taken from the Belmont Apartment complex. These three computers were the Jetta laptop computer silver in color with the serial number of TN4M17008079 and two Dell laptops that were purple in color. The computers were confirmed to be stolen and linked back to the owner reporting the theft. Investigator Pennica interviewed and gathered Client's 's information for further investigation. Investigator Pennica learned from Client , that he was storing the computers in his room at 1703 Ruffin St. in Durham North Carolina. The computers were seized by Investigator Pennica and turned into the Durham City Police Department Property and Evidence Unit.

During the follow up investigation of Client it was learned that the he had gathered his belongings, including several cameras, and left 1703 Ruffin St. Mr. Client new location was unknown. We also learned that Mr. Client had left his North Carolina Driver License with Investigator Pennica on May 3rd, 2004. It was then learned that Client had renewed his driver license on May 5th, 2004, but the he retained the 1703 Ruffin St address in Durham North Carolina. Client , was making an obvious attempt to conceal his new location from the investigators involved in this matter. It was furthered learned that the suspect sold his vehicle before leaving the Durham area. Client owned a Honda Civic with North Carolina registration plate RZV-9200. On August 4th, 2004, I had a conversation with Investigator Lamb with the Carrboro Police Department revealed that a Honda Civic bearing RZV-9200 was

MAGISTRATE / JUDGE

DATE: 8-4-04

APPLICANT

DATE: 8-4-04

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
ORANGE COUNTY

IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE
DISTRICT COURT DIVISION

ATTACHMENT FOR APPLICATION FOR SEARCH WARRANT

IN THE MATTER OF: Client
306 N. Estes Drive Ext. Apt. J13 Carrboro North Carolina

listed on Client's lease agreement for 306 N. Estes Drive Ext. Apt. J13 in Carrboro North Carolina, and in fact, had recently been parked at that address.

During the investigation further information about Client was gathered. I learned that the suspect had close friends and may have lived in the Duke Manor Apartments at 311 S. LaSalle St in Durham North Carolina prior to moving into 1703 Ruffin St. The Duke Manor Apartment complex is located adjacent to the Belmont Apartment complex which offered the suspect the ability to conduct surveillance on the residents of the complex and the ability to quickly exited the area and return to a safe hiding location.

Client 's physical description is in close relation to the description of the suspect that entered the homes of the victim while they were asleep and awakened by his presence. The suspect in the Burglaries is described as Indian or Hispanic male with olive to dark complexion. The suspect is 5'5" to 5'9" in height and weighing between 140 to 170 lbs and medium build. The suspect is stated to have dark brown or black hair that is close cut.

The physical description of Client is a Hispanic Male with light to medium skin complexion. He is 5'6'in height and 150 lbs in weight and medium build. His hair is black and closely cut. This was confirmed when the suspect was arrested and photographed on August 1st, 2004. The suspect stopped by a Carrboro Police Officer for suspicion of breaking and entering into a residence. The Carrboro Officer then learned that Client had outstanding arrest warrants from the Durham City Police Department for the Possession of Stolen Property.

There is reason to believe Client still has in his possession at his residence at 306 Estes Drive Ext. in Carrboro North Carolina property that belongs to other residents of the Belmont Apartment complex in Durham North Carolina. The property being one Fuji Film Finepix A310 Digital Camera, one Canon L 35mm Camera silver in color, one pair of women's pink wool gloves that were made in Spain, one Canon Power Shot Digital camera Model SD100 Serial Number 7023521104, on pair on men's Bape sneakers gold and silver in color and size 71/2, and one Men's Swiss Army Watch stainless steel in color with a black face and smooth links on the wristband. Client may also have photographic images of victims from the Belmont Apartment Complex. These Images maybe printed or stored in a computer.

MAGISTRATE / JUDGE

DATE: 8-4-04

APPLICANT

DATE: 8.4-04

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
ORANGE COUNTY

IN THE GENERAL COURT OF JUSTICE
DISTRICT COURT DIVISION

ATTACHMENT FOR APPLICATION FOR SEARCH WARRANT

IN THE MATTER OF: Client

306 N. Estes Drive Ext. Apt. J13 Carrboro North Carolina

Based on the above information, I respectfully request the Court to issue a warrant to search the residence, personal property of Client, and any other rooms, including attached storage rooms of 306 N. Estes Drive Ext. Apt. J13 in Carrboro North Carolina to search for and seize any of the afore mentioned stolen property that are still believed to be in the possession of Client and stored in his residence in Carrboro North Carolina and documents that show that Client resides at the search location of 306 N. Estes Drive Ext. Apt. J13 in Carrboro North Carolina. And further seize any photographic images of know victims and any computer that is in the possession of Client

MAGISTRATE / JUDGE

DATE: 8-4-04

APPLICANT

DATE: 8-4-04